

REYNOLDS HISTORICAL
GENEALOGY COLLECTION



3 1833 01066 7357

SOUTH CAROLINA

HISTORICAL COLLECTIONS

JOHN H. HARRIS, EDITOR

STATE HISTORICAL SOCIETY

VOLUME IV

1902

CLARK BROS.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2015

<https://archive.org/details/southdakotahisto4219sout>

126929

SOUTH DAKOTA HISTORICAL COLLECTIONS 373

SOUTH DAKOTA

HISTORICAL COLLECTIONS

ILLUSTRATED WITH MAPS AND ENGRAVINGS

COMPILED BY THE
STATE HISTORICAL SOCIETY

V. 4, pt. 2
VOLUME IV

1908

1908
PRESS OF MARK D. SCOTT
SIOUX FALLS, S. D.

wind from the southeast. A Mr. Garrow, a Frenchman, who has resided a long time among the Ricaras and Mandans, explained to us the mode in which they make their large beads, an art which they are said to have derived from some prisoners of the Snake Indian nation, and the knowledge of which is a secret, even now confined to a few among the Mandans and Ricaras. The process is as follows: Glass of different colors is first pounded fine and washed, till each kind, which is kept separate, ceases to stain the water thrown over it; some well seasoned clay, mixed with a sufficient quantity of sand to prevent its becoming very hard when exposed to heat, and reduced by water to the consistency of dough, is then rolled on the palm of the hand, till it becomes of the thickness wanted for the hole in the bead; these ticks of clay are placed upright, each on a little pedestal or ball of the same material, about an ounce in weight, and distributed over a small earthen platter, which is laid on the fire for a few minutes, when they are taken off to cool; with a little paddle or shovel, three or four inches long and sharpened at the end of the handle, the wet pounded glass is placed in the palm of the hand; the beads are made of an oblong form, wrapped in a cylindrical form round the stick of clay, which is laid cross-wise over it, and gently rolled backwards and forwards till it becomes perfectly smooth. If it be desired to introduce any other color, the surface of the bead is perforated with the pointed end of the paddle, and the cavity filled with pounded glass of that color; the sticks with the string of beads are then replaced on their pedestals, and the platter deposited on burning coals or hot embers; over the platter an earthen pot, containing about three gallons, with a mouth large enough to cover the platter, is reversed, being completely closed, except a small aperture at the top, through which are watched the beads; a quantity of old dried wood, formed into a sort of dough or paste, is placed around the pot, so as almost to cover it, and afterwards set on fire. The manufacturer then looks through the small hole in the pot, till he sees the beads assume a deep red color, to which succeeds a paler or whitish red, or they become pointed at the upper extremity; on which the fire is removed, and the pot suffered to cool gradually; at length it is removed, the beads taken out, the clay in the hollow of them picked out with an awl or needle, and it is then fit for use. The

beads thus formed are in great demand among the Indians, and used as pendants to their ears and hair, and are sometimes worn 'round the neck." (id 233.)

Killing Buffalo On Ice. "Friday, 29th. The weather clear, and the wind from the northwest. The obstruction above gave way this morning, and the ice came down in great quantities; the river having fallen eleven inches in the course of the last twenty-four hours. We have had few Indians at the fort for the last three or four days, as they are now busy in catching the floating buffalo. Every spring as the river is breaking up, the surrounding plains are set on fire, and the buffalo tempted to cross the river in search of the fresh grass which immediately succeeds to the burning; on their way they are often isolated on a large cake or mass of ice, which floats down the river. The Indians now select the most favorable points for attack; and, as the buffalo approaches, dart with astonishing agility across the trembling ice, sometimes pressing lightly a cake of not more than two feet square; the animal is of course unsteady, and his footsteps insecure on this new element, so that he can make but little resistance, and the hunter, who has given him his death wound, paddles his icy boat to the shore, and secures his prey." (id 239.)

Indian Painting. "Thursday, 4th. The day is clear and pleasant, though the wind is high from northwest. We now packed in different boxes a variety of articles for the president, which we shall send in the barge. A number of articles of Indian dress, among which was a buffalo robe, representing a battle fought about eight years since between the Sioux and Ricaras against the Mandans and Minnetarees, in which the combatants are represented on horseback. It has of late years excited much discussion to ascertain the period when the art of painting was first discovered, how hopeless all researches of this kind are, is evident from the foregoing fact. It is indebted for its origin to one of the strongest passions of the human heart; a wish to preserve the features of a departed friend, or the memory of some glorious exploit; this inherits equally the bosoms of all men, either civilized or savage. Such sketches, rude and imperfect as they are, delineate the predominant character of the savage nations. If they are peaceable and inoffensive, the drawings usually consist of local scenery and their favorite diversions. If the band are rude

and ferocious. we observe tomahawks, scalping-knives, bows, arrows, and all the engines of destruction. A Mandan bow and quiver of arrows; also some Ricara tobacco seed, and an ear of Mandan corn. To these are added a box of plants, another of insects, and three cases, containing a burrowing squirrel, a prairie hen, and four magpies, all alive." (id 240)

Aricaras Arrive—Expedition Leaves Ft. Mandan. "Saturday, 6th. Another fine day with a gentle breeze from the south. The Mandans continue to come to the fort, and in the course of the day inform us of the arrival of a party of Ricaras on the other side of the river. We send our interpreter to inquire into the reason for coming, and in the morning, Sunday 7th, he returned with a Ricara chief and three of his nation. The chief, whose name is Kagohweto, or Brave Raven, brought a letter from Mr. Tabeau, mentioning the wish of the grand chiefs of the Ricaras to visit the president, and requesting permission for himself and four men to join our boat when it descends, to which we consented, as it will then be manned with fifteen hands, and be able to defend itself against the Sioux. After presenting the letter, he told us that he was sent with ten warriors, by his nation, to arrange their settling near the Mandans and Minnetarees, whom they wished to join; that he considered all the neighboring nations friendly, except the Sioux, whose persecutions they could no longer withstand, and whom they hoped to repel by uniting with the tribes in his quarter. He added, that the Ricaras intended to follow our advice and live in peace with all nations, and requested that we would speak in their favor to the Assiniboiné Indians. This we willingly promised to do, and assured them that their great father would protect them, and no longer suffer the Sioux to have good guns, or to injure his dutiful children. We then gave him a small medal, a certificate of his good conduct, and earrot of tobacco, and some wampum, with which he departed for the Mandan village, well satisfied with his reception. Having made all our arrangements, we left the fort about five o'clock in the afternoon." (id 243)

"Sunday, April 7th. One of the Mandans likewise embarked with us, in order to go to the Snake Indians. and obtain a peace with them for his countrymen." (id 243)

The Lewis and Clarke expedition, having gone on over the

mountains and to the Pacific coast on their memorable trip of exploration, and having recrossed the Continental Divide on the return trip in 1806, we find the first journal entry which in any way refers to the Mandans, under date of August 8th of that year, recorded in Vol. 3 of London Ed. of their journal, page 348, as follows:

Skin Canoes. "Friday, 8th. * * They passed over a broken open country, and having reached the Yellowstone, near Pompey's Pillar, they determined to descend the river and for this purpose made two skin canoes,^s such as they had seen among the Mandans and Ricaras. They are made in the following manner: Two sticks of an inch and a quarter in diameter are tied together so as to form a round hoop, which serves for the brim, while a second hoop, for the bottom of the boat, is made in the same way, and both secured by sticks of the same size from the sides of the hoops, fastened by thongs to the edges of the hoops, and at the interstices of the sticks. Over this frame the skin is drawn closely and tied with thongs, so as to form a perfect basin, seven feet and three inches in diameter, sixteen inches deep, and with sixteen ribs or cross-sticks, and capable of carrying six or eight men with their loads." 'Vol. 3, p. 348)

Mandans at War With Aricaras and Assiniboines. "Monday, 11th. The next morning Captain Clarke set out early, and landed on a sandbar about ten o'clock, for the purpose of taking breakfast and drying the meat. At noon they proceeded on about two miles, when they observed a canoe near the shore. They immediately landed, and were equally surprised and pleased at discovering two men by the names of Dickson and Hancock, who had come from the Illinois on a hunting excursion up the Yellowstone. They had left the Illinois in the summer of 1804 and had spent the last winter with the Tetons, in company with a Mr. Ceautoin, who had come there as a trader, but whom they had robbed, or rather they had taken all his merchandise and given him a few robes in exchange. These men had met the boat which we had dispatched from Fort Mandan, on board of which they were told there was a Ricara chief on his way to Washington, and also another party of Yankton chiefs, accompanied by Mr. Durion on a visit of the same kind. We were sorry to learn that the Mandans and the Minnetarees were at war with the Ricaras, and had killed two of them.

The Assiniboinés, too, are at war with the Mandans. They have in consequence, prohibited the Northwestern Company from trading to the Missouri, and even killed two of their traders near the Mouse river, and are now lying in wait for Mr. M'Kenzie of the Northwestern Company, who had been for a long time among the Minnetarees. These appearances are rather unfavorable to the project of carrying some of the chiefs to the United States; but we still hope, that by effecting a peace between the Mandans, Minnetarees and Ricaras, the views of our government may be accomplished." (id 350)

"Thursday, 14th.⁹ We again set out at sunrise, and at length approached the grand village¹⁰ of the Minnetarees, where the natives had collected to view us as we passed. We fired the blunderbuss several times by way of salute, and soon after landed at the bank near the village of the Mahahas, or Shoe Indians and were received by a crowd of people, who came to welcome our return."

Re-Arrival at Mandan Villages. "Among these were the principal chief of the Mahahas, and the chief of the Little Minnetaree village, both of whom expressed great pleasure at seeing us again, but the latter wept most bitterly. On inquiry, it appeared that his tears were excited, because the sight of us reminded him of his son who had been lately killed by the Blackfoot Indians. After remaining there a few minutes, we crossed to the Mandan village of the Black Cat, where all the inhabitants seemed very much pleased at seeing us. We immediately sent Chaboneau with an invitation for the Minnetarees to visit us, and dispatched Drewyer to the lower village of the Mandans to bring Jesseaume as an interpreter."

Black Cat. "Captain Clarke in the meantime walked up to the village of the Black Cat, and smoked and ate with the chief. This village has been rebuilt since our departure, and was now much smaller; a quarrel having arisen among the Indians, in consequence of which a number of families had removed to the opposite side of the river. On the arrival of Jesseaume, Captain Clarke addressed the chiefs. We spoke to them now, he said, in the same language we had done before; and then repeated his invitation to accompany him to the United States, to hear in person the counsels of their great father, who can at all times protect those who open their ears to his counsels, and punish his enemies. The

Black Cat, in reply, declared that he wished to visit the United States, and see his great father, but was afraid of the Sioux, who had killed several of the Mandans since our departure, and who were now on the river below, and would intercept him if he attempted to go. Captain Clarke endeavored to quiet his apprehensions by assuring him that he would not suffer the Sioux to injure one of our red children who should accompany us, and that they should return loaded with presents, and protected at the expense of the United States. The council was then broken up, after which we crossed and formed our camp on the other side of the river, where we should be sheltered from the rain. Soon after the chief of the Mahahas informed us that if we would send to his village, we should have some corn. Three men were therefore dispatched, and soon after returned loaded with as much as they could carry, and were soon followed by the chief and his wife, to whom we presented a few needles and other articles fit for women. In a short time the Borgne (the great chief of all the Minnetarees) came down, attended by several other chiefs, to whom after smoking a pipe, Captain Clarke now made an harangue, renewing his assurances of friendship and the invitation to go with us to Washington. He was answered by the Borgne, who began by declaring that he much desired to visit his great father, but that the Sioux would certainly kill any of the Mandans who should attempt to go down the river. They were bad people and would not listen to any advice. When he saw us last, we had told him that we had made peace with all the nations below, yet the Sioux had since killed eight of his tribe, and stolen a number of their horses. The Ricaras too had stolen their horses, and in the contest his people had killed two of the Ricaras. Yet in spite of these dispositions, he had always had his ears open to our counsels, and had actually made a peace with the Cheyennes and the Indians of the Rocky Mountains. He concluded by saying that however disposed they were to visit the United States, the fear of the Sioux would prevent them from going with us.¹¹ The counsel was then finished, and soon afterwards an invitation was received from the Black Cat, who, on Captain Clarke's arrival at his village, presented him with a dozen bushels of corn, which he said was a large proportion of what his people owned, and after smoking a pipe, declared that his people were too apprehensive

of the Sioux to venture with us. Captain Clarke then spoke to the chiefs and warriors of the village. He told them of his anxiety that some of them should see their great father, and hear his good words and receive his gifts, and requested them to fix on some confidential chief who might accompany us. To this they made the same objections as before, till at length a young man offered to go, and the warriors all assented to it. But the character of his man was known to be bad, and one of the party with Captain Clarke informed him that at that moment he had in his possession a knife which he had stolen. Captain Clarke therefore told the chief of this theft, and ordered the knife to be given up. This was done with a poor apology for having it in his possession, and Captain Clarke then reproached the chiefs for wishing to send such a fellow to see and hear so distinguished a person as their great father. They all hung down their heads for some time, till the Black Cat apologized by saying that the danger was such that they were afraid of sending any of their chiefs, as they considered his loss almost inevitable. Captain Clarke remained some time with them, smoking and relating various particulars of his journey, and then left them to visit the second chief of the Mandans (or the Blackerow) who had expressed some disposition to accompany us. He seemed well inclined to the journey, but was unwilling to decide till he had called a council of his people, which he intended to do in the afternoon. On returning to the camp, he found the chief of the Mahahas, and also the chief of the Little Minnetaree village, who brought a present of corn on their mules, of which they possess several, and which they procure from the Crow Indians, who either buy or steal them on the frontiers of the Spanish settlements. A great number of the Indians visited us for the purpose of renewing their acquaintance, or of exchanging robes or other articles for the skins brought by the men." (id 354)

Mandan Wars. "In the evening Chaboneau, who has been mingling with the Indians, and had learned what had taken place during their absence, informed us that as soon as we had left the Minnetarees, they sent out a war party against the Shoshonees, whom they attacked and routed, though in the engagement they lost two men, one of whom was the son of the chief of the Little Minnetaree village. Another war party had gone against

the Ricaras, two of whom they killed. A misunderstanding, too, had taken place between the Mandans and the Minnetarees, in consequence of a dispute about a woman, which had nearly occasioned a war, but at length a pipe was presented by the Minnetarees, and a reconciliation took place."

Corn Abundant—Counseled Against Wars. "Friday, 15th. The Mandans had offered to give us some corn, and on sending this morning, we found a greater quantity collected for our use than all our canoes would contain. We therefore thanked the chief and took only six loads. At ten o'clock the chiefs of the different villages came down to smoke with us. We therefore took this opportunity of endeavoring to engage the Borgne in our interests by a present of the swivel, which is no longer serviceable, as it cannot be discharged from our largest perioque. It was now loaded, and the chiefs being formed in a circle around it, Captain Clarke addressed them with great ceremony. He said that he had listened with much attention to what had yesterday been declared by the Borgne, whom he believed to be sincere, and then reproached them with their disregard of our counsels, and their wars on the Shoshonees and Ricaras. Little Cherry, the old Minnetaree chief, answered that they had long stayed at home and listened to our advice, but at last went to war against the Sioux, because their horses had been stolen, and their companions killed, and in an expedition against those people, they had met the Ricaras, who were on their way to strike them, and a battle ensued. But in future, he said, they would attend to our words and live in peace. But Borgne added that his ears, too, would always be open to the words of his good father, and shut against bad counsel. Captain Clarke then presented to the Borgne the swivel, which we told him had announced the words of his great father to all the nations we had seen, and which, whenever it was fired, should recall those which we had delivered to him. The gun was then discharged, and the Borgne had it conveyed in great pomp to his village. The counsel then adjourned."

Big White Taken Past. "In the afternoon, Captain Clarke walked up to the village of the Littleerow, taking a flag, which he intended to present to him, but was surprised on being told by him that he had given over all intentions of accompanying us, and refused the flag. He found that this was occasioned by a

jealously between him and the principal chief, Big White. On the interference, however, of Jessemaume, the two chiefs were reconciled, and it was agreed that the Big White himself should accompany us with his wife and son." (id 359.)

Final Leavetaking. "Saturday, 16th. The whole village crowded about us, and many of the people wept aloud at the departure of the chief. As Captain Clarke was shaking hands with the principal chiefs of all the villages, they requested that he would set with them one moment longer. Being willing to gratify them, he stopped and ordered a pipe, after smoking which they informed him that when they first saw us, they did not believe all that we then told them, but having now seen that our words were all true they would carefully remember them and follow our advice; that he might tell their great father that the young men should remain at home, and not make war on any people except in defense of themselves. They requested him to tell the Ricaras to come and visit them without fear, as they meant that nation no harm, but were desirous of peace with them. On the Sioux, however, they had no dependence, and must kill them whenever they made war parties against their country. Captain Clarke, in reply, informed them that we had never insisted on their not defending themselves, but requested only that they would not strike those whom we had taken by the hand; that we would apprise the Ricaras of their friendly intentions, and that, although we had not seen those of the Sioux with whom they were at war, we should relate their conduct to their great father, who would take measures for producing a general peace among all his red children.

"The Borgne now requested that we would take good care of this chief, who would report whatever that their great father should say, and the council being then broken up, we took leave with a salute from a gun, and then proceeded. On reaching Fort Mandan, we found a few pickets standing on the riverside, but all the houses except one had been burnt by an accidental fire. At the distance of eighteen miles we reached the old Ricara village, where we encamped on the southwest side, the wind being too violent, and the waves too high to permit us to go any further." (id 362)

"Monday, 18th. Soon after we embarked, an Indian came run-

ning down to the beach, who appeared very anxious to speak to us. We went ashore, and found it was the brother of the Big White, who was encamped at no great distance, and hearing of our departure, came to take leave of the chief.

"The Big White gave him a pair of leggins, and they separated in a most affectionate manner, and we then continued, though the wind and waves were still high. The Indian chief seemed quite satisfied with his treatment, and during the whole of his time was employed in pointing out the ancient monuments of the Mandans, or in relating their traditions. At length, after making forty miles, we encamped on the northeast side, opposite an old Mandan village, and below the mouth of Chesshetah river."¹² (id 364)

"Here follow some entries showing events on the return trip of Lewis & Clarke at and near the Aricara villages and which are found in Part I of this paper in Vol. 3, S. D. Hist. Call. pp. 400-1.

At the Aricaras Villages the Mandan Chief Thus Addressed the Rees. "The Big White, chief of the Mandans, now addressed them at some length, explaining the pacific intentions of his nation; and the Cheyenne observed that both the Ricaras and Mandans seemed to be in fault; but at the end of the council, the Mandan chief treated with great civility, and the greatest harmony prevailed among them." * * *

"Captain Clarke returned to the boats where he found the chief of the lower village, who had cut off part of his hair and disfigured himself in such a manner that we did not recognize him at first, until he explained that he was in mourning for his nephew, who had been killed by the Sioux. He proceeded with us to the village on the island, where we were met by all the inhabitants. The second chief, on seeing the Mandan, began to speak to him in a loud and threatening tone, till Captain Clarke declared that the Mandans had listened to our counsels, and that if any injury was done to the chief, we should defend him against every nation. He then invited the Mandans to his lodge, and after a very ceremonious smoking, assured Captain Clarke that the Mandan was as safe as at home, for the Ricaras had opened their ears to our counsels as well as the Mandans. This was repeated by the great chief, and the Mandan and Ricara chiefs now smoked and con-

versed and great apparent harmony; after which we returned to the boats." (id 370)

"Friday, 22nd. While here we had occasion to notice that the Mandans, as well as the Minnetarees and Ricaras, kept their horses in the same lodges with themselves." (id 372)

Patrick Gass' observations on the Mandans, taken from his journal made while a member of the Lewis and Clarke expedition, will now be presented. Gass was a redoubtable Irishman of sound sense and keen observation. While much of what he records is largely a duplication of the Lewis and Clarke entries in substance, yet it will be found upon comparison of the two records that considerable additional information is contained in his journal. Some of his descriptions of Indians, situations and circumstances surrounding the sojourn with the Mandans and at Fort Mandan are striking, and constitute a substantial addition to the main journals. The original edition, published by Ells, Clafin & Co., Dayton (Ohio), in 1847, is here referred to.

Journal of Patrick Gass—Lewis and Clarke Expedition. (p. 56, et seq.)

"Wednesday, 24th, (October 1804). At twelve we came to a hunting party of the Mandan nation of Indians, and remained with them until 2 and then continued our voyage. There were three lodges of these Indians on an island, which has been cut off the Grand Bend, a short distance below the Mandan village. We encamped on the north side. Five of the Indians came to us, and our Indian went over with them and returned in the morning.

"Thursday, 25th. Passed a beautiful bottom on the south side, and hills on the north. A great many of the natives, some on horseback and some on foot appeared on the hills on the north side, hallooing and singing. At 2, we stopped for dinner, and as we could not get our boat to shore on the north side, the water being shallow, our Indian was sent over to them. In the afternoon we passed a bottom covered with timber on the north side and hills on the south, and encamped on the north side. Here our Indian returned accompanied by one of the Mandans.

"Friday, 26th. Passed a large willow bottom on the south and high land on the north side. The Mandan Indian left us early in the morning. At 10, we came to a hunting party of the Mandans,

consisting of men, women and children. There was an Irishman with them, who had come from the Northwest Company of traders. We remained here an hour, and then proceeded. A number of the Indians kept along the shore opposite the boat all day, on the south side, on which side we encamped. Some of them remained with us to 12 at night and then returned to their village.

Mandan Village. "Saturday, 27th. At half past seven we arrived at the first village of the Mandans and halted about two hours. This village contains forty or fifty lodges built in the manner of those of the Rickarees. These Indians have better complexions than most other Indians, and some of the children have fair hair. We passed a bluff on the south side with a stratum of black resembling coal. There is a bottom on the north side, where the second Mandan village is situated. We went about a mile above it and encamped on the same bottom, for the purpose of holding a council with the natives. This place is 1,610 miles from the mouth of the river du Bois, where we first embarked to proceed on the expedition. There are about the same number of lodges and people in this village as in the first. These people do not bury their dead, but place the body on a scaffold, wrapped in a buffalo robe, where it lies exposed.

"Sunday, 28th. The day was clear and we remained here, but could not sit in council, the wind blew so violent.

Council. "Monday, 29th. We had again a clear day and some of the principal men came from each village of the Mandans, from the Watasoons, Sioux, and one from the Gros Ventres, and all sat in council together. At 11 o'clock, when the council met, a shot was fired from our bow piece, and the commanding officers took the chiefs by the hand. Captain Lewis, though an interpreter, delivered a speech, gave a suit of clothes to each of the chiefs and some articles for their villages. He also sent a suit to the chief of the Gros Ventres. At three o'clock another gun was fired at the breaking up of the council, and they all appeared satisfied. Captain Lewis gave an iron mill to the Mandan nation to grind their corn, with which they were highly pleased.

"Tuesday, 30th. We remained here to know the answer of the Indians. At ten Captain Lewis, with a party of our people and an Indian or two, went about six miles up the river to view an island, in order to ascertain whether or not it would suit for

winter quarters. At five p. m. they returned and were of opinion that it was not an eligible place.

"Wednesday, 31st. A pleasant morning. We remained here also today, the Indians having given no answer. At 12, Captain Clarke and some of the men went down to the village, and the chief gave nine or ten bushels of corn, and some buffalo robes.

"Thursday, 1st November, 1804. At three o'clock p. m. we returned down the river to look for a place where we could fix our winter quarters. At dark we had ascended nine miles, and came to a bottom covered with cottonwood, where we encamped.

"Friday, 2nd. Captain Lewis, myself and some of the men went up to the first village of the Mandans, who gave us some corn. Captain Clarke and the rest of our party, having dropped half a mile lower down the river, began to clear a place for a camp and a fort. We pitched our tents and laid the foundation of one line of huts.

Fort Mandan. "Saturday, 3rd. A clear day. We continued building. The following is the manner in which our huts and forts were built. The huts were in two rows, containing four rooms each, and joined at one end forming an angle. When raised about seven feet high a floor of puncheons or split plank were laid, and covered with grass and clay, which made a warm loft. The upper part projected a foot over and the roofs were made shed-fashion, rising from the inner side and making the outer wall about eighteen feet high. The part not inclosed by the huts we intended to picket. In the angle formed by the two rows of huts we built two rooms for holding our provisions and stores.

"From the 20th to the 27th, we had fine pleasant weather, and on the evening of the latter finished the roofs of our huts. These were made of puncheons split out of cottonwood and then hewed. The cottonwood resembles the lombardy poplar, and is a light soft wood. The largest trees are in thickness about eighteen inches diameter.

The Sioux. "Thursday, 29th. Early in the morning of this day we saw an Indian on the opposite side of the river, and brought him over. He informed us that a few days ago eight of his nation were out hunting and were attacked by a party of the Sioux tribe, who killed one and wounded two more, and also

carried off their horses. Captain Clarke and twenty-three men immediately set out with an intention of pursuing the murderers. They went up to the first village of the Mandans, but their warriors did not seem disposed to turn out. They suggested the coldness of the weather; that the Sioux were too far gone to be overtaken; and put off the expedition to the spring of the year. Captain Clarke and his party returned the same evening to the fort. We have been daily visited by the Indians since we came here. Our fort is called Fort Mandan, and by observation is in N. latitude 47.21 33.8.

"Saturday, 1st, December 1804. The day was pleasant, and we began to cut and carry pickets to complete our fort. One of the traders from the Northwest Company came to the fort and related that the Indians had been troublesome in his way through. An Indian came down from the first Mandan village, and told us that a great number of the Chien or Dog nation had arrived near the village.

Cheyennes Arrive. "Sunday, 2nd. A party of the Chien Indians with some of the Mandans came to the fort. They appeared civil and good natured.

"The 3rd, 4th, and 5th, were moderate and we carried on the work, but the sixth was so cold and stormy we could do nothing. In the night the river froze over and in the morning was covered with solid ice an inch and a half thick.

Buffalo. "Friday, 7th. At 9 o'clock the Big White head chief of the first village of the Mandans came to our garrison and told us that the buffalo were in the prairie coming into the bottom. Captain Lewis and eleven more of us went out immediately and saw the prairie covered with buffalo and the Indians on horseback killing them. * * * They shoot them with bows and arrows, and have their horses so trained that they will advance very near and suddenly wheel and fly off in case the wounded buffalo attempt an attack.

"Saturday, 15th. Some of the natives paid us a visit and brought presents of meat to the commanding officers.

British Traders. "Sunday, 16th. I went up with some of the men to the first and second village of the Mandans and we were treated with much kindness. Three of the traders from the Northwest company came to our fort and brought a letter to

our commanding officers. They remained with us all night. The object of the visits we received from the Northwest Company was to ascertain our motives for visiting that country and to gain information with respect to the change of government.

"Monday, 17th. A sled was fitted up for one of the northwest traders to return in. In the evening one of the natives came down and told us the buffaloes were again come to the river.

"Saturday, 22nd. The weather continued clear, pleasant and warm. A great number of the natives came with corn, beans and moccasins to trade for which they would take anything—old shirts, buttons, awls, knives and the like articles.

"Monday, 24th. Some snow fell this morning. About ten it cleared up and the weather became pleasant. This evening we finished our fortification. Flour, dried apples, pepper and other articles were distributed in the different messes to enable them to celebrate Christmas in a proper and social manner.

Christmas. "Tuesday, 25th. The morning was ushered in by two discharges of a swivel and a round of small arms by the whole corps. Captain Clarke then presented to each man a glass of brandy, and we hoisted the American flag in the garrison, and its first waiving in Fort Mandan was celebrated with another glass. The men then cleared out one of the rooms and commenced dancing. At ten o'clock we had another glass of brandy and at one a gun was fired as a signal for dinner. At half past two another gun was fired as a notice to assemble at the dance, which was continued in a jovial manner till eight at night, and without the presence of any females, except three squaws, wives to our interpreter, who took no other part than the amusement of looking on. None of the natives came to the garrison this day, the commanding officers having requested they should not, which was strictly attended to. During the remainder of the month we lived in peace and tranquility in the garrison and were daily visited by the natives. (p. 65.)

"Tuesday, January 1st, 1805. About eleven o'clock one of the interpreters and half of the people went up, at the request of the natives to the village to begin the dance, and were followed some time after by Captain Clarke and three more men. The day was warm and pleasant. Captain Lewis in the afternoon issued

another glass of whiskey and at night Captain Clarke and part of the men returned from the village, the rest remained all night.

"Wednesday, 2nd. This day I discovered how the Indians keep their horses during the winter. In the day time they are permitted to run out and gather what they can, and at night are brought into the lodges, with the natives themselves, and fed upon cottonwood branches, and in this way are kept in tolerable ease. (p. 66.)

"Sunday, 20th. I went up with one of the men to the villages. They treated us friendly and gave us victuals. After we were done eating they presented a bowlful to a buffalo head, saying "eat that." Their superstitious credulity is so great that they believe by using the head well the living buffalo will come and that they will get a supply of meat. (p. 68)

Sioux Hostilities. "Thursday, 28th. Sixteen of us went up the river about six miles, where we found and cut down trees for four canoes. While we were absent an express arrived from the Rickarees village with news that the Sioux had declared war against us, and also the Mandans and Gros Ventres. They had boasted of the robbery of the 14th, at the Rickarees village in their way home, and that they intended to massacre the whole of us in the spring. By this express we therefore found out that it was the Sioux who had taken the horses from our men. (p. 70)

"Saturday, 6th. The day was clear and pleasant. This day we heard that some of the Rickarees had come up to the Mandan villages. Our interpreter and some of the men were sent over to ascertain the truth of the report and we were detained all day waiting their return. (p. 72)

Ricara Delegation. "Sunday, 7th. The men returned and four of the Rickarees with them. The commanding officers held a conversation with these Indians and they concluded that some of them would go down in the boat from their village to St. Louis. About five o'clock in the afternoon we left Fort Mandan in good spirits. Thirty-one men and a woman went up the river and thirteen returned down it in the boat. We had two perioques and six canoes and proceeded about four miles and encamped opposite the first Mandan village on the north side.

Departure From Mandan Villages. "Monday, 8th. At 12 the word was passed from a canoe in the rear that it was sinking,

when we halted in front and Captain Clarke went back to see what was the matter. This forenoon we passed two villages of the Gros Ventres, or Big Belly's nation of Indians on the south side and a small river on the same side called Cutteau or Knife river." (p. 73.)

It is seen from the foregoing entry, that Gass estimated the distance up stream from Fort Mandan to a point opposite the lower Mandan village at "about four miles." All of what precedes, from Gass, pertains to the westward trip. We now quote from his journal some observations made on the return trip, on which, August 14th, 1806, the expedition reached the Mandan villages: * * * *

"Thursday, 14th, August, 1806. The morning of this day was pleasant, and we embarked early. In a short time we arrived near to our old friends, the Gros Ventres and Mandans; and fixed our encampment in a central position, so as to be most convenient to the different villages. The inhabitants of all the villages appeared very glad to see us, and sent us presents of corn, beans and squashes.

"Friday, 15th. We had a fine clear pleasant morning, and continued here all day, to ascertain whether any of the chiefs would go down with us or not. They had to hold councils among themselves, and we had to wait for their answers. The two hunters we left up the river came down, staid with us here, and got one of our party to join in partnership with them, and to return up the rivers Missouri and Jaune to hunt.

"Saturday, 16th. There was a fine cool day; and we yet remained here, waiting an answer from the natives. Some of these Indians are very kind and obliging; furnishing us with corn, beans and squashes; but there are others very troublesome, and steal whenever they have an opportunity. Yesterday and today they stole several knives and spoons, and three powder horns, and two pouches, filled with ammunition.

Big White. "In the afternoon the chief, called the Big White, concluded to go down with us, and we agreed to stay until 12 o'clock tomorrow; that he might have an opportunity to get ready for his voyage and mission. The commanding officers gave discharges to the man who agreed to return with the hunters up the river, and the interpreter; who intends settling among these

Indians, and to whom they gave the blacksmith's tools supposing they might be useful to the nation. They also gave a small piece of ordnance to the Gros Ventres, which they appeared very fond of. (p. 229.)

"Sunday, 17th. The two strange hunters, with the man who had received his discharge and was to go up the river with them, went on early. We lashed our small canoes together, two and two, as we expect they will be more steady this way and carry larger loads. At noon we dropped down to the village of the Big White; and he, his wife and a child, with Geesem the interpreter for the Big White, his wife and two children, embarked in two of our canoes to go to the United States. We proceeded on at 2 o'clock; the wind was high, and river rough; and in the evening we encamped, having descended about twenty miles." (p. 230.)

Next in order of time is the journal of Alexander Henry. This was published by Francis P. Harper in 1897, under the editorial supervision of Dr. Elliot Cous, and is entitled "New Light on the History of the Northwest." From it we summarize the following:

Henry reached the Mandans from the Assiniboines July 19th, 1806, having passed Snake Hill at about the mouth of the Miry Creek, of Lewis and Clarke, and about six miles, by road, from Ft. Stevenson. He found the Mandans at a winter village two and a half miles below Miry Creek and close to the mouth of Wolf creek. It was really a village of the Gros Ventres and not of Mandans at all. At that date the river was so high that the huts appeared almost overflowed; he found large quantities of fruit growing in the vicinity; ripe pears, choke cherries, red cherries, raspberries and gooseberries and the prickly pear in large quantities. At four o'clock that afternoon he reached a point on the river opposite the upper Gros Ventres village situated on Knife river, a mile back from the Missouri. After waiting some time, a party of the natives came over and ferried him across, and he went down on the west side five miles to a Mandan village. The Gros Ventres village referred to on Knife river was the larger of two villages of that tribe, and the Mandan village was the second of Lewis and Clarke on their up river trip. Dr. Cous says it was about four miles by river above the site of Ft. Mandan. In going down the stream to this river Henry passed two villages,

which he describes as the Little Big Belly village and the Saulteur village, which were respectively, the third and fourth of the villages of Lewis and Clarke, and were called by them Metaharta, Mahawaha or Ahnahaways, or Wettersoons. Henry miscalls this latter village Saulteurs; they were really the Gens de Souliers. Their village was one mile north of the village of Black Cat and kept up a separate tribal organization until about 1836 and then became merged with the Gros Ventres. The locality of both is the present site of Stanton, Mercer county, North Dakota. Before reaching the Mandan village on the west side, Henry passed through two miles of timber and came near being swamped in a miry road. Below the woods he found several patches of corn, beans, squashes and sunflowers, and notes a reason why the Mandans so frequently changed their village sites. The soil in the neighborhood of one of these villages, becoming exhausted by cultivation, they move to a more fertile location. He notes that about these villages they buried their dead upon stages eight feet above the ground, and he found the bodies and the wrappings in all stages of decay. He found large numbers of women and children hoeing corn while a warrior, armed with a gun, stood by to guard them. The chief of the village, the Black Cat, came out to meet him and he was heartily welcomed by everyone. The Black Cat conducted him to a hut which he maintained for the accommodation of strangers while the old chief and his numerous family resided in a hut nearby. The people exhibited a great curiosity but did not meddle with the wares which he brought with him. The chief took his horses and turned them over to the care of a young man and in the hut Henry found buffalo hides spread on the ground before the fire and the women at once brought him a great feast of corn, beans and dried beef, the latter being so tainted that he could not eat it. He notes that the Mandans, however, do not care for beef until it commences to taste badly. Henry's visit was purely one of exploration and the Mandans were greatly disappointed when they discovered that he had not come to trade. When night came the young man brought the horses back from the pasture and put them in the hut with their guests. This was a precaution to keep the horses from being stolen by the Assiniboinés, but Henry says the practice gives the habitation an offensive smell to the nose of a stranger.

He describes at length the custom of bathing in the Missouri in which both men and women engaged making use of a white clay as a substitute for soap. This is a regular process every evening and morning. He found both men and women absolutely devoid of all sense of modesty from the standpoint of civilization. Much of this portion of the journal is unquotable, as he describes in great detail the lascivious practices of the natives. As is usual among the natives, the labor is all performed by the women, the men, when not upon hunting or war-like expeditions, passing their time in sports and idleness.

He describes the wooden mortar set up in the corners of the huts in which they break up corn also the earthen pots of their own manufacture in which they cook it. These vessels range in size from a quart to five gallons. The Mandans declared that anything in the shape of flesh or grease cooked in these pottery vessels would instantly destroy them and every family was provided with a brass or iron kettle in which to cook flesh, but their vegetables are cooked in the vessels of clay, which having round bottoms, kept them constantly subject to being overturned. He found a Frenchman there, whom he calls Jean Baptiste, and who had come over the previous May from the Brandon House on the Mouse river to trade. He was located on the opposite side of the river from Black Cat's village but he came over to visit with Henry and when Black Cat learned who his guest was, he got out his American flag, which Lewis and Clarke had given him and hoisted it above the hut in which Henry slept. He noticed, lying in the village, the wreck of the corn mill which Lewis and Clarke had given them; the rascals had stripped it of all the iron parts they could use to make arrows from. Other portions were made into mauls to break up bones. He found a good deal of jealousy existing between the several villages, and they were particularly solicitous to secure arms and ammunition which, of course, was good policy, as it was a good protection against their enemies, the Sioux and the Rees. The village at which Henry was visiting was Roptahee of Lewis and Clarke and the village across the river where the Frenchman was trading was their Matootonaba, or "The Lower village of the Mandans."

Henry is understood by some, who have visited the Mandans, and by others, who have compared his observations concerning

them, with those of others similarly circumstanced, to have given a rather unfair account of some of the characteristics of these Indians. What he thought of them as pilferers, while acknowledging their honorable protection of property in the hands of a host while actually housed, is shown by what follows. He says he packed up his goods and gave them into the care of Black Cat and though the people are given to stealing anything that is left about out of doors, they are honorable about property particularly committed to them.

1726929

Determining to cross over to the other side of the river, Henry paid his reckoning to Black Cat, giving him sixty rounds of ammunition, four large knives, two awls, one fathom of tobacco, one steel, five flints, a dozen hawk bills, two wormers for guns, and a dozen brass rings. A party of eight young men came over from the other village and ferried them across. In getting the horses over, the young fellows fastened a cord to the lower jaw of the horse and taking the cord in his own teeth, swam the river, a full half mile wide, leading the horse after him. The boats in which Henry and his own party were crossed over, were the ordinary bull boats, consisting of a buffalo hide drawn over a frame of willows. One of the boats¹⁵ is capable of carrying a surprisingly large load; Henry, Mr. Chaboillez, and a lusty Indian, together with two hundred pounds of baggage crossed in a single boat. To propel the boat they used a pole five feet long, split at one end to admit a piece of board two feet long and six inches wide which is lashed to the pole, forming a cross. Every stroke of the paddle turns the vessel almost entirely around, consequently the ferryman strikes on one side, then on the other, keeping his vessel rotating back and forth. Though every effort was made to get directly across the stream they drifted nearly a mile down before reaching the other bank. This was the village of the chief known as the Grand and upon invitation Henry went to his hut to lodge while the rest of the party went to the lodge of the Hairy Horn and they were shown every consideration there. This town seemed also to be the home of Big White, the man who later that year, went to Washington with Lewis and Clarke; he was much offended that Henry lodged with the Grand instead of going to his hut, but Henry made it all right with him by paying him for the accommodation which he did not use. He also

found Rene Jaussume residing there. He had lived with the Mandans for more than fifteen years and that fall accompanied Lewis and Clarke to Washington as their interpreter for Big White.

While he was there, six Arikara came up from their villages on Grand river, South Dakota, to treat for peace, there having been some bad feeling between the two bands during the preceeding year, notwithstanding the peace treaties cemented by Lewis and Clarke before they left for the coast, during which unpleasantness five Mandans and two Rees had been killed. They were given a big feast and an agreement to be good was entered into. Henry relates that not many years before the Rees and Mandans had lived in friendship together about ninety miles further down the river but a misunderstanding had arisen between them and they had parted, the Rees going down the river to the mouth of Grand river and the Mandans had gone up stream until they had come upon the villages of the Gros Ventres who would not permit any one to build higher up the river than they were. The Mandans were then inclined to retire further down stream but the Gros Ventres rather insisted on their remaining near them, and as the latter were much the more powerful, the Mandans had deemed discretion the better part of valor and had accepted the invitation.

So it was that at this time they were living as very near neighbors, and none too neighborly.

The Mandans, at this time, had about nine hundred lodges. He notes that in the peace conference they, the Rees and Mandans, did not speak the same language but carried on the conference entirely by gestures and had no difficulty whatever in understanding each other.

That evening, a party of about a hundred buffalo hunters returned, each bearing a half a buffalo; they had been gone but twenty-four hours and had found buffalo in great abundance. They were compelled to hunt in large parties to protect themselves from prowling enemies and also to protect the buffalo and keep them from being scared away, as a large party could surround a herd and destroy all of the cattle without communicating fear to other herds. When a hunting expedition was contemplated, all the villages were notified, but the Mandan and Gros Ven-

tres did not hunt together, but started off in different directions. When the party reached the village the meat was unloaded and carried into the huts of those who secured it. After it had been exposed there for some time, "the ladies of the household" went in and cut it up and shared it with those families who had not sent out hunters or who had been unsuccessful in securing meat. In some instances it happened that so many acquaintances dropped in to be helped that when the distribution was completed not a mouthful remained for the hunter, but the wife good naturedly went out to some hut where they had meat, secured her share and lugged it back home.

The old men and women who had no sons or particular friends to assist them, crept out on the prairie a mile or so to meet the hunters, each of whom cut off a piece of meat for them as they passed by.

He describes their cabins as being circular in form and from a distance looking like a lot of mole hills. They were placed irregularly and so close together that there was only a foot path between them, but they clustered around an open space in the middle of the village which is kept for a sort of public park. He found a constant movement among them from one village to another as some jealousy or unpleasantness grew up or some family dissolved its allegiance to one chief and took up with the protection of another.

He found the Mandans better and more extensive farmers than the Gros Ventres. One of the Mandan chief's huts he found to be ninety feet in diameter, and he describes in great detail the form and manner of construction of the hut and of the enclosed doorway or approach thereto. Of the interior arrangement of the hut he says:

"On entering the first thing that strikes the view is a kind of triangular apartment, always on the left hand and fronting the fire, leaving an open space on the right; this is to hold fire wood in winter. This partition is constructed of square planks about twelve feet high, well calked to keep off the fire; between this partition and the fire is commonly a distance of about five feet, which the master of the hut occupies during the day, seated on a mat made of small willows of equal size, fastened together by threads of their own manufacture, passed through each stick

about a foot apart. These mats are about ten feet long and four broad, the two ends for about two and one-third feet are raised slanting upon the ground, supported by a kind of sofa, over the mat is spread a kind of buffalo skin; some of these couches are raised a foot off of the ground. Upon this, a Mandan sits all day, receives his friends, smokes, and chats the time away with the greatest dignity. On the left side of the host, begins their range of beds; the master and his favorite wife always occupy the first bed, and his other wives each take a separate one in succession. Next to them comes the young people. All are constructed in the same manner and join each other lengthwise. At the bottom of the hut, fronting the master's seat, stands his medicine stage, which may be called his chief treasure, as it contains everything he values most. The article of most consequence is a pair of bulls heads, which seem to be a great manitou and protection. They are well daubed over with earth, and particular care is taken of them. There are also laid up or rather hung up, his arms, shields, ammunition, scalps, and everything else he most values. Next this stage stand the mortar and pestle fixed firmly in the ground. The rest of the hut from this to the door are vacant during the day, but at night is occupied by the horses. There still remains a large clear space in the center round about the fire for the use of the family. This is generally swept once a day. Fronting the porch, stands a stage eight feet high, twenty feet long and ten feet broad for the purpose of hanging up corn to dry in the fall and to dry meat. These stages have a tolerably good flooring, which in the fall is covered with beans to dry."

He found several children whose hair was perfectly gray, resembling aged people. Their hair was much softer and finer than that of other Indians. He found Gros Ventres with yellow hair, and was of the opinion that it could not have resulted from any connection with the whites as the man was more than forty years old and he states that it was not more than thirty years since the first whites visited the Mandans. Evidently, he had forgotten, or was ignorant of the explorations of the Verendreys sixty years earlier. The eyes of the Indians were not a jet black, but generally a dark brown. The men wore their hair in small "quaittes" hanging down their backs, and upon some it was of enormous

length, trailing upon the ground. They always daub it with white and red earth but the women wore their hair short.

Their method of roasting their meat was unique. Cutting it in flat pieces, they suspended it by a cord from the roof over the fire and the cook, sitting near by, with a long stick, kept it constantly in motion, whirling about. When one side was done he turned it over and exposed the other to the heat. He found the tribe afflicted with whooping cough, from which many of the children were dying.

On the 21st of July, he with his party, set off for the upper villages and notes passing many plantations, where the women were at work cultivating the gardens with hoes made from the shoulder blades of buffalo, to which a crooked stick was fastened for a handle. He made a short visit at the Saulier village which contained forty huts.

Going up to the Gros Ventres, he found them to be a war-like people, in strong contrast to the pacific character of the Mandans. They were an inquisitive and forward people, crowding about Henry and his party and making all sorts of sport of them and they were particularly amused at the high sounding language the American captains had applied to themselves. They had hordes of rapacious dogs, making it dangerous to stir without a good stout cudgel to keep them off.

He found that the Gros Ventres had a belief that at first the world was entirely covered with water, inhabited by no living creature but a swan, which in some unaccountable way produced a crow, a wolf and a water hen. One day the crow dressed itself out very fine, having daubed herself with red and white earth, particularly her face which was painted in equal portions of these two colors; having thus made her person more agreeable, she visited the wolf and reminded him of their forlorn and pitable condition, surrounded as they were by water, adding how much happier they would be had they but a certain proportion of earth to obtain which she proposed to send the water hen to the bottom to fetch some up. This was accordingly done, and after some time, the water hen returned with a small quantity in her bill. The crow took the earth in her hand, then directed the wolf to sing a certain song; while he was performing with melodious voice and graceful manner, beating time, the crow sprinkled the

earth around her and instantly the globe was formed and it remains the same to this day. In this state they lived very happily for some time but the crow was restless and wished to better their condition; for this purpose she one day dressed herself, as upon the former occasion, and went to visit the wolf who as usual received her very kindly. She again reminded the wolf of their still deplorable condition, there being no living creature upon the earth but themselves. So she proposed to make Indians, to which end she directed him to sing a particular song, while she beat time with a rattle. After many songs had been sung, the crow by many degrees lost her natural form, and assumed that of an Indian.

He found they had no idea of a Supreme Being and denied the existence of such a thing as immortality. Dr. Cous, however, thinks Henry was mistaken in this view.

He accompanied them upon a war expedition against the Sioux in which they claim to have killed three hundred of the enemy. Henry walked out on the battle field and expressed great doubt of the extent of the carnage, believing that no more than thirty were killed.

He mentions that all of their villages were surrounded by stockades, badly kept up and of very little value. Daily he found the young men engaging in foot races for very long distances in order to be prepared for any emergency, particularly if dismounted in war. These daily races were about six miles long. They also were entertained with a horse race, in which practically all of the horsemen of the village engaged, riding pell mell and without any apparent goal in view. He found them much addicted to shooting at a mark with guns, and bows and arrows and observed among the Mandans the young men continually playing a game in which "two persons are each provided with a stick six feet long on which are cut a certain number of notches an inch long; in the intervals of which are fixed the same number of small bunches of feathers of divers colors, with three pieces of wood, sixteen inches square, one near each end and one in the middle. These are perforated in the center, and through them is passed the rod, painted of divers colors. Each notch has a particular mark, the nature of which, they, themselves, only understand. Indeed the same may be said of the whole game.

The ground on which they play is a smooth level place about forty paces long and five broad; the players stand side by side, start from one end of the ground and trot on until they are half way through, then one of them throws the ball gently ahead in such a manner that it will not roll further than the space allowed for the game. At the same time, both players push their rods forward to overtake and keep pace with the ball, but not to check its course. Then they examine the particular notch or bunch of feathers at which the ball stops and count accordingly."

He learned a good deal about their self-mutilation and torture to which they subject themselves, and from which most of the men have lost a joint of each of their several fingers, the amputation being performed as a memorial to some relative. Before a young man can become a brave, he is required to do a penance. He strips entirely naked and repairs to a high hill, a day's journey from the village, in the depth of winter and must remain there as many days as his strength will permit, dancing, bawling, howling. Some of them have been known to remain out seven days in the severest weather. He is then to return to the village at full speed where he is met by a particular friend and for every day he is absent is given a bull's head, to which is fastened one and a half fathoms of cord and this is fastened to an incision in the penitent's back or shoulders made by pinching up a fold of the skin through which is thrust the barb of an arrow. A separate incision must be made for each bull's head. He must then walk through the village, dragging these weights after him. He found that most of the women had their faces tattooed in a most disgusting manner.

Bradbury's Observations. John Bradbury, F. R. S., who with the noted naturalist, Nuttall, Brackenridge, and others, accompanied the Hunt-Astoria Expedition in 1811, tells of his experiences among the Mandans in his book entitled "Travels In the Interior of America," (printed in Liverpool and published in London, 1817).

In the following quotations therefrom, it will be noted that he remarks upon the "brown hair" of a Minnetaree squaw and her child. Also concerning She-he-ke (Shahaska or Big White), the taking of whom through to the states and back in connection with the Lewis and Clarke expedition involved so much trouble.

The observations of Bradbury concerning the Rees may be found in Part I of this paper, (Vol. 3, S. D. Hist. Coll., p. 432, et. seq.) Extracts from his book, relative to the Mandans follow:

Brown Hair. Big White. "28th. (June, 1811.) Having selected some silver ornaments which I proposed to present to She-he-ke, Mr. Brackenridge agreed to accompany me to the Mandan village. We obtained horses from Mr. Lewis for the journey, and about ten o'clock set off. We crossed Knife river at the lower of the Minnetaree villages, and paid the accustomed price to the squaw who ferried us over; for each of us three balls and three charges of powder. Before we left the village, we were invited into the lodge belonging to the White Wolf, one of the chiefs of this village, with whom we smoked. I was surprised to observe that his squaw and one of his children had brown hair, although their skins did not appear to be lighter colored than the rest of the tribe. As the woman appeared to be above forty years of age, it is almost certain that no intercourse had taken place between these people and the whites at the time she was born. I should have been less surprised at the circumstance had they been one of those tribes who change their places of residence; but they have not even a tradition of having resided in any other place than where the present village stands. The White Wolf appeared to be much pleased with our visit, and by signs invited us to call at his lodge whenever we came that way. He shook hands very cordially with us at parting. In our way to the Mandans we passed through the small village belonging to the Ahwahhaways, consisting of not more than eighteen or twenty lodges. This nation can scarcely muster fifty warriors and yet they carry on an offensive war against the Snake and Flathead Indians. On our arrival at the Mandans, She-he-ke, as before, came to the door of his lodge and said, 'Come in house.' We had scarcely entered when he looked earnestly at us, and said, 'whisky.' In this we could not gratify him, as we had not thought of bringing any. I presented the silver ornaments to him, with which he seemed much pleased, and after smoking we were feasted with a dish consisting of jerked buffalo meat, corn and beans boiled together. I mentioned to him my wish to purchase some moccasins, and he sent out into the village to inform the squaws, who flocked into the lodge in such numbers, and with so plentiful a supply, that I could not buy a tenth part. I furnished myself

with a dozen pairs at a cheap rate, for which I gave a little vermilion, or rather red lead, and a few strings of blue beads. During our stay, She-he-ke, pointing to a little boy in the lodge whom we had not noticed before, gave us to understand that his father was one of the party that accompanied Mr. Lewis, and also indicated the individual. On our return we crossed the Knife river at the upper village of the Minnetarees. The old squaw who brought the canoe to the opposite side of the river, to fetch us over, was accompanied by three young squaws, apparently about fourteen or fifteen years of age, who came over in the canoe, and were followed by an Indian, who swam over to take care of our horses. When our saddles were taken off, and put into the canoe, Mr. Brackenridge and myself stepped in, and were followed by the old squaw, when the three young squaws instantly stripped, threw their clothes into the canoe, and jumped into the river. We had scarcely embarked before they began to practice on us every mischievous trick they could think of. The slow progress which the canoe made enabled them to swim around us frequently, sometimes splashing us; then seizing hold of the old squaw's paddle, who tried in vain to strike them with it; at other times they would pull the canoe in such a manner as to change the direction of its course; at length they all seized hold of the hind part, and hung to it. The old squaw called to the Indian who was following our horses. He immediately swam down to our assistance, and soon relieved us from our frolicsome tormentors, by plunging them successively over head, and holding them for a considerable time under water. After some time they all made their escape from him, by diving and swimming in different directions. On landing, by way of retaliation, we seized their clothes, which caused much laughing betwixt the squaw and the Indian. We had many invitations to have staid to smoke, but as it was near sunset, and we had seven miles to ride, they excused us." (p. 150-153.)

Brackenridge's Journal. H. M. Brackenridge, who came up the Missouri river with the Hunt-Astoria Expedition in 1811, and whose views on the Aricaras were presented in Part I of this paper, (Vol. 3, S. D. Hist. Coll., p. 408, et. seq.), also briefly visited the Mandans, and some of his observations concerning them will now be presented. His travels on that occasion are published in his "Journal of a Voyage up the River Missouri."

(Coale & Maxwell, Baltimore, 1816), and he also mentions briefly the tribe in his "Views of Louisiana," (Schaeffer & Maund, Balto., 1817.) He was a lawyer of keen observation, given somewhat to philosophical reflections upon the red man. The party reached the Mandan villages July 26, 1811. We quote as follows from his "Voyage," etc.:

Villages. "Wednesday, 26th, (July, 1811.) Continued our voyage through a beautiful country, on both sides of the river. In the afternoon passed by all five of the Mandan villages, which are situated upon high open plains, the village of She-he-ke, divided from the others by a handsome stream. The inhabitants had gathered to the bank to see us, several waded into the water, but returned when we beckoned to them not to approach. The men were generally naked, the women dressed according to their age or quality, from the coarse elk skin, to the elegant agalia. It was late at night before we reached the fort of the Missouri Company, which is situated above all the villages, and sixteen hundred and forty miles from the mouth of the Missouri, and in latitude 47 degrees, 13 minutes N."

Brackenridge describes the grim spectacle of the aerial sepulcher of the Mandans:

Burial Scaffolds. "We made several excursions to the villages below, the nearest about six miles off; but as they differ but little from those of the Arikara, I will give no particular description of them. I noticed but one thing as remarkable.

"About two miles on this side of the first village, my attention was attracted by a number of small scaffolds, distributed over several acres of ground on the slope of a hill. I soon discovered that this was a depository of the dead. The scaffolds were raised on forks about ten feet, and were sufficiently wide to contain two bodies; they were in general covered with blue and scarlet cloth, or wrapt in blankets and buffalo robes; we did not approach near enough to examine closely, this frightful Golgotha, or place of human skeletons, but we could see a great number of valuable articles which had been left as offerings to the manes of the deceased. Several crows and magpies were perched upon them; we could not but experience a sensation of horror, when we thought of the attraction which brought these birds to this dismal place. Some of the scaffolds had nearly fallen down, perhaps overturned by the wind, or the effect of decay, and a great num-

ber of bones were scattered on the ground underneath. This mode of exposing the dead has something peculiarly horrible in it. The wolves of the prairie, the birds of the air, and even the Indian dogs, are attracted to the place, and taught to feed on human flesh.

"This custom prevails amongst all the wandering tribes; but amongst the Arikara, the dead are deposited in a grave as with us, which I think clearly proves their origin to be different from that of their neighbors; for there is nothing, in which men in all ages and countries, have manifested more solicitude, than in the treatment of the remains of their deceased friends."

Le Borgne. Brackenridge's vivid description of the Gros Ventre chief, Le Borgne or the One Eyed, is found below. The two chiefs were present at a celebration had by the whites at the Mandan villages on July 4th. He says:

"The two principal chiefs happened to be with us; the One Eyed, and the Black Shoe. The former is a giant in stature, and if his one eye had been placed in the middle of his forehead, he might have passed for a cyclop. His huge limbs and gigantic frame, his bushy hair shading his coarse visage and savage features, with his one eye flashing fire, constituted him a fearful demon. He sways, with unlimited control, all these villages, and is feared by all the neighboring nations. I remarked that on one or two occasions he treated She-he-ke, with great contempt. Lisa having referred to something said by that chief, 'What,' said this monster, 'What. Does that bag of lies pretend to have any authority here?' He is sometimes a cruel and abominable tyrant."

Brackenridge then relates how the ruthless old outlaw murdered a young warrior who came to him to reclaim his wife who had been forcibly taken by that chief in her husband's absence, the mother of the slain warrior having lost her mind in grief over the dastardly act.

Brackenridge adds in a note: "She-he-ke is a fat man, extremely talkative, and no great warrior."

In his "Views of Louisiana," Brackenridge thus summarizes as to the tribes at the Mandan villages:

"Mandans, or Gros Ventres—The remnants of a number of villages, according to their account, seventeen. They claim only

the small portion of country which they actually occupy; in this, resembling the Arikaras. They still consist of seven villages, five of Gros Ventres, and two of Mandans, in the distance of about fifteen miles. They are generally on good terms with each other, but at present there exist considerable dissensions and even open rupture. There is not the least affinity in their languages but the Gros Ventres is spoken by all the Mandans. According to the tradition of these last, who were originally of the Crow nation, owing to a quarrel between two chiefs, over the carcass of a buffalo which they had slain, a separation took place of the followers of each."

His estimate of the space comprised in the general group of those villages, as above, is too large, as it was probably not more than about nine miles between their extremes. He was also probably in error in regarding the Gros Ventres as originally Crows—it would perhaps be nearer historical fact to say that part of them had, about the time of their arrival from eastward, joined the Crows. This point is not entirely clear, however.

Catlin's Account of Mandans. George Catlin, whose observations upon the Arikaras were brought out in Part I of this paper (S. D. Hist. Coll., Vol. 3, pp. 490-3), now comes in for consideration in order of time, in his more detailed treatment of the Mandans in many phases of their character. The space herein allotted to his very interesting description and deductions relative to that tribe, is believed to be justified, in view of the generally admitted fact that of all the visitors among and students of this most interesting tribe of Indians, none have written of them in strains so attractive as did he; while we believe that his exhaustive descriptions of their customs and their traditions concerning their religious ceremonies, including also their Flood legends, constituting undoubted classics, are instructive in a high degree, so much so that there seems to be but one way of presenting his impressions and conclusions in order to do him and the subject in hand justice, viz., by quoting his own language at every step, with but few deviations from that course. No attempt to summarize his views could result otherwise than in a garbling process which must be nothing short of unfair and sadly ineffectual in bringing before the reader or student what Catlin saw and

learned of that tribe while among them under very favorable circumstances for gaining close knowledge of them.

He visited them in 1833; and we quote from his exceedingly valuable and well-known work upon "North American Indians," (Vol. I), in the third edition, published by Tilt and Bogue, London, 1842. His narratives follow:

Peculiar Race. "The Mandans, (or See-pohs-kah-nu-mah-kah-kee, 'people of the pheasants,' as they call themselves), are perhaps one of the most ancient tribes of Indians in our country. Their origin, like that of all the other tribes is from necessity, involved in mystery and obscurity. Their traditions and peculiarities I shall casually recite in this or future epistles, which, when understood, will at once, I think, denominate them a peculiar and distinct race. They take great pride in relating their traditions, with regard to their origin, contending that they were the first people created on earth. Their existence in these regions has been from a very ancient period; and, from what I could learn from other traditions, they have, at a former period, been a very numerous and powerful nation; but by the continual wars which have existed between them and their neighbors, they have been reduced to their present numbers." (Vol. 1, p. 80.)

As seen below, Catlin states that the two Mandan villages were, in 1833, both on the west side of the Missouri. This is accounted for by the fact that after Lewis and Clarke and others who were there early in the nineteenth century had visited them, the upper of the two villages had been flanked on the east side by the changed course of the river, which had formerly passed close to it on the west side. A map published by Wheeler in his "Trail of Lewis and Clarke," (opposite page 270), shows this change in the course of the river, and while Catlin says the two villages were 'about two miles distant from each other,' we have seen that they were really about three miles apart, which is the distance given on Wheeler's map. The river turns from south to east in its course between the two villages, so that the upper village is a little north of due west from the lower one. He also says that these were formerly ten, instead of nine villages, and that they were located fifteen or twenty, instead of eighty miles down the river.

Mandan Villages. "This tribe is at present located on the west

bank of the Missouri, about 1800 miles above St. Louis, and 200 below the mouth of Yellowstone river. They have two villages only, which are about two miles distant from each other; and number in all (as near as I can learn), about 2000 souls. Their present villages are beautifully located, and judiciously also, for defense against the assaults of their enemies. The site of the lower (or principal) town, in particular, is one of the most beautiful and pleasing that can be seen in the world, and even more beautiful than imagination could ever create. In the very midst of an extensive valley (embraced within a thousand graceful swells and parapets or mounds of interminable green changing to blue, as they vanish in the distance), is built the city, or principal town of the Mandans. On an extensive plain (which is covered with a green turf, as well as the hills and dales, as far as the eye can possibly range, without tree or brush to be seen) are to be seen rising from the ground, and towards the heavens, domes, (not 'of gold,') but of dirt, and the thousand spears (not 'spires') and scalp-poles, etc., etc., of the semi-subterraneous village of the hospitable and gentlemanly Mandans.

"These people formerly (and within the recollection of many of their oldest men) lived fifteen or twenty miles further down the river, in ten contiguous villages; the marks or ruins of which are yet plainly to be seen. At that period, it is evident, as well as from the number of lodges which their villages contain, as from their traditions, that their numbers were much greater than at the present day."

Mound Builders. "There are other, and very interesting, traditions and historical facts relative to a still prior location and condition of these people, of which I shall speak more fully on a future occasion. From these, when they are promulged, I think there may be a pretty fair deduction drawn, that they formerly occupied the lower part of the Missouri, and even the Ohio and Muskingum, and have gradually made their way up the Missouri to where they now are. There are many remains on the river below this place (and, in fact, to be seen nearly as low down as St. Louis), which show clearly the peculiar construction of Mandan lodges, and consequently carry strong proof of the above position. While descending the river, however, which I shall

commence in a few weeks, in a canoe, this will be a subject of interest; and I shall give it close examination."

Ditch—Palisade. "The ground on which the Mandan village is at present built, was admirably selected for defense; being on a bank forty or fifty feet above the bed of the river. The greater part of this bank is nearly perpendicular, and of solid rock. The river, suddenly changing its course to a right-angle, protects two sides of the village, which is built upon this promontory or angle; they have therefore but one side to protect, which is effectually done by a strong piquet, and a ditch inside it, of three or four feet in depth. The piquet is composed of timbers of a foot or more in diameter, and eighteen feet in height, set firmly in the ground at sufficient distances from each other to admit of guns and other missiles to be fired between them. The ditch (unlike that of civilized modes or fortifications) is inside of the piquet, in which their warriors screen their bodies from the view and weapons of their enemies, whilst they are re-loading and discharging their weapons through the piquet."

Lodges. "The Mandans are undoubtedly secure in their villages, from the attacks of any Indian nation, and have nothing to fear, except when they meet their enemy on the prairie. Their village has a most novel appearance to the eye of a stranger; their lodges are closely grouped together, having but just room enough for walking and riding between them; and appear from without, to be entirely built of dirt; but one is surprised when he enters them, to see the neatness, comfort, and spacious dimensions of these earth-covered dwellings. They all have a circular form, and are from forty to sixty feet in diameter. Their foundations are prepared by digging some two feet in the ground, and forming the floor of earth, by levelling the requisite size for the lodge. These floors or foundations are all perfectly circular, and varying in size in proportion to the number of inmates, or of the quality or standing of the families which are to occupy them. The superstructure is then produced, by arranging, inside of this circular excavation, firmly fixed in the ground and resting against the bank, a barrier or wall of timbers, some eight or nine inches in diameter, of equal height (about six feet) placed on end, and resting against each other, supported by a formidable embankment of earth raised against them outside; then, resting upon the

tops of these timbers or piles, are others of equal size and equal in numbers, of twenty or twenty-five feet in length, resting firmly against each other, and sending their upper or smaller ends towards the center and top of the lodge; rising at an angle of forty-five degrees to the apex or sky-light, which is about three or four feet in diameter, answering as a chimney and a sky-light at the same time. The roof of the lodge being thus formed, is supported by beams passing around the inner part of the lodge about the middle of these poles or timbers, and themselves upheld by four or five large posts passing down to the floor of the lodge. On the top of, and over the poles forming the roof, is placed a complete mat of willow boughs, of half a foot or more in thickness, which protects the timbers from the dampness of the earth with which the lodge is covered from bottom to top, to the depth of two or three feet; and then with a hard or tough clay, which is impervious to water, and which with long use becomes quite hard, and a lounging place for the whole family in pleasant weather—for sage—for wooing lovers—for dogs and all; an airing place—a lookout—a place for gossip and mirth—a seat for the solitary gaze and meditations of the stern warrior, who sits and contemplates the peaceful mirth and happiness that is breathed beneath him, fruits of his hard fought battles, on fields of desperate combat with bristling red men.

“The floors of these dwellings are of earth, but so hardened by use, and swept so clean, and tracked by bare and moccassined feet, that they have almost a polish, and would scarcely soil the whitest linen. In the center, and immediately under the sky-light is the fireplace—a hole of four or five feet in diameter, of a circular form, sunk a foot or more below the surface, and curbed around with stone. Over the fireplace, and suspended from the apex of diverging props or poles, is generally seen the pot or kettle, filled with buffalo meat; and around it are the family, reclining in the most picturesque attitudes and groups, resting on their buffalo robes and beautiful mats of rushes. These cabins are so spacious, that they hold from twenty to forty persons—a family and all their connections. They all sleep on bedsteads similar in form to ours, but generally not quite so high; made of round poles rudely lashed together with thongs. A buffalo skin, fresh stripped from the animal, is stretched across

the bottom poles, and about two feet from the floor; which when it dries, becomes much contracted, and forms a perfect sacking bottom. The fur side of this skin is placed uppermost, on which they lie with great comfort, with a buffalo robe folded up for a pillow, and others drawn over them instead of blankets. These beds, as far as I have seen them (and I have visited almost every lodge in the village), are uniformly screened with a covering of buffalo or elk skins, oftentimes beautifully dressed and placed over the upright poles or frame, like a suit of curtains; leaving a hole in front, sufficiently spacious for the occupant to pass in and out, to and from his or her bed. Some of these coverings or curtains are exceedingly beautiful, being cut tastefully into fringe, and handsomely ornamented with porcupine's quills and picture writings on hieroglyphics."

Arms and Armor. "From the great number of inmates in these lodges, they are necessarily very spacious, and the number of beds considerable. It is no uncommon thing to see these lodges fifty feet in diameter inside (which is an immense room), with a row of these curtained beds extending quite around their sides, being some ten or twelve of them, placed four or five feet apart, and the space between them occupied by a large post, fixed quite firm in the ground, and six or seven feet high, with large wooden pegs or bolts in it, on which are hung and grouped, with a wild and startling taste, the arms and armor of the respective proprietor; consisting of his whitened shield, embossed and emblazoned with the figure of his protecting medicine (or mystery), his bow and quiver, his war club or battle-axe, his dart or javelin, his tobacco pouch and pipe, his medicine bag, and his eagle, ermine or raven head-dress; and over all, and on top of the post (as if placed by some conjuror or Indian magician, to guard and protect the spell of wildness that reigns in this strange place), stands forth in full relief the head and horns of a buffalo, which is by a village regulation, owned and possessed by every man in the nation, and hung at the head of his bed, which he uses as a mask when called upon by the chiefs, to join in the buffalo dance, of which I shall say more in a future epistle.

"This arrangement of beds, of arms, etc., combining the most vivid display and arrangement of colors, of furs, of trinkets, of barbed and glistening points and steel, of mysteries and hocus

pocus, together with the somber and smoked color of the roof and sides of the lodge; and the wild and rude and red—the graceful (though uncivil) conversational, garrulous, story-telling, and happy, though ignorant and untutored groups, that are smoking their pipes—wooing ther sweethearts, and embracing their little ones about their peaceful and endeared firesides; together with their pots and spoons and other culinary articles of their own manufacture, around them; present altogether one of the most picturesque scenes to the eye of a stranger, that can be possibly seen; and far more wild and vivid than could ever be imagined.”

Garrulous and Happy. “Reader, I say these people were garrulous, story-telling and happy; this is true, and literally so; and it belongs to me to establish the fact, and correct the error which seems to have gone forth to the world on this subject. As I have before observed, there is no subject that I know of, within the scope and reach of human wisdom, on which the civilized world in this enlightened age are more incorrectly informed, than upon that of the true manners and customs, and moral condition, rights and abuses, of the North American Indians; and that, as I have also before remarked, chiefly on account of the difficulty of our cultivating a fair and honorable acquaintance with them, and doing them the justice, and ourselves the credit, of a fair and impartial investigation of their true character. The present age of refinement and research has brought every thing else that I know of (and a vast deal more than the most enthusiastic mind ever dreamed of), within the scope and fair estimation of refined intellect and of science; while the wild and timid savage, with his interesting customs and modes has vanished, or his character has become changed, at the approach of the enlightened and intellectual world; who follow him like a phantom for a while, and in ignorance of his true character at last turn back to the common business and social transactions of life.

“Owing to the above difficulties, which have stood in the way, the world has fallen into many egregious errors with regard to the true modes and meaning of the savage, which I am striving to set forth and correct in the course to these epistles. And amongst them all, there is none more common nor more entirely erroneous, nor more easily refuted, than the current one, that ‘the Indian is a sour, morose, reserved and taciturn man.’ I have

heard this opinion advanced a thousand times, and I believed it; but such certainly, is not uniformly nor generally the case.

"I have observed in all my travels amongst the Indian tribes, and more particularly amongst these unassuming people, that they are far more talkative and conversational race than can easily be seen in the civilized world. This assertion, like many others I shall occasionally make, will somewhat startle the folks of the east, yet it is true. No one can look into the wigwams of these people, or into any little momentary group of them, without being at once struck with the conviction that small-talk, gossip, garrulity, and story-telling are the leading passions with them, who have little else to do in the world, but to while away their lives in the innocent amusement of the exercise of those talents with which nature has liberally endowed them, for their mirth and enjoyment.

"One has but to walk or ride about this little town and its environs for a few hours in a pleasant day, and overlook the numerous games and gambols, where their notes and yelps of exultation are unceasingly vibrating in the atmosphere; or peep in to the wigwams (and watch the glistening fun that's beaming from the noses, cheeks and chins, of the crouching, cross-legged, and prostrate groups around the fire; where the pipe is passed, and jokes and anecdote, and laughter are excessive) to become convinced that it is natural to laugh and be merry. Indeed it would be strange if a race of people like these, who have little else to do or relish in life, should be curtailed in that source of pleasure and amusement; and it would be also strange, if a lifetime of indulgence and practice in so innocent and productive a mode of amusement, free from the cares and anxieties of business or professions, should not advance them in their modes, and enable them to draw far greater pleasure from such sources, than we in the civilized and business world can possibly feel. If the uncultured condition of their minds curtails the number of their enjoyments, yet they are free from, and independent of, a thousand cares and jealousies, which arise from mercenary motives in the civilized world; and are yet far ahead of us (in my opinion) in the real and uninterrupted enjoyment of their simple natural faculties.

"They live in a country and in communities, where it is not

customary to look forward into the future with concern, for they live without incurring the expenses of life, which are absolutely necessary and unavoidable in the enlightened world; and of course their inclinations and faculties are solely directed to the enjoyment of the present day, without the sober reflections on the past or apprehensions of the future.

"With minds thus unexpanded and uninfluenced by the thousand passions and ambitions of civilized life, it is easy and natural to concentrate their thoughts and conversation upon the little and trifling occurrences of their lives. They are fond of fun and good cheer, and can laugh easily and heartily at a slight joke, of which their peculiar modes of life furnish them an inexhaustible fund, and enable them to cheer their little circle about the wigwam fireside with endless laughter and garrulity.

"It may be thought, that I am taking a great deal of pains to establish this fact, and I am dwelling longer upon it than I otherwise should, inasmuch as I am opposing an error that seems to have become current through the world; and which, if it be once corrected, removes a material difficulty, which has always stood in the way of a fair and just estimation of the Indian character. For the purpose of placing the Indian in a proper light before the world, as I hope to do in many respects, it is of importance to me—it is but justice to the savage—and justice to my readers also, that such points should be cleared up as I proceed; and for the world who inquire for correct and just information, they must take my words for the truth, or else come to this country and look for themselves, into these grotesque circles of never-ending laughter and fun, instead of going to Washington city to gaze on the poor embarrassed Indian who is called there by his 'Great Father,' to contend with the sophistry of the learned and inquisitive world, in bartering away his lands with the graves and the hunting grounds of his ancestors. There is not the proper place to study the Indian character; yet it is the place where the sycophant and the scribbler go to gaze and frown upon him—to learn his character, and write his history, and because he does not speak, and quaffs the delicious beverage which he receives from white men's hand, 'he is a speechless brute and drunkard.' An Indian is a beggar in Washington city, and a white man is almost equally so in the Mandan village. An Indian in Washington is mute, is

dumb and embarrassed; and so is a white man (and for the very same reasons) in this place—he has nobody to talk to.

“A wild Indian, to reach the civilized world, must needs travel some thousands of miles in vehicles of conveyance, to which he is unaccustomed—through latitudes and longitudes which are new to him—living on food that he is unused to—stared and gazed at by the thousands and tens of thousands whom he cannot talk to—his heart grieving and his body sickening at the exhibition of white men’s wealth and luxuries, which are enjoyed on the laud, and over the bones of his ancestors. And at the end of his journey he stands (like a caged animal) to be scanned—to be criticised—to be pitied—and heralded to the world as a mute—as a brute, and a beggar.”

White Men Liars. “A white man, to reach this village, must travel by steam boat—by canoes—on horseback and on foot—swim rivers—wade quagmires—fight mosquitoes—patch his moc-casins, and patch them again and again, and his breeches; live on meat alone—sleep on the ground the whole way, and think and dream of his friends he has left behind; and when he gets here, half-starved, and half-naked, and more than half sick, he finds himself a beggar for a place to sleep, and for something to eat; a mute amongst thousands who flock about him, to look and to criticise, and to laugh at him for his jaded appearance, and speak of him as they do of all white men (without distinction) as liars. These people are in the habit of seeing no white men in their country but traders, and know of no other; deeming us all alike, and receiving us all under the presumption that we come to trade or barter; applying to us all, indiscriminately, the epithet of ‘liar’ or traders.

“The reader will therefore see, that we mutually suffer in each other’s estimation from the unfortunate ignorance, which distance has chained us in; and (as I can vouch, and the Indian also, who has visited the civilized world) that the historian who would record justly and correctly the character and customs of a people, must go and live among them. (Vol. 1. p. 86.)

(From Caltin’s second letter on the Mandans. p. 87.)

“In my last, I gave some account of the village, and the customs, and appearances of this strange people—and I will now proceed to give further details on that subject:”

Lodge Roofs. "I have this morning, perched myself upon the top of one of the earth-covered lodges, which I have before described, and having the whole village beneath and about me, with its sachems—its warriors—its dogs—and its horses in motion—its medicines (or mysteries) and scalp poles waiving over my head—its piquets—its green fields and prairies, and rivers in full view, with the din and bustle of the thrilling panorama that is about me. I shall be able, I hope, to give some sketches more to the life than I could have done from any effort of recollection.

"I said that the lodges or wigwams were covered with earth—were forty or sixty feet in diameter, and so closely grouped that there was but just room enough to walk and ride between them—that they had a door by which to enter them, and a hole in the top for the admission of light, and for the smoke to escape—that the inmates were at times grouped upon their tops in conversations and other amusements, etc., and yet you know not exactly how they look, nor what is the precise appearance of the strange world that is about me. There is really a newness and rudeness in every thing that is to be seen. There are several hundred houses or dwellings about me, and they are purely unique—they are all covered with dirt—the people are all red, and yet distinct from all other red folks I have seen. The horses are wild—every dog is a wolf—the whole moving mass are strangers to me; the living, in everything, carry an air of intractable wildness about them, and the dead are not buried but dried upon scaffolds.

"The groups of lodges around me present a very curious and pleasing appearance, resembling in shape (more nearly than anything else I can compare them) to so many potash-kettles inverted. On the tops of these are to be seen groups standing and reclining, whose wild and picturesque appearance would be difficult to describe. Stern warriors; like statues, standing in dignified groups, wrapped in their painted robes, with their heads decked and plumed with quills of the war-eagle; extending their long arms to the east or west, the scenes of their battles, which they are recounting over to each other. In another direction, the wooing lover softening the heart of his fair *tah-nah-tai-a* with the notes of his simple lute. On other lodges, and beyond these, groups are engaged in games of the 'moccasin' or the 'platter.'

Some are to be seen manufacturing robes and dresses, and others, fatigued with amusements or occupations, have stretched their limbs to enjoy the luxury of sleep, whilst basking in the sun. With all this wild and varied medley of living beings are mixed their dogs, which seem to be so near an Indian's heart, as almost to constitute a material link of his existence."

Village Common—"Big Canoe." "In the center of the village is an open space, or public area, of 150 feet in diameter, and circular in form, which is used for all public games and festivals, shows and exhibitions; and also for their 'annual religious ceremonies,' which are soon to take place, and of which I shall hereafter give some account. The lodges around this open space front in, with their doors towards the center; and in the middle of this circle stands an object of great religious veneration, as I am told, on account of the importance it has in the conduction of those annual religious rites.

"This object is in the form of a large hogshead, some eight or ten feet high, made of planks and hoops, containing within it some of their choicest medicines or mysteries, and religiously preserved unbacked or scratched, as a symbol of the 'Big Canoe,' as they call it."

Medicine Lodge—The Flood. "One of the lodges fronting on this circular area, and facing this strange object of their superstition, is called the 'Medicine Lodge,' or council house. It is in this sacred building that these wonderful ceremonies, in commemoration of the flood, take place. I am told by the traders that the cruelties of these scenes are frightful and abhorrent in the extreme; and that this huge wigwam, which is now closed, has been built exclusively for this grand celebration. I am every day reminded of the near approach of the season for this grand affair, and as I have not yet seen anything of it, I cannot describe it; I know it only from the relations of the traders who have witnessed parts of it; and their descriptions are of so extraordinary a character, that I would not be willing to describe until I can see for myself—which will, in all probability, be in a few days.

"In ranging the eye over the village from where I am writing, there is presented to the view the strangest mixture and medley of unintelligible trash (independent of the living beings that are in motion), that can possibly be imagined. On the roofs of the

lodges, besides the groups of living, are buffalos' skins, skin canoes, pots and pottery; sleds and sledges—and suspended on poles, erected some twenty feet above the doors of their wigwams, are displayed on a pleasant day, the scalps of warriors preserved as trophies; and thus proudly exposed as evidence of their warlike deeds. In other parts are raised on poles the warriors' pure and whitened shields and quivers, with medicine bags attached; and here and there a sacrifice of red cloth, or other costly stuff, offered up to the Great Spirit, over the door of some benignant chief, in humble gratitude for the blessings which he is enjoying. Such is a part of the strange medley that is before and around me; and amidst them and the blue streams of smoke that are rising from the tops of these hundred 'coal-pits,' can be seen in distance, the green and boundless, treeless, bushless prairie; and on it and contiguous to the piquet which encloses the village, a hundred scaffolds, on which their 'dead live,' as they term it."

Burial Scaffolds. "These people never bury the dead, but place the bodies on slight scaffolds just above the reach of human hands, and out of the way of wolves and dogs; and they are there left to moulder and decay. This cemetery, or place of deposit for the dead, is just back of the village, on a level prairie; and with all its appearances, history, forms, ceremonies, etc., is one of the strangest and most interesting objects to be described in the vicinity of this peculiar race.

"Whenever a person dies in the Mandan village, and the customary honors and condolence are paid to his remains, and the body dressed in its best attire, painted, oiled, feasted, and supplied with bow and quiver, shield, pipe and tobacco—knife, flint and steel, and provisions enough to last him a few days on the journey which he is to perform; a fresh buffalo's skin, just taken from the animal's back, is wrapped around the body, and tightly bound and wound with thongs of rawhide from head to foot. Then other robes are soaked in water, till they are quite soft and elastic, which are also bandaged around the body in the same manner, and tied fast with thongs, which are wound with great care and exactness, so as to exclude the action of the air from all parts of the body.

"There is then a separate scaffold erected for it, constructed of four up-right poles, a little higher than human hands can

reach; and the tops of these, are small poles passing around from one post to the other; across which a number of willow rods just strong enough to support the body, which is laid upon them on its back, with its feet carefully presented towards the rising sun.

"There are a great number of these bodies resting exactly in a similar way; excepting in some instances where a chief, or medicine man, may be seen with a few yards of scarlet or blue cloth spread over his remains, as a mark of public respect and esteem. Some hundreds of these bodies may be seen reposing in this manner in this curious place, which the Indians call, 'the village of the dead;' and the traveler, who visits this country to study and learn, will not only be struck with the novel appearance of the scene, but if he will give attention to the respect and devotions that are paid to this sacred place, he will draw many a moral deduction that will last him through life; he will learn, at least, that filial, conjugal, and paternal affection are not necessarily the results of civilization, but that the Great Spirit had given them to man in his native state; and that the spices and improvements of the enlightened world have never refined upon them."

Grief for the Dead. "There is not a day in the year in which one may not see in this place evidences of this fact, that will wring tears from his eyes, and kindle in his bosom a spark of respect and sympathy for the poor Indian, if he never felt it before. Fathers, mothers, wives and children, may be seen lying under these scaffolds, prostrated upon the ground, with their faces in the dirt, howling forth incessantly the most piteous and heart-broken cries and lamentations for the misfortunes of their kindred; tearing their hair—cutting their flesh with their knives, and doing other penance to appease the spirits of the dead, whose misfortunes they attribute to some sin or omission of their own, for which they sometimes inflict the most excruciating self-torture."

"Golgotha" Circles. "When the scaffolds on which the bodies rest, decay and fall to the ground, the nearest relations having buried the rest of the bones, take the skulls, which are perfectly bleached and purified, and place them in circles of a hundred or more on the prairie—placed at equal distances apart (some eight or nine inches from each other), with the faces all looking to

the center; where they are religiously protected and preserved in their precise positions from year to year, as objects of religious and affectionate veneration.

"There are several of these 'Golgothas' or circles of twenty or thirty feet in diameter, and in the center of each ring or circle is a little mound of three feet high, on which uniformly rest two buffalo skulls (a male and female); in the center of the little mound is erected a 'medicine pole,' about twenty feet high, supporting many curious articles of mystery and superstition, which they suppose have the power of guarding and protecting this sacred arrangement. Here then, to this strange place do these people again resort, to evince their further affections for the dead—not in groans and lamentations however, for several years have cured the anguish; but fond affections and endearments are here renewed, and conversations are here held and cherished with the dead.

"Each one of these skulls is placed upon a bunch of wild sage, which has been pulled and placed under it. The wife knows (by some mark or resemblance) the skull of her husband or her child, which lies in this group; and there seldom passes a day that she does not visit it, with a dish of the best cooked food that her wigwam affords, which she sets before the skull at night, and returns for the dish in the morning. As soon as it is discovered that the sage on which the skull rests is beginning to decay, the woman cuts a fresh bunch, and places the skull carefully upon it, removing that which was under it.

"Independent of the above named duties, which draw the women to this spot, they visit it from inclination, and linger upon it to hold converse and company with the dead. There is scarcely an hour in a pleasant day, but more or less of these women may be seen sitting or lying by the skull of their child or husband—talking to it in the most pleasant and endearing language that they can use (as they were wont to do in former days) and seemingly getting an answer back. It is not infrequently the case, that the woman brings her needle-work with her, spending the greater part of the day, sitting by the side of the skull of her child, chatting incessantly with it, while she is embroidering or garnishing a pair of moccasins; and perhaps overcome with fatigue, falls asleep, with her arms encircled around it, forgetting

herself for hours; after which she gathers up her things and returns to the village.

"There is something exceedingly interesting and impressive in these scenes, which are so strikingly dissimilar, and yet within a few rods of each other; the one is the place where they pour forth the frantic anguish of their souls—and afterwards pay their visits to the other, to jest and gossip with the dead.

"The great variety of shapes and characters exhibited in these groups or crania, render them a very interesting study for the craniologist and phrenologist; but I apprehend that it would be a matter of great difficulty (if not of impossibility) to procure them at this time, for the use and benefit of the scientific world." (Vol. 1, pp. 87-91.)

In his next letter or chapter Catlin gives some interesting pen pictures of individual Mandan chiefs. Referring to the subject of their customs as having already been dwelt upon to some extent to be taken up in other phases later on, he says:

Mandan Chiefs. "I drop them and introduce a few of the wild and gentlemanly Mandans themselves; and first, Ha-na-tah-nu-mauh, the wolf chief. This man is head chief of the nation, and familiarly known by the name of 'Chief de Loup,' as the French traders call him; a haughty, austere and overbearing man, respected and feared by his people rather than loved. The tenure by which this man holds his office, is that by which the head chiefs of most of the tribes claim, that of inheritance. It is a general, though not an infallible rule amongst the numerous tribes of North American Indians, that the office of chief belongs to the eldest son of a chief; provided he shows himself, by his conduct, to be equally worthy of it as any other in the nation; making it hereditary on a very proper condition—in default of which requisites, or others which may happen, the office is elective.

"The dress of this chief is one of great extravagance, and some beauty; manufactured of skins, and a great number of quills of the raven, forming his stylish head-dress.

"The next and second chief of the tribe, is Mah-to-toh-pa (the four bears.) This extraordinary man, though second in office, is undoubtedly the first and most popular man in the nation. Free, generous, elegant and gentlemanly in his deportment—

handsome, brave and valiant; wearing a robe on his back, with the history of his battles emblazoned on it; which would fill a book of themselves, if properly translated. This, readers, is the most extraordinary man, perhaps, who lives at this day, in the atmosphere of nature's noblemen; and I shall certainly tell you more of him anon.

"After him, there are Mah-tahp-ta-ha, he who rushes through the middle; Seehk-hee-da, the mouse colored feather; Sam-ja-ka-ko-kah, (the deceiving wolf); Mah-to-he-ha, (the old bear), and others, distinguished as chiefs and warriors—and there are belles also; such as Mi-neek-e-sunk-te-ca, the mink; and the little gray-haired Sha-ko-ka, mint; and fifty others who are famous for their conquests, not with the bow or the javelin, but with their small black eyes, which shoot out from under their unfledged brows, and pierce the boldest, fiercest chieftian to the heart."

Peaceable—Prosperous—Polite. "The Mandans are certainly a very interesting and pleasing people in their personal appearance and manners; differing in many respects, both in looks and customs, from all other tribes which I have seen. They are not a war-like people; for they seldom, if ever, carry war into their enemies' country; but when invaded, show their valor and courage to be equal to that of any people on earth. Being a small tribe, and unable to contend on the wide prairies with the Sioux and other roaming tribes, who are ten times more numerous; they have very judiciously located themselves in a permanent village which is strongly fortified, and insures their preservation. By this means they have advanced further in the arts of manufacture; have supplied their lodges more abundantly with the comforts, and even luxuries of life, than any Indian nation I know of. The consequence of this is, that this tribe have taken many steps ahead of other tribes in manners and refinements (if I may be allowed to apply the word refinement to Indian life): and are therefore familiarly (and correctly) denominated, by the traders and others, who have been amongst them, 'the polite and friendly Mandans.'

"There is certainly great justice in the remark; and so forcibly have I been struck with the peculiar ease and elegance of these people, together with the diversity of complexions, the various colors of their hair and eyes; the singularity of their language,

and their peculiar and unaccountable customs, that I am fully convinced that they have sprung from some other origin than that of the other North American tribes, or that they are an amalgam of natives with some civilized race."

Are They "Savages?" "Here arises a question of very great interest and importance for discussion and, after further familiarity with their character, customs, and traditions, if I forget it not, I will eventually give it further consideration. Suffice it then, for the present, that their personal appearance alone, independent to their modes and customs, pronounces them at once as more or less, than savage."

Light Complexion. "A stranger in the Mandan village is first struck with the different shades of complexions, and various colors of hair which he sees in a crowd about him; and is at once almost disposed to exclaim 'that these are not Indians.'

"There are a great many of these people whose complexions appear as light as half breeds; and amongst the women particularly, there are many whose skins are almost white, with the most pleasing symmetry and proportion of features; with hazel, with gray, and with blue eyes, with mildness and sweetness of expression, and excessive modesty of demeanor, which render them exceedingly pleasing and beautiful."

"Half White." "Why this diversity of complexion I cannot tell, nor can they themselves account for it. Their traditions, as far as I have yet learned them, afford us no information of their having had any knowledge of white men before the visit of Lewis and Clarke, made to their village thirty-three years ago. Since that time there have but very few visits from white men to this place, and surely not enough to have changed the complexions and the customs of a nation. And I recollect perfectly well that Governor Clarke told me, before I started for this place, that I would find the Mandans a strange people and half white."

Hair. "The diversity in color of the hair is also equally as great as that in complexion; for in a numerous group of these people (and more particularly amongst the females, who never take pains to change its natural color, as the men often do,) there may be seen every shade and color of hair that can be seen in our own country, with the exception of red or auburn, which is not to be found.

"And there is yet one more strange and unaccountable peculiarity, which can probably be seen no where else on earth; nor on any rational grounds accounted for, other than that it is a freak or order of nature, for which she has not seen fit to assign a reason. There are very many, of both sexes, and of every age, from infancy and to manhood and old age, with hair of a bright silvery grey; and in most instances almost perfectly white.

"This singular and eccentric appearance is much oftener seen among the women than it is with the men; for many of the latter who have it, seem ashamed of it, and artfully conceal it, by filling their hair with glue and black and red earth. The women, on the other hand, seem proud of it and display it often in an almost incredible profusion, which spreads over their shoulders and falls as low as the knee. I have ascertained, on a careful inquiry, that about one in ten or twelve of the whole tribe are what the French call 'cheveux gris,' or greyhairs; and that this strange and unaccountable phenomenon is not the result of disease or habit; but that it is unquestionably a hereditary character which runs in families, and indicates unequality in disposition or intellect. And by passing this hair through my hands, as I often have, I have found it uniformly to be as course and harsh as a horse's mane; differing materially from the hair of other colors, which amongst the Mandans, is generally as fine and soft as silk. The reader will at once see, by the above facts, that there is enough upon the faces and heads of these people to stamp them peculiar, when he meets them in the heart of this almost boundless wilderness, presenting such diversities of color in the complexion and hair; when he knows from what he has seen, and what he had read, that all other primitive tribes known in America, are dark copper-colored, with jet black hair.

"From these few facts alone, the reader will see that I am amongst a strange and interesting people, and know how to pardon me, if I lead him through a maze of novelty and mysteries to the knowledge of a strange, yet kind and hospitable people, whose fate, like that of all their race is sealed; whose doom is fixed, to live just long enough to be imperfectly known, and then to fall before the fell disease or sword of civilizing devastation."

Stature—Plaited Hair. "The stature of the Mandans is rather below the ordinary size of man, with beautiful symmetry of form

and proportion, and wonderful suppleness and elasticity. They are pleasingly erect and graceful, both in their walk and their attitudes; and the hair of the men, which generally spreads over their backs, falling down to the hams, and sometimes to the ground, is divided into plaits or slabs of two inches in width, and filled with a profusion of glue and red earth or vermillion, at intervals of an inch or two, which becoming very hard, remains in an unchanged state from year to year.

"This mode of dressing the hair is curious, and gives to the Mandans the most singular appearance. The hair of the men is uniformly all laid over from the forehead backwards; carefully kept above and resting on the ear, and thence falling down over the back, in these flattened bunches, and painted red, extending oftentimes quite on to the calf of the leg, and sometimes in such profusion as almost to conceal the whole figure from the person walking behind them. In the portrait of San-jaka-ko-kah (the deceiving wolf), where he is represented at full length, with several others of his family around him in a group, there will be seen a fair illustration of these and other customs of these people.

"The hair of the women is also worn as long as they can possibly cultivate it, oiled very often, which preserves on it a beautiful gloss and shows its natural color. They often braid it in two large plaits, one falling down just back of the ear, on each side of the head; and on any occasion which requires them to 'put on their best looks,' they pass their fingers through it, drawing it out of braid, and spreading it over their shoulders.

"The Mandan women observe strictly the same custom which I observed amongst the Crows and Blackfeet (and, in fact, all other tribes I have seen, without a single exception) of parting the hair on the forehead, and always keep the crease or separation filled with vermillion or other red paint. This is one of the very few little, and apparently trivial, customs which I have found amongst the Indians, without being able to assign any cause for it other than that 'they are Indians' and that this is an Indian fashion.

"In mourning, like the Crows and most other tribes, the women are obliged to crop their hair all off, and the usual term of that condolence is until the hair has grown again to its former length.

"When a man mourns for the death of a near relation the case

is quite different. His long, valued tresses are of much greater importance, and only a lock or two can be spared. Just enough to tell of his grief to his friends, without destroying his most valued ornament, is doing just reverence and respect to the dead.

"To repeat what I have said before, the Mandans are a pleasing and friendly race of people, of whom it is proverbial among the traders and all who ever have known them, that their treatment of white men in their country has been friendly and kind ever since their first acquaintance with them. They have ever met and received them, on the prairies and in their villages, with hospitality and honor.

"They are handsome and straight and elegant in their forms, not tall, but quick and graceful; easy and polite in their manners, neat in their persons and beautifully clad. When I say 'neat in person and beautifully clad,' however, I do not intend my readers to understand that such is the case with them all, for among them and most other tribes, as with the enlightened world, there are different grades of society—those who care but little for their personal appearance, and those who take great pains to please themselves and their friends. Amongst this class of personages, such as the chiefs and braves, or warriors of distinction, and their families, and dandies or exquisites (a class of beings whom I shall take due time to speak in a future letter) the strictest regard to decency, and cleanliness and elegance of dress is observed; and there are few people, perhaps, who take more pains to keep their persons neat and cleanly than they do.

"Catlin's version of the circumstances attending the habits of the Mandans regarding bathing will be seen in what he says below, to be quite different from that of Henry, who ascribes to them an abandon which he condemns:

Bathing Place. "At the distance of half a mile or so above the village, is the customary place where the women and girls resort every morning in the summer months to bathe in the river. To this spot they repair by the hundreds every morning at sunrise, where, on the beautiful beach, they can be seen running and glistening in the sun, whilst they are playing their innocent gambols and leaping into the stream. They all learn to swim well, and the poorest swimmer among them will dash fearlessly into the boiling and eddying current of the Missouri and cross it with

perfect ease. At the distance of a quarter of a mile back from the river, extends a terrace or elevated prairie, running north from the village, and forming a kind of semi-circle around this bathing place, and on this terrace, which is some twenty or thirty feet higher than the meadow between it and the river, are stationed every morning several sentinels with their bows and arrows in hand to guard and protect this sacred ground from the approach of boys and men from any directions.

"At a little distance below the village, also, is the place where the men and boys go to bathe and learn to swim. After this morning ablution, they return to their village, wipe their limbs dry and use a profusion of bear's grease through their hair and over their bodies.

Swimming. "The art of swimming is known to all the American Indians; and perhaps no people on earth have taken more pains to learn it, nor any who turn it to better account. There certainly are no people whose avocations of life more often call for the use of their limbs in this way, as many of the tribes spend their lives on the shores of our vast lakes and rivers, paddling about from their childhood in their fragile bark canoes, which are liable to continual accidents, which often throw the Indian upon his natural resources for the preservation of his life.

"There are many times also, when out upon their long marches in the prosecution of their almost continual warfare, when it becomes necessary to plunge into and swim across the wildest streams and rivers, at times when they have no canoes or crafts in which to cross them. I have as yet seen no tribe where this art is neglected. It is learned at a very early age by both sexes, and enables the strong and hardy muscles of the squaws to take their child upon the back, and successfully to pass any river that lies in their way.

"The mode of swimming amongst the Mandans, as well as amongst most of the other tribes, is quite different from that practiced in those parts of the civilized world, which I have had the pleasure to visit. The Indian instead of parting his hands simultaneously under the chin, and making the stroke outward, in a horizontal direction, causing thereby a serious strain upon the chest, throws his body alternately upon the left and right side, raising one arm entirely above the water and reaching as far

forward as he can, to dip it, whilst his whole weight and force are spent upon the one that is passing under him, and like a paddle propelling him along; whilst this arm is making a half circle, and is being raised out of the water behind him, the opposite arm is describing a similar arch in the air above his head, to be dipped in the water as far as he can reach before him, with the hand turned under, forming a sort of bucket, to act more effectively as it passes in its turn underneath him.

"By this bold and powerful mode of swimming, which may want the grace that many would wish to see, I am quite sure, from the experience I have had, that much of the fatigue and strain upon the breast and spine are avoided, and that a man will preserve his strength and his breath much longer in this alternate and rolling motion, than he can in the usual mode of swimming, in the polished world.

Vapor Baths. "In addition to the modes of bathing which I have above described, the Mandans have another, which is a much greater luxury, and often resorted to by the sick, but far more often by the well and sound, as a matter of luxury only, or perhaps for the purpose of hardening their limbs and preparing them for the thousands of exposures and vicissitudes of life to which they are continually liable. I allude to their vapor baths, or sudatories, of which each village had several, and which seem to be a kind of public property—accessible to all, and resorted to by all, male and female, old and young, sick and well.

"In every Mandan lodge is to be seen a crib or basket, much in the shape of a bathing tub, curiously woven with willow boughs, and sufficiently large to receive any person of the family in a reclining or recumbent posture; which when any one is to take a bath, is carried by the squaw to the sudatory for the purpose, and brought back to the wigwam again after it has been used.

These sudatories are always near the village, above or below it on the bank of the river. They are generally built of skins (in the form of a Crow or Sioux lodge which I have before described), covered with buffalo skins sewed tight together, with a kind of furnace in the center; or in other words in the center of the lodge are two walls of stone about six feet long and about two and a half feet apart, and about three feet high; across and over this

space, between the two walls, are laid a number of round sticks, on which the bathing crib is placed. Contiguous to the lodge, and outside of it, is a little furnace something similar, in the side of the bank, where the women kindle a hot fire, and heat to a red heat a number of large stones, which are kept at these places for this particular purpose; and having them all in readiness, she goes home or sends word to inform her husband or other one who is waiting, that all is ready; then he makes his appearance entirely naked, though with a large buffalo robe wrapped around him. He then enters the lodge and places himself in the crib or basket, either on his back or in a sitting posture (the latter of which is generally preferred), with his back to the door of the lodge; then the squaw brings in a large stone red hot, between two sticks (lashed together somewhat in the form of a pair of tongs) and, placing it under him, throws cold water upon it, which raises a profusion of vapor about him. He is at once enveloped in a cloud of steam, and a woman or child will sit at a little distance and continue to dash water upon the stone, whilst the matron of the lodge is out, and preparing to make her appearance with another heated stone; or he will sit and dip from a wooden bowl, with a ladle made of the Mountain sheep's horn, and throw upon the heated stones with his own hands, the water which he is drawing through his lungs and pores, in the next moment, in the most delectable and exhilarating vapors, as it distills through the mat of wild sage and other medicinal and aromatic herbs, which he has strewed over the bottom of his basket, and on which he reclines.

"During all this time the lodge is shut perfectly tight, and he quaffs this delicious and renovating draught to his lungs with deep drawn sighs, and with extended nostrils, until he is drenched in the most profound degree of perspiration that can be produced; when he makes a kind of strangling signal, at which the lodge is opened, and he darts forth with the speed of a frightened deer, and plunges headlong into the river, from which he instantly escapes again, wraps his robe around him and 'leans' as fast as possible for home. Here his limbs are wiped dry, and wrapped close and tight within the fur of the buffalo robes, in which he takes his nap, with his feet to the fire; then oils his limbs and hair with bear's grease, dresses and plumes himself for a visit—

a feast—a parade, or a council; or slicks down his long hair, and rubs his oiled limbs to a polish, with a piece of soft buckskin, prepared to join in games of ball or Tehung-kee.

“Such is the sudatory or the vapor bath of the Mandans, and, as I before observed, it is resorted to both as an every day luxury by those who have the time and energy or industry to indulge in it; and also used by the sick as a remedy for nearly all the diseases which are known amongst them.”

Fever Diseases. “Fever is very rare, and in fact almost unknown amongst these people; but in the few cases of fever which have been known, this treatment has been applied, and without the fatal consequences which we would naturally predict. The greater part of their diseases are inflammatory rheumatism, and other chronic diseases; and for these, this mode of treatment, with their modes of life, does admirably well. This custom is similar amongst nearly all of these Missouri Indians and amongst the Pawees, Omahas and Punchas and other tribes, who have suffered with the small pox (the dread destroyer of the Indian race) this mode was practiced by the poor creatures, who fled by hundreds to the river’s edge, and by hundreds died before they could escape from the waves, into which they had plunged in the heat and rage of a burning fever. Such will yet be the scourge, and such the misery of these poor unthinking people, and each tribe to the Rocky Mountains, as it has been with every tribe between here and the Atlantic Ocean. White men-whiskey-tomahawks-scalping knives, guns, powder and ball-small-pox-debauchery extermination.” (pp. 92-99)

In the following letter or chapter of Catlin, he enlarges upon the head-dresses, tunics, etc., of the Mandans; and then philosophizes upon the mutual misunderstandings existing between the whites and the Indians concerning the habits and customs of the other, and enters into refinements of reasoning and observation which seem to indicate a somewhat profound study by him of the Indian character, and which leads him to the conclusion that the Indian had the best of the Caucasian on the score of reasons for the “state of things.” The originality of Catlin’s treatment of these phases may excuse us in inserting his narrative on that head at large.

Head-Dresses, etc. “The Mandans in many instances dress very

neatly, and some of them splendidly. As they are in their native state, their dresses are all of their own manufacture, and of course, altogether made of skins of different animals belonging to those regions. There is, certainly, a reigning and striking similarity of costume amongst most of the Northwestern tribes; and I cannot say that the dress of the Mandans is decidedly distinct from that of the Crows or the Blackfeet, and Assiniboines or the Sioux; yet there are modes of stitching or embroidering in every tribe, which may at once enable the traveler, who is familiar with their modes, to detect or distinguish the dress of any tribe. These differences consist generally in the fashions of constructing the head-dress, or of garnishing their dresses with the porcupine quills, which they use in great profusion.

“Amongst so many different and distinct nations, always at war with each other, and knowing nothing at all of each others languages; and amongst whom fashions in dress seldom if ever change; it may seem somewhat strange that we should find these people so nearly following, or imitating each other, in the forms and modes of their dress and ornaments. This must, however, be admitted, and I think may be accounted for in a manner, without raising the least argument in favor of the theory of their having all sprung from one stock or family; for in their continual warfare, when chiefs or warriors fall, their clothes and weapons usually fall into the possession of the victors, who wear them; and the rest of the tribe would naturally more or less often copy from or imitate them; and so also in their repeated councils or treaties of peace, such articles of dress and other manufactures are customarily exchanged, which are equally adopted by the other tribes, and consequently, eventually lead to the similarity which we find amongst the modes of dress, etc., of the different tribes.

Tunics-Moccasins. “The tunic or shirt of the Mandan men is very similar in shape to that of the Blackfeet—made of two skins of deer or mountain sheep, strung with scalp-locks, beads and ermine. The leggins, like those of the other tribes of whom I have spoken, are made of deer skins and shaped to fit the leg, embroidered with porcupine quills, and fringed with scalps from their enemies’ heads. Their moccasins are made of buckskin and neatly ornamented with porcupine quills. Over their shoulders (or in

other words, over one shoulder and passing under the other) they very gracefully wear a robe from the young buffalo's back, oftentimes cut down to about half its original size, to make it handy and easy for use. Many of these are also fringed on one side with scalp-locks, and the flesh side of the skin curiously ornamented with pictured representations of the creditable events and battles of their lives.

"Their head-dresses are of various sorts, and many of them exceedingly picturesque and handsome; generally made of war eagles or ravens quills and ermine. These are the most costly part of an Indian's dress in all this country, owing to the difficulty of procuring the quills and fur. The war eagle being the 'rara avis' and the ermine the rarest animal that is found in the country. The tail of the war eagle in this village, provided it is a perfect one, containing some six or eight quills, which are denominated first-rate plumes, and suitable to arrange in a head-dress, will purchase a tolerable good horse (horses, however, are much cheaper here than they are in most other countries.) I have had abundant opportunities of learning the great value which these people sometimes attach to such articles of dress and ornament, as I have been purchasing a great many, which I intend to exhibit in my gallery of Indian paintings, that the world may examine them for themselves, and thereby be enabled to judge of the fidelity of my works, and the ingenuity of Indian manufactures.

"In these purchases I have often been surprised at the prices demanded by them, and perhaps I could not recite a better instance of the kind, than one which occurred here a few days since. One of the chiefs, whom I had painted at full length, in a beautiful costume, with head dress of war eagle quills and ermine, extending quite down to his feet, and whom I was soliciting for the purchase of his dress complete, was willing to sell to me all but the head dress, saying that he could not part with that, as he would never be able to get quills and ermine of so good a quality to make another like it. I agreed with him, however, for the rest of the dress, and importuned him from day to day for the head dress until he at length replied that if I must have it, he must have two horses for it; the bargain was instantly struck—

the horses were procured from the traders at \$25 each, and the head dress secured for my collection."

Horned Crest. "There is occasionally, a chief or a warrior of so extraordinary renown, that he is allowed to wear horns on his head dress, which give to his aspect a strange and majestic effect. These are made of about a third part of the horn of a buffalo bull; the horn having been split from end to end, and a third part of it taken and shaved thin and light, and highly polished. These are attached to the top of the head dress on each side, in the same place that they rise and stand on the head of the buffalo; rising out of the mat of ermine skins and tails, which hang over the top of the head dress somewhat in the form that the large and profuse locks of hair hang and fall over the head of a buffalo bull."

Catlin then explains why, in his view, the Indians are misjudged by the whites as to their supposed frivolities in dress, etc., as follows:

"The same custom I have found observed among the Sioux, the Crows, the Blackfeet and Assiniboinés, and it is one of so striking a character as needs a few more words of observation. There is a peculiar meaning or importance (in their estimation), to this and many other curious and unaccountable appearances in the habits of Indians, upon which the world generally looks as things that are absurd and ridiculous, merely because they are beyond the world's comprehension, or because we do not stop to inquire or learn their uses or meaning."

Indian Character Misunderstood. "I find that the principal cause why we so underrate and despise the savage, is generally because we do not understand him; and the reason why we are ignorant of him and his modes, is that we do not stop to investigate—the world have been too much in the habit of looking upon him as altogether inferior—as a beast, a brute; and unworthy of more than a passing notice. If they stop long enough to form an acquaintance, it is but to take advantage of his ignorance and credulities—to rob him of the wealth and resources of his country—to make him drunk with whiskey, and visit him with abuses which in his ignorance he never thought of. By this method his first visitors entirely overlook and never understand the meaning of his thousand interesting and characteristic customs; and at the

same time, by changing his native modes and habits of life, blot them out from the view of the inquiring world forever.

"It is from the observance of a thousand little and apparently trivial modes and tricks of Indian life, that the Indian character must be learned; and, in fact, it is just the same with us if the subject were reversed; excepting that the system of civilized life would furnish ten apparently useless and ridiculous trifles to one which is found in Indian life; and at least twenty to one which are purely nonsensical and unmeaning.

"The civilized world look upon a group of Indians, in their classic dress, with their few and simple oddities, all of which have their moral meaning, and laugh at them excessively, because they are not like ourselves—we ask, 'why do the silly creatures wear such great bunches of quills on their heads? Such loads and streaks of paint upon their bodies—and bear's grease? Abominable!' And a thousand other equally silly questions, without ever stopping to think that nature taught them to do so—and that they all have some definite importance or meaning which an Indian could explain to us at once, if he were asked and felt disposed to do so—that each quill in his head stood in the eyes of his whole tribe, as the symbol of an enemy who had fallen by his hand—that every streak of red paint covered a wound which he had got in honorable combat—and that the bear's grease, with which he carefully anoints his body every morning, from head to foot, cleanses and purifies the body, and protects his skin from the bite of mosquitoes, and at the same time preserves him from colds and coughs which are usually taken through the pores of the skin.

"At the same time, an Indian looks among the civilized world, no doubt, with equal, if not much greater astonishment, at our apparently, as well as really, ridiculous customs and fashions, but he laughs not, nor ridicules, nor questions, for his good natural sense and good manners forbid him, until he is reclining about the fireside of his wigwam companions, when he vents forth his just criticism upon the learned world, who are a rich and just theme for Indian criticism and Indian gossip.

"An Indian will not ask a white man the reason why he does not oil his skin with bear's grease, or why he does not paint his body, or why he wears a hat on his head, or why he has buttons

on the back part of his coat, where they can never be used—or why he wears whiskers and a shirt collar up to his eyes—or why he sleeps with his head towards the fire instead of his feet—why he walks with his toes out instead of turning them in—or why it is that hundreds of white folks will flock and crowd around a table to see an Indian eat—but he will go home to his wigwam fireside, and ‘make the welkin ring’ with jokes and fun upon the ignorance and folly of the knowing world.

“A wild Indian thrown into civilized atmosphere will see a man occasionally moving in society, wearing a cocked hat; and another with a laced coat and gold or silver epaulettes upon his shoulders, without knowing or inquiring the meaning of them, or the objects for which they are worn. Just so a white man travels amongst a wild and untaught tribe of Indians, and sees occasionally one of them parading about their village, with a head dress of eagles’ quills and ermine, and elevated above it a pair of beautifully polished buffalo horns; and just as ignorant is he also, of their meaning or importance; and more so, for the first will admit the presumption that epaulettes and cocked hats amongst the civilized world, are made for some important purpose, but the latter will presume that horns of an Indian’s head are nothing more or less (nor can they be in their estimation), than Indian nonsense and stupidity.”

Horns Mean Authority. “This custom then, which I have before observed belongs to all the northwestern tribes, is one no doubt of very ancient origin, having a purely classic meaning. No one wears the head dress surmounted with horns except the dignitaries who are very high in authority, and whose exceeding valor, worth and power is admitted by all the nation.

“He may wear them, however, who is not a chief; but a brave, or warrior of such remarkable character, that he is esteemed universally in the tribe, as a man whose ‘voice is as loud in council’ as that of a chief of the first grade, and consequently his power as great.

“This head dress with horns is used only on certain occasions, and they are very seldom. When foreign chiefs, Indian agents, or other important personages visit a tribe; or at war parades, at the celebration of a victory, at public festivals, etc., they are worn; but on no other occasion—unless, sometimes, when a chief



sees fit to lead a war party to battle, he decorates his head with this symbol of power, to stimulate his men, and throws himself into the foremost of the battle, inviting his enemy to concentrate their shafts upon him.

"The horns on these head dresses are but loosely attached at the bottom, so that they easily fall back or forward, according as the head is inclined forward or backward; and by an ingenious motion of the head, which is so slight as to be almost imperceptible, they are made to balance to and fro, and sometimes, one backward and the other forward like a horse's ears, giving a vast deal of expression and force of character, to the appearance of the chief who is wearing them. This, reader, is a remarkable instance, (like hundreds of others), for its striking similarity to Jewish customs, to the kerns (or keren, in Hebrew), the horns worn by the Abyssinian chiefs and Hebrews, as a symbol of power and command; worn at great parades and celebrations of victories.

" 'The false prophet Ze-dekiah, made him horns of iron' (Kings XXII. 11) 'Lift not your horns on high; speak not with a stiff neck' (Ps. LXXV. 5.)

"This last citation seems so exactly to convey to my mind the mode of raising and changing the position of the horns by a motion of the head, as I have above described, that I am irresistibly led to believe that the custom is now practiced amongst these tribes very nearly as it was amongst the Jews; and that it has been, like many other customs of which I shall speak more in the future epistles, handed down and preserved with very little innovation or change from that ancient people.

"The reader will see this custom exemplified in the portrait of Mah-to-toh-pa. This man, although the second chief, was the only man in the nation who was allowed to wear horns; and all, I found, looked upon him as the leader, who had the power to lead all the warriors in time of war; and that, in consequence of the extraordinary battles which he had fought." (p. 104.)

In his "Letter No. 15" Catlin, who is awaiting the arrival of the day of celebration of the "Mandan Religious Ceremony," which he is told by the chiefs occurs when the willow tree is "in full leaf," and which event he connects with the flood because the Indians say, "the twig which the bird brought in was a willow

bough, and had full-grown leaves on it"—tells of his paintings of the Indians and their intense interest in the process, etc.

Portrait Painting—Mandan Astonishment. "I have been continually at work with my brush, with fine and picturesque subjects before me; and from the strange, whimsical, and superstitious notions which they have of an art so novel and unaccountable to them, I have been initiated into many of their mysteries—have witnessed many very curious incidents, and preserved several anecdotes, some of which I must relate.

"Perhaps nothing ever more completely astonished these people than the operations of my brush. The art of portrait painting was a subject entirely new to them, and of course, unthought of; and my appearance here has commenced a new era in the arcana of medicine or mystery. Soon after arriving here, I commenced and finished portraits of the two principal chiefs. This was done without having awakened the curiosity of the villagers, as they had heard nothing of what was going on, and even the chiefs themselves seemed to be ignorant of my designs, until the pictures were completed. No one else was admitted into my lodge during the operation; and when finished, it was exceedingly amusing to see them mutually recognizing each other's likeness, and assuring each other of the striking resemblance which they bore to the originals. Both of these pressed their hands over their mouths a while in dead silence (a custom amongst most tribes, when anything surprises them very much); looking attentively upon the portraits and myself, and upon the palette and colors with which these unaccountable effects had been produced. Then then walked up to me in the most gentle manner, taking me in turn by the hand, with a firm grip, with head and eyes inclined downwards, and in a tone a little above a whisper, pronounced the words 'te-ho-pe-noe wash-ee' and walked off."

Catlin here explains that the above ejaculation meant that he was thereby invested with the degree of a "**great medicine white man**," since which time he had been "regularly installed **medicine** or **mystery**;" that he is now being "called upon and feasted by the doctors, who are all **mystery men**;" under the weight of which responsibility he "assumes all the gravity and circumspection due from so high a dignitary" and "considerable more"—that

by "performing now and then some art or trick that is unfathomable" he hopes to hold out until the "religious ceremony" begins when he may win a seat in the medicine-lodge "by the doctors." He then proceeds:

"After I had finished the portraits of the two chiefs, and they had returned to their wigwams, and deliberately seated themselves by their respective firesides, and silently smoked a pipe or two, (according to a universal custom), they gradually began to tell what had taken place; and at length crowds of gaping listeners, with mouths wide open, thronged their lodges; and a throng of women and girls were about my house, and through every crack and crevice I could see their glistening eyes, which were piercing my hut in a hundred places, from a natural and restless propensity, a curiosity to see what was going on within. An hour or more passed in this way, and the soft and silken throng continually increased, until some hundreds of them were clung and piled about my wigwam like a swarm of bees hanging on the front and sides of their hive.

"During this time, not a man made his appearance about the premises. After a while, however, they could be seen, folded in their robes, gradually siding up towards the lodge, with a silly look upon their faces, which confessed at once that curiosity was leading them reluctantly, where their pride checked and forbade them to go. The rush soon after became general, and the chiefs and medicine men took possession of my room, placing soldiers (braves with spears in their hands), at the door, admitting no one, but such as were allowed by the chiefs to come in."

Paintings Explained. "Monsr. Kipp (the agent of the fur company, who has lived here eight years and to whom, for his politeness and hospitality, I am much indebted), at this time took a seat with the chiefs, and, speaking their language fluently, he explained to them my views and the objects for which I was painting these portraits; and also expounded to them the manner in which they were made—at which they seemed all to be very much pleased. The necessity at this time of exposing the portraits to the view of the crowds who were assembled around the house, became imperative, and they were held up together over the door, so that the whole village had a chance to see and recognize their chiefs. The effect upon so mixed a multitude, who

as yet had heard no way of accounting for them, was novel, and really laughable. The likenesses were instantly recognized, and many of the gaping multitude commenced yelping; some were stamping off in the jarring dance—others were singing, and others again were crying—hundreds covered their mouths with their hands and were mute; others indignant, drove their spears frightfully into the ground, and some threw a reddened arrow at the sun, and went home to their wigwams.

Catlin the Great. "The pictures seen, the next curiosity was to see the man who had made them, and I was called forth. Readers, if you have any imagination, save me the trouble of painting this scene. * * * I stepped forth and was instantly hemmed in in the throng. Women were gaping and gazing—and warriors and braves were offering me their hands—whilst little boys and girls, by dozens were struggling through the crowd to touch me with the ends of their fingers; and whilst I was engaged from the waist upwards, in fending off the throng—and shaking hands, my legs were assailed (not unlike the nibbling little fish, when I have been standing in deep water) by children, who were creeping between the legs of the bystanders for the curiosity or honor of touching me with the ends of their fingers. The eager curiosity and expression of astonishment with which they gazed upon me, plainly showed that they looked upon me as some strange and unaccountable being. They pronounced me the greatest medicine man in the world; for they said I had made living beings—they said they could see their chiefs alive, in two places—those that I had made were a little alive—they could see their eyes move—could see them smile and laugh, and that if they could laugh they could certainly speak, if they should try, and they must therefore have some life in them.

"The squaws generally agreed, that they had discovered life enough in them to render my medicine too great for the Mandans; saying that such an operation could not be performed without taking away from the original something of his existence, which I put in the picture, and they could see it move, could see it stir.

"This curtailing of the natural existence, for the purpose of instilling life into the secondary one, they decided to be a useless and destructive operation, and one which was calculated to do great mischief in their happy community; and they com-

menced a mournful and doleful chant against me crying and weeping bitterly through the village, proclaiming me a most 'dangerous man, one who could make living persons by looking at them; and at the same time could, as a matter of course, destroy life in the same way, if I chose. That my medicine was dangerous to their lives, and that I must leave the village immediately. That bad luck would happen to those whom I painted—that I was to take a part of the existence of those whom I had painted, and carry it home with me amongst the white people, and that when they died they would never sleep quiet in their graves.' "

Oppose His "Medicine." "In this way the women and some old quack-medicine-men together, had succeeded in raising an opposition against me; and the reasons they assigned were so plausible and so exactly suited for their superstitious feelings, that they completely succeeded in exciting fears and a general panic in the minds of a number of chiefs who had agreed to sit for their portraits, and my operations were, of course, for several days completely at a stand still. A grave council was held on the subject from day to day, and there seemed great difficulty in deciding what was to be done with me and the dangerous art which I was practicing; and which had far exceeded their original expectations. I finally got admittance to their sacred conclave, and assured them that I was but a man like themselves—that my art had no medicine or mystery about it, but could be learned by them if they would practice it as long as I had—that my intentions towards them were of the most friendly kind, and that in the country where I live, brave men never allowed their squaws to frighten them with their foolish whims and stories. They all immediately arose, shook me by the hand, and dressed themselves for their pictures. After this there was no further difficulty about sitting; all were ready to be painted. The squaws were silent, and my painting room a continual resort for the chiefs, and braves, and medicine-men; where they waited with impatience for the completion of each other's pictures—that they could decide as to the likeness as it came from under the brush; that they could laugh, and yell, and sing a new song, and smoke a fresh pipe to the health and success of him who had just been safely delivered from the hands and the mystic operation of the 'white medicine.' "

Smoking Him Safe. "In each of these operations, as they successfully took place, I observed that a pipe or two were well filled, and as soon as I commenced painting the chiefs and braves, who sat around the sides of the lodge, commenced smoking for the success of the picture (and probably as much or more so for the safe deliverance of the sitter from harm while under the operation;) and so they continued to pass the pipe around until the portrait was completed."

That Catlin could assume the role of the actor with success even when driven to it as an expedient before an Indian audience, is duly attested in his actions while painting these portraits, "stopping occasionally very suddenly as if something was wrong, and taking a tremendous puff or two at the pipe, and streaming the smoke through my nostrils, exhibiting in my looks and actions an evident relief; enabling me to proceed with more facility and success," and by flattery of the respective subjects as they succeeded each other, "and taking them according to rank, or standing, making it a matter of honor with them, which pleased them exceedingly;" in this way proving himself "not guilty" under the indictment of the "women and old quacks;" after which he was elegantly feasted and presented, with "a doctor's rattle, and also a magical wand, or a doctor's staff, strung with claws of the grizzly bear, with hoofs of the antelope—with ermine—with wild sage and bat's wings—and perfumed withal with the choice and savory odor of the pole-cat—a dog was sacrificed and hung by the legs over my wigwam, and I was therefore and thereby initiated into (and countenanced in the practice of) the arcana of medicine or mystery, and considered a fellow of extraordinary society of conjurati." It seems evident that in this counter-process of administering of medicine the Indians came off victors, as the italics are Catlin's own.

Trouble—"The Eyes Move." "Since this signal success and good fortune in my operations, things have gone on very pleasantly, and I have had a great deal of amusement. Some altercation has taken place, however, amongst the chiefs and braves, with regard to standing or rank, of which they are exceedingly jealous; and they must sit (if at all) in regular order, according to that rank; the trouble is all settled at last, however, and I have no want of subjects, though a great many have become again

alarmed, and are unwilling to sit, for fear, as some say, that they will die prematurely if painted; and as others say, that if they are painted, the picture will live after they are dead, and they cannot sleep quiet in their graves.

"I have had several most remarkable occurrences in my painting room, of this kind, which have made me some everlasting enemies here; though the minds and feelings of the chiefs and medicine-men have not been affected by them. There had been three or four instances where proud and aspiring young men have been in my lodge, and after gazing at the portraits of the head chiefs across the room (which sits looking them in the eyes,) have raised their hands before their faces and walked around to the side of the lodge, on the right or left, from whence to take a long and fair side-look at the chief, instead of staring him full in the face (which is a most unpardonable offense in all Indian tribes;) and after having got in that position, and cast their eyes again upon the portrait which was yet looking them full in the face, have thrown their robes over their heads and bolted out of the wigwam, filled equally with astonishment and indignation; avering, as they always will in a sullen mood, that 'they saw the eyes move'—that as they walked around the room 'the eyes of the portrait followed them.' With these unfortunate gentleman, repeated efforts have been made by the traders, and also by the chiefs and doctors, who understand the illusion, to convince them of their error, by explaining the mystery; but they will not hear to any explanation whatever, saying, that 'what they see with their eyes is always evidence enough for them,' that they always believe their own eyes sooner than a hundred tongues,' and all efforts to get them a second time to my room, or into my company in any place, has proved entirely unsuccessful."

Trouble with a medicine man, who, not having been given a sitting before Catlin's palette and brush, tried to stampede the assembly, who thronged his studio, by declaring that all who were painted "were fools and would soon die," led to a conference in which Catlin, by playing upon the vanity of the disaffected Indian and convincing him that a revelation from the whole tribe had proven him so extraordinary a character that he (Catlin) would soon paint his portrait, converted him into his confidence and caused him to pronounce Catlin a "good man" whose "medicine

is great," and to resolve that he would submit and be "made alive with paints." Catlin then says:

Much-painted Vanity. "At that hour then, bedaubed and streaked with paints of various colors, with bear's grease and charcoal, with medicine pipes in his hands and foxes tails attached to his heels, entered Mah-to-he-hah (the old bear,) with a train of his own profession, who seated themselves around him; and also a number of boys, whom it was requested should remain with him, and whom I supposed it possible might have been pupils, whom he was instructing in the mysteries of *materia medica* and *hoco poca*. He took his position in the middle of the room, waving his eagle calumets in each hand, and singing his medicine song which he sings over his dying patient, looking me full in the face while I completed his picture, which I painted at full length. His vanity has been completely gratified in the operation; he lies for hours together, day after day, in my room, in front of his picture, gazing intently upon it, lights my pipe for me while I am painting—shakes hands with me a dozen times on each day, and talks of me, and enlarges upon my medicine virtues and my talents, wherever he goes; so that this new difficulty is now removed, and instead of preaching against me, he is one of my strongest and most enthusiastic friends and aids in the country." (p. 111.)

Catlin next enlarges upon the elements of Indian dandies among the Mandans; relates how he was preparing to paint a picture of one of them, which met with protests among the more respectable Indians. He then narrates a feast given to him by Four Bears, "the second chief of the nation, and the most popular man of the Mandans," served in three courses and embracing "pemican and marrow-fat;" mentioning incidentally the pottery dishes used at the feast and which he declares are such as are made by the Mandan women in large quantities. We recur to his text:

Indian Dandies. "Besides chiefs, and braves and doctors, of whom I have heretofore spoken, there is yet another character of whom I must say a few words before I proceed on other topics. The person I allude to, is the one mentioned at the close of my last letter, and familiarly known and countenanced in every tribe as an Indian beaux or dandy. Such personages may be seen on

every pleasant day, strutting and parading around the village in the most beautiful and unsoiled dresses, without the honorable trophies however of scalp locks and claws of the grizzly bear, attached to their costumes, for with such things they deal not. They are not peculiarly anxious to hazard their lives in equal and honorable combat with the one, or disposed to cross the path of the other; but generally remain about the village, to take care of the women, and attire themselves in the skins of such animals as they can easily kill, without seeking the rugged cliffs for the war eagle, or visiting the haunts of the grizzly bear. They plume themselves with swan's-down and quills of ducks, with braids and plaits of sweet scented grass and other harmless and unmeaning ornaments, which have no other merit than they themselves have, that of looking pretty and ornamental.

"These clean and elegant gentlemen, who are very few in each tribe, are held in very little estimation by the chiefs and braves; inasmuch as it is known by all, that they have a most horrible aversion to arms, and are denominated "faint hearts" or "old women" by the whole tribe, and are therefore little respected. They seem, however, to be tolerably well contented with the appellation, together with the celebrity they have acquired amongst the women and children for the beauty and elegance of their personal appearance; and most of them seem to take and enjoy their share of the world's pleasures, although they are looked upon as drones in society.

"These gay and tinselled bucks may be seen on a pleasant day in all their plumes, astride of their pied or dappled ponies, with a fan in the right hand, made of a turkey's tail—with whip and fly-brush attached to the wrist of the same hand, and underneath them a white and beautiful and soft pleasure saddle, ornamented with porcupine quills and ermine, parading through and lounging about the village for an hour or so, when they will cautiously bend their course to the suburbs of the town, where they will sit or recline upon their horses for an hour or two, overlooking the beautiful games where the braves and young aspirants are contending the manly and athletic amusements. When they are fatigued with this severe effort, they wend their way back again, lift off their fine white saddles of doe skin, which is wadded with buffalo's hair, turn out their ponies, take a little refreshment,

smoke a pipe, fan themselves to sleep, and doze away the rest of the day.

"Whilst I have been painting, from day to day, there have been two or three of these fops continually strutting and taking their attitudes in front of my door; decked out in all their finery, without receiving other benefit or other information, than such as they could discover through the cracks and seams of my cabin. The chiefs, I observed, passed them by without notice and of course without inviting them in; and they seemed to figure about my door from day to day in their best dresses and best attitudes, as if in hopes that I would select them as models, for my canvas. It was natural that I should do so, for their costumes and personal appearance was entirely more beautiful than anything else to be seen in the village. My plans were laid, and one day when I had got through with all the head men, who were willing to sit to be painted, and there were two or three chiefs lounging in my room, I stepped to the door and tapped one of these fellows on the shoulder, who took the hint and stepped in, well pleased and delighted with the signal and honorable notice I had at length taken of him and his beautiful dress. Readers, you cannot imagine what was the expression of gratitude which beamed forth on this poor fellow's face, and how high his heart beat with joy and pride at the idea of my selecting him to be immortal, alongside of the chiefs and worthies whose portraits he saw arranged around the room; and by which honor he, undoubtedly, considered himself well paid for two or three weeks of regular painting, and greasing, and dressing, and standing alternately on one leg and the other at the door of my premises.

"Well, I placed him before me, and a canvas on my easel, and 'chalked him out' at full length. He was truly a beautiful subject for the brush, and I was filled with enthusiasm—his dress from head to foot was of the skins of the mountain goat, and dressed so neatly, that they were almost as soft and as white as Canton crape—around the bottom and sides it was trimmed with ermine and porcupine quills of beautiful dyes garnished it in a hundred parts; his hair, which was long, and spread over his back and shoulders, extending nearly to the ground, was all combed back and parted on his forehead like that of a woman. He was a tall and fine figure, with ease and grace in his movements, which were

well worthy of a man of better caste. In his left hand he held a beautiful pipe, and in his right hand he plied his fan, and on his wrist was still attached his whip of elk's horn, and his fly-brush made of the buffalo's tail. There was nought about him of the terrible, and naught to shock the finest, chastest intellect.

"I had thus far progressed, with high-wrought feelings of pleasure, when the two or three chiefs, who had been seated around the lodge, and whose portraits I had before painted, arose suddenly, and wrapping themselves tightly in their robes, crossed my room with a quick and heavy step, and took an informal leave of my cabin. I was apprehensive of their displeasure, though I continued my work; and in a few minutes the interpreter came furiously into my room, addressing me thus: 'My God, sir, this never will do; you have given great offense to the chiefs—they have made complaint of your conduct to me—they tell me this is a worthless fellow—a man of no account in the nation, and if you paint his picture, you must instantly destroy theirs; you have no alternative, my dear sir, and the quicker this chap is put out of your lodge the better.'

"The same matter was explained to my sitter by the interpreter, when he picked up his robe, wrapped himself in it, plied his fan nimbly about his face, and walked out of the lodge in silence, but with quite a consequential smile, taking his old position in front of the door a while, after which he drew himself quietly off without further exhibition. So highly do Mandan braves and worthies value the honor of being painted; and so little do they value man, however lavishly nature may have bestowed her master touches upon him, who has not the pride and noble bearing of a warrior.

Four Bears Again. "I spoke in a former letter, of Mah-to-toh-pa (the four bears), the second chief of the nation, and the most popular man of the Mandans—a high minded and gallant warrior, as well as a polite and polished gentleman. Since I painted his portrait, as I before described, I have received at his hands many marked and signal attentions, some of which I must name to you. as the very relation of them will put you in possession of many little forms and modes of Indian life, which otherwise might not have been noted.

"About a week since, this noble fellow stepped into my painting room about twelve o'clock in the day in full and splendid dress,

and passing his arm through mine, pointed the way, and lead me in the most gentlemanly manner, through the village and into his own lodge, where a feast was prepared in a careful manner and awaited our arrival. The lodge in which he dwelt was a room of immense size, some forty or fifty feet in diameter in a circular form, and about twenty feet high—with a sunken curb of stone in the center, of five or six feet in diameter and one foot deep, which contained the fire over which the pot was boiling. I was led near the edge of this curb and seated on a very handsome robe, most ingeniously garnished and painted with hieroglyphics, and he seated himself gracefully on another one at a little distance from me; with the feast prepared in several dishes, resting on a beautiful rush mat, which was placed between us.

“The simple feast which was spread before us consisted of three dishes only, two of which were served in wooden bowls, and the third in an earthen vessel of their own manufacture, somewhat in the shape of a bread tray in our own country. This last contained a quantity of pem-i-can and marrow fat; and one of the former held a fine brace of buffalo ribs, delightfully roasted, and the other was filled with a kind of paste or pudding, made of the flour of the ‘pomme blanche,’ as the French call it, a delicious turnip of the prairie, finely flavored with the buffalo berries, which are collected in great quantities in this country, and used with divers dishes in cooking, as we in civilized countries use dried currents, which they very much resemble.

“A handsome pipe and a tobacco pouch made of the otter skin, filled with k’nick-k’nick (Indian tobacco), laid by the side of the feast; and when we were seated, mine host took up his pipe, and deliberately filled it, and instead of lighting it by the fire, which he could easily have done, he drew from his pouch his flint and steel, and raised a spark with which he kindled it. He drew a few strong whiffs through it, and presented the stem of it to my mouth, through which I drew a whiff or two while he held the stem in his hands. This done, he laid down the pipe, and drawing his knife from his belt, cut off a very small piece of meat from the ribs, and pronouncing the words ‘ho-pe-ne-eh-ee wa-pa-shee’ (meaning a medicine sacrifice), threw it into the fire.

“He then (by signals) requested me to eat, and I commenced, after drawing out from my belt my knife (which it is supposed

that every man in this country carries about him, for at an Indian feast a knife is never offered to a guest.) Reader be not astonished that I sat and ate my dinner alone, for such is the custom of this strange land. In all tribes in these western regions it is an invariable rule that a chief never eats with his guests invited to a feast; but while they eat, he sits by, at their service, and ready to wait upon them; deliberately charging and lighting the pipe which is to be passed around after the feast is over. Such was the case in the present instance, and while I was eating, Mah-to-toh-pa sat cross-legged before me, cleaning his pipe and preparing it for a cheerful smoke when I had finished my meal. For this ceremony I observed he was making unusual preparations, and I observed as I ate, that after he had taken enough of the k'nick-k'nick, or bark of the red willow, from his pouch, he rolled out of it also a piece of the 'castor,' which it is customary amongst these folks to carry in their tobacco sack to give it a flavor; and, shaving off a small quantity of it, mixed it with the bark, with which he charged his pipe. This done he drew also from his sack a small parcel containing a fine powder, which was made of dried buffalo dung, a little of which he spread over the top, (according also to custom) which was like tinder; having no other effect than that of lighting the pipe with ease and satisfaction. My appetite satiated, I straightened up, and with a whiff the pipe was lit, we enjoyed together for a quarter of an hour the most delightful exchange of good feelings, amid clouds of smoke and pantomimic signs and gesticulations.

Clay Dishes, etc. "I spoke also of the earthen dishes or bowls in which these viands were served out. They are a familiar part of the culinary furniture of every Mandan lodge, and are manufactured by the women of this tribe in great quantities, and modeled into a thousand forms and tastes. They are made by the hands of the women from a tough black clay, and baked in kilns which are made for the purpose, and are nearly equal in hardness to our own manufacture of pottery; though they have not yet got the art of glazing, which would be to them a valuable secret. They make them so strong and serviceable, however, that they hang them over the fire as we do our iron pots, and boil their meat in them with perfect success. I have seen some few specimens of such manufacture, which have been dug up in Indian mounds

and tombs in the southern and middle states, placed in our eastern museums and looked upon as a great wonder, when here this novelty is at once done away with, and the whole mystery; where women can be seen handling them and using them by hundreds, and they can be seen every day in the summer also, moulding them into many fanciful forms, and passing them through the kiln where they are hardened." (p. 116.)

Mandan Polygamists. "In the succeeding chapter Catlin refers to the practice of polygamy among the Mandans—a practice "countenanced amongst all of the North American Indians" visited by him. This practice, he says, arose in part from the necessity of a chief's having a sufficiency of menial servants "to perform the numerous duties and drudgeries" of an establishment in which liberal entertainment was an incident, in part in order to procure through their services the luxuries of wealth; another prominent ascribed reason being the necessity of replenishing the stock which was from time to time depleted among the warriors in the vicissitudes of warfare. The wives, he declares, were purchased, mostly from the father. On this head he says:

"There are other instances to be sure, where the parties approach each other, and from the expression of a mutual fondness, make their own arrangements, and pass their own mutual vows, which are quite as sacred and inviolable as similar assurances when made in the civilized world. Yet even in such cases, the marriage is never consummated without the necessary form of making presents to the father of the girl." (p. 120.)

Catlin then remarks upon the practice of the fur traders who come among the Indians and who, "from policy and almost of absolute necessity," connect themselves by marriage with "the most influential families in the tribe"; adding: "The young women of the best families only can aspire to such an elevation; and the most of them are exceedingly ambitious for such a connection." He regards this character of connection, however, as one which "can scarcely be called marriages," and as generally entered into "without the form of solemnizing ceremony of a marriage." He then moralizes upon the condition of the Indian woman, as follows:

"From the enslaved and degraded condition in which the women are held in the Indian country, the world would naturally

think that theirs must be a community formed of incongruous and unharmonizing materials; and consequently destitute of the fine, reciprocal feelings and attachments which flow from the domestic relations in the civilized world; yet it would be untrue, and doing injustice to the Indians, to say that they were in the least behind us in conjugal, in filial, and in paternal affection. There is no trait in the human character which is more universal than the attachments which flow from these relations, and there is no part of the human species who have a stronger affection and a higher regard for them than the North American Indians." He thus summarizes upon the Mandan women preparatory to giving a specific account of their numerous burdensome duties, etc.:

"Such, then, are the Mandans—their women are beautiful and modest, and amongst the respectable families, virtue is as highly cherished and as inapproachable, as in any society whatever; yet at the same time a chief may marry a dozen wives if he pleases, and so may a white man; and if either wishes to marry the most beautiful and modest girl in the tribe, she is valued only equal, perhaps, to two horses, a gun with powder and ball for a year, five or six pounds of beads, a couple of gallons of whiskey, and a handful of awls." The girls, he affirms, "like those of most of these northwestern tribes, marry at the age of twelve or fourteen, and some at the age of eleven years." (pp. 120-21.) He proceeds:

Women Agriculturalists—Utensils. "The principal occupation of the women in this village, consists in procuring wood and water, in cooking, dressing robes and other skins, in drying meat and wild fruit, and raising corn (maize.) The Mandans are somewhat of agriculturalists, as they raise a great deal of corn and some pumpkins and squashes. This is all done by the women, who make their hoes of the shoulder blade of the buffalo or the elk, and dig the ground over instead of plowing it, which is consequently done with a vast deal of labor. They raise a very small sort of corn, the ears of which are no larger than a man's thumb. This variety is very well adapted to their climate, as it ripens sooner than other varieties, which would not mature in so cold a latitude. The green corn season is one of great festivity with them, and one of much importance. The greater part of

their crop is eaten during these festivals, and the remainder is gathered and dried on the cob, before it has ripened, and packed away in 'caches' (as the French call them), holes dug in the ground, some six or seven feet deep, the insides of which are somewhat in the form of a jug, and tightly closed at the top. The corn, and even dried meat and pemican, are placed in these caches, being packed tight around the sides, with prairie grass, and effectually preserved through the severest winters.

Corn and Meat. "Corn and dried meat are generally laid in in the fall, in sufficient quantities to support them through the winter. These are the principal articles of food during the long and inclement season; and in addition to them, they oftentimes have in store great quantities of dried squashes and dried 'pommes blanches,' a kind of turnip which grows in great abundance in these regions, and of which I have spoken before. These are dried in great quantities, and pounded into a sort of meal, and cooked with the dried meat and corn. Great quantities also of wild fruit of different kinds are dried and laid away in store for the winter season, such as buffalo berries, strawberries, and wild plums."

Hospitality—Meals. "The buffalo meat however is the great staple or 'staff of life' in this country, and seldom (if ever) fails to afford them an abundant and wholesome means of subsistence. There are, from a fair computation, something like 250,000 Indians in these western regions, who live almost exclusively on the flesh of these animals, through every part of the year. During the summer and fall months they use the meat fresh, and cook it in a great variety of ways, by roasting, broiling, boiling, stewing, smoking, etc.; and by boiling the ribs and joints with the marrow in them, make a delicious soup, which is universally used, and in vast quantities. The Mandans, I find, have no regular stated times for their meals, but generally eat about twice in the twenty-four hours. The pot is always boiling over the fire, and any one who is hungry (either of the household or from any other part of the village) has a right to order it taken off, and to fall to eating as he pleases. Such is an unvarying custom amongst the North American Indians, and I very much doubt, whether the civilized world have in their institutions any system which can be properly called more humane or charitable. Every man, woman

or child in Indian communities is allowed to enter any one's lodge, and even that of the chief of the nation, and eat when they are hungry, provided misfortune or necessity has driven them to it. Even so can the poorest and most worthless drone of the nation; if he is too lazy to hunt or supply himself, he can walk into any lodge and everyone will share with him as long as there is anything to eat. He, however, who thus begs when is able to hunt, pays dear for his meat, for he is stigmatized with the disgraceful epithet of a poltroon and a beggar.

"The Mandans, like all other tribes, sit at their meals cross-legged, or rather with their ankles crossed in front of them, and both feet drawn close under their bodies; or, which is very often the case also, take their meals in a reclining posture, with the legs thrown out, and the body resting on one elbow and forearm, which are under them. The dishes from which they eat are invariably on the ground or floor of the lodge, and the group resting on buffalo robes or mats of various structure and manufacture.

"The position in which the women sit at their meals and on other occasions is different from that of the men, and one which they take and rise from again, with great ease and much grace, by merely bending the knees both together, inclining the body back and the head and shoulders quite forward, they squat entirely down to the ground, inclining both feet either to the right or left. In this position they always rest while eating, and it is both modest and graceful, for they seem, with apparent ease, to assume the position, and rise out of it, without using their hands in any way to assist them.

"These women, however, although graceful and civil, and ever so graceful and beautiful or ever so hungry, are not allowed to sit in the same group with the men while at their meals. So far as I have yet traveled in the Indian country, I never have seen an Indian woman eating with her husband. Men form the first group at the banquet, and women and children and dogs all come together at the next, and these gormandize and glut themselves to an enormous extent, though the men very seldom do.

Moderate Eaters. "It is time that an error on this subject, which has gone generally abroad in the world, was corrected. It is everywhere asserted, and almost universally believed, that the

Indians are 'enormous eaters;' but comparatively speaking, I assure my readers that this is an error. I venture to say that there are no persons on earth who practice greater prudence and self-denial, than the men do (amongst the wild Indians,) who are constantly in war and in the chase, or in their athletic sports and exercises; for all of which they are excited by the highest ideas of pride and honor, and every kind of excess is studiously avoided; and for a very great part of their lives, the most painful abstinence is enforced upon themselves, for the purpose of preparing their bodies and their limbs for these extravagant exertions. Many a man who has been a few weeks along the frontier, amongst the drunken, naked and beggered part of the Indian race, and run home and written a book on Indians, has, no doubt, often seen them eat to beastly excess; and he has seen them also guzzle whiskey (and perhaps sold it to them) till he has seen them gluttoned and besotted, without will or energy to move; and many and thousands of such things can always be seen, where white people have made beggars of them, and they have nothing to do but lie under a fence and beg a whole week to get meat and whiskey enough for one feast and one carouse; but amongst the wild Indians in this country there are no beggars—no drunkards—and every man, from a beautiful natural precept, studies to keep his body and mind in such a healthy shape and condition as will at all times enable him to use his weapons in self-defense, or struggle for the prize in their manly games.

"As I before observed, these men generally eat but twice a day, and many times not more than once, and those meals are light and simple compared with the meals that are swallowed in the civilized world; and by the very people also, who sit at the festive board three times a day, making a jest of the Indian for his eating, when they actually guzzle more liquids, besides their eating, than would fill the stomach of an Indian.

"There are, however, many seasons and occasions in the year with all Indians, when they fast for several days in succession; and others where they can get nothing to eat and at such times (their habits are such) they may be seen to commence with an enormous meal, and because they do so, it is an insufficient reason why we should forever remain under so egregious an error with regard to a single custom of these people.

"I have seen so many of these, and lived with them, and traveled with them, and oftentimes felt as if I should starve to death on an equal allowance, that I am fully convinced I am correct in saying that the North American Indians, taking them in the aggregate, even where they have an abundance to subsist on, eat less than any civilized population of equal numbers, that I have ever traveled amongst.

Curing Meat. "Their mode of curing and preserving the buffalo meat is somewhat curious, and in fact it is almost incredible also; for it is all cured or dried in the sun, without the aid of salt or smoke. The method of doing this is the same amongst all the tribes, from this to the Mexican provinces, and this is as follows: The choicest part of the flesh from the buffalo are cut out by the squaws, and carried home on their backs or on horses, and there 'cut across the grain,' in such a manner as will take alternately the layers of lean and fat; and having prepared it all in this way, in strips about half an inch in thickness, it is hung up by hundreds and thousands of pounds on poles resting on crotches, out of the reach of dogs or wolves, and exposed to the rays of the sun for several days, when it becomes so effectually dried, that it can be carried to any part of the world without damage. This seems almost an unaccountable thing, and the more so, as it is done in the hottest months of the year, and also in all the different latitudes of an Indian country.

"So singular a fact as this can only be accounted for, I consider, on the ground of the extraordinary rarity and purity of the air which we meet with in these vast tracts of country, which are now properly denominated 'the great buffalo plains', a series of exceedingly elevated plateaus or steppes or prairies, lying at and near the base of the Rocky mountains.

"It is a fact then, which I presume will be new to most of the world, that meat can be cured in the sun without the aid of smoke or salt; and it is a fact equally true and equally surprising also, that none of these tribes use salt in any way, although their country abounds in salt springs; and in many places, in the frequent walks of the Indian, the prairie may be seen, for miles together, covered with an incrustation of salt as white as the drifted snow.

"I have, in traveling with the Indians, encamped by such

places, where they have cooked and eaten their meat, when I have been unable to prevail on them to use salt in any quantity whatever. The Indians cook their meat more than the civilized people do, and I have long since learned, from necessity, that meat thus cooked can easily be eaten and relished too, without salt or other condiment.

"The fact above asserted applies exclusively to those tribes of Indians which I have found in their primitive state, living entirely on meat; but everywhere along our frontier, where the game of the country has long since been destroyed, and these people have become semi-civilized, raising and eating as we do, a variety of vegetable food, they use (and no doubt require) a great deal of salt; and in many instances use it even to destructive excess." (p. 125.)

*This is a well known fact, as proven by common experience among the Indians in the farther prairie west and northwest. (De. L.)

Catlin's next chapter enters into the subject of Mandan dances and songs; in which he gives the results of close observation and some study into the genius of the Indian instinct and purpose regarding such practices, which, as shown, sometimes become duties in emergencies. He relates as incidental to one of their "dances for buffalo" a shrewd and successful stratagem of the Sioux by which the Mandans were misled to suppose they had discovered buffalo, only to find themselves surrounded by Sioux who had posed at a distance as those animals:

Dances and Songs. "The Mandans, like all the other tribes, lead lives of idleness and leisure; and of course, devote a great deal of time to their sports and amusements, of which they have a great variety. Of these, dancing is one of the principal, and may be seen in a variety of forms; such as the buffalo dance, the boasting dance, the begging dance, the scalp dance, and a dozen other kinds of dances, all of which have their peculiar characters and meanings or objects.

"These exercises are exceedingly grotesque in their appearance, and to the eye of a traveler who knows not their meaning or importance, they are an uncouth and frightful display of starts, and jumps, and yelps, and jarring gutturals, which are sometimes truly terrifying. But when one gives them a little

attention, and has been lucky enough to be initiated into their mysterious meaning, they become a subject of the most intense and exciting interest. Every dance has its peculiar step, and every step has its meaning; every dance also has its peculiar song, and that is so intricate and mysterious oftentimes, that not one in ten of the young men who are dancing and singing it, know the meaning of the song which they are chanting over. None but the medicine-men are allowed to understand them; and even they are generally only initiated into these secret arcana, on the payment of a liberal stipend for their tuition, which requires much application and study. There is evidently a set song and sentiment for every dance, for the songs are perfectly measured, and sung in exact time with the beat of the drum; and always with a uniform and invariable set of sounds and expressions, which clearly indicate certain sentiments, which are expressed by the voice, though sometimes not given in any known language whatever.

"They have other dances and songs which are not so mystified, but which are sung and understood by every person in the tribe, being sung in their own language, with much poetry in them, and perfectly metered, but without rhyme. On these subjects I shall take another occasion to say more; and will for the present turn your attention to the style and modes in which some of these curious transactions are conducted.

"My ears have been almost continually ringing since I came here, with the din of yelping, and beating of the drums; but I have for several days past been peculiarly engrossed, and my senses almost confounded with the stamping, and grunting, and bellowing of the buffalo dance, which closed a few days since at sun rise (thank Heaven), and which I must needs describe to you.

Dance for Buffalo. "Buffalo, as is known, are a sort of roaming creatures, congregating occasionally in huge masses, and strolling away about the country, from east to west, or from north to south, or just where their whims or strange fancies may lead them; and the Mandans are sometimes, by this means, most unceremoniously left without anything to eat; and being a small tribe, and unwilling to risk their lives by going far from home in the face of their more powerful enemies, are oftentimes left in almost a state of starvation. In any emergency of this kind, every man

musters and brings out of his lodge his mask (the skin of a buffalo's head with the horns on), which he is obliged to keep in readiness for this occasion; and then commences the buffalo dance, of which I have above spoken, which is held for the purpose of making the 'buffalo come' (as they term it), of inducing the buffalo herds to change the direction of their wanderings, and bend their course towards the Mandan village, and graze about on the beautiful hills and bluffs in its vicinity, where the Mandans can shoot them down and cook them as they want them for food.

"For the most part of the year, the young warriors and hunters, by riding out a mile or two from the village can kill meat in abundance; and sometimes large herds of these animals may be seen grazing in full view of the village. There are other seasons also when the young men have ranged about the country as far as they are willing to risk their lives, on account of their enemies, without finding meat. This sad intelligence is brought back to the chiefs and doctors, who sit in solemn council, and consult on the most expedient measures to be taken, until they are sure to decide upon the old and only expedient which 'never has failed.'

"The chief issues his orders to his runners or cryers, who proclaim it through the village—and in a few minutes the dance begins. The place where this strange operation is carried on is in the public arena in the center of the village, and in front of the great medicine or mystery lodge. About ten or fifteen Mandans at a time join in the dance, each one with the skin of the buffalo's head (or mask) with the horns on, placed over his head, and in his hand his favorite bow or lance, with which he is used to slay the buffalo.

"I mentioned that this dance always had the desired effect, that it never fails, nor can it, for it cannot be stopped (but is going incessantly day and night) until 'buffalo come.' Drums are beating and rattles are shaken, and songs and yells incessantly are shouted, and lookers-on stand ready with masks on their heads, and weapons in hand, to take the place of each one as he becomes fatigued, and jumps out of the ring.

"During this time of general excitement, spies or 'lookers' are kept on the hills in the neighborhood of the village, who when they discover buffalos in sight, give the appropriate signal, by 'throwing their robes,' which is instantly seen in the village, and

understood by the whole tribe. At this joyful intelligence there is a shout of thanks to the Great Spirit, and more especially to the mystery man, and the dancers, who have been the immediate cause of their success. There is then a brisk preparation for the chase—a grand hunt takes place. The choicest pieces of the victims are sacrificed to the Great Spirit, and then a surfeit and a carouse. These dances have sometimes been continued in this village two and three weeks without stopping an instant, until the joyful moment when buffalos make their appearance. So they never fail; and they think they have been the means of bringing them in.

“Every man in the Mandan village (as I have before said) is obliged by a village regulation, to keep the mask of the buffalo, hanging on a post at the head of his bed, which he can use on his head whenever he is called upon by the chiefs, to dance for the coming of buffalos. The mask is put over the head, and generally has a strip of the skin hanging to it, of the whole length of the animal, with the tail attached to it, which passing down over the back of the dancer, is dragging on the ground. When one becomes fatigued of the exercise, he signifies it by bending quite forward, and sinking his body towards the ground; then another draws a bow upon him and hits him with a blunt arrow, and he falls like a buffalo—is seized by the by-standers, who drag him out of the ring by the heels, brandishing their knives about him; and having gone through the motions of skinning and cutting him up, they let him off, and his place is at once supplied by another, who dances into the ring with his mask on; and by this taking of places the scene is easily kept up night and day, until the desired effect has been produced, that of ‘making the buffalo come.’ ”

Entrapped by Sioux. “The day before yesterday however, readers, which though it commenced in joy and thanksgiving to the Great Spirit for the signal success which had attended their several days of dancing and supplication, ended in a calamity which threw the Mandans into mourning and repentant tears, and that at a time of scarcity and great distress. The signal was given into the village on that morning from the top of a distant bluff, that a band of buffalos were in sight, though at a considerable distance

off, and every heart beat with joy, and every eye watered and glistened with gladness.

"The dance had lasted some three or four days, and now instead of the doleful tap of the drum and the begging chants of the dancers, the stamping of horses was heard as they were led and galloped through the village—young men were throwing off their robes and their shirts—were seen snatching a handful of arrows from their quivers, and stringing their sinewy bows, glancing their eyes and their smiles at their sweathearts, and mounting their ponies.

"A few minutes there had been of bustle and boasting, whilst bows were twanging and spears were polishing by running their blades into the ground—every face and every eye was filled with joy and gladness—horses were pawing and snuffing in fury for the outset, when Louison Frenier, an interpreter of the fur company, galloped through the village with his rifle in his hand and his powder horn at his side; his head and waist were bandaged with handkerchiefs, and his short sleeves rolled up to his shoulders—the hunter's yell issued from his lips and was repeated through the village; he flew to the bluffs, and behind him and over the graceful swells of the prairie, galloped the emulous youths, whose hearts were beating high and quick for the onset.

"In the village, where hunger had reigned, and starvation was almost ready to look them in the face, all was instantly turned to joy and gladness. The chiefs and doctors who had been for several days dealing out minimum rations to the community from the public crib, now spread before their subjects the contents of their own private caches, and the last of everything that could be mustered, that they might eat a thanksgiving to the Great Spirit for his goodness in sending them a supply of buffalo meat. A general carouse of banqueting ensued, which occupied the greater part of the day; and their hidden stores which might have fed an emergency for several weeks, were pretty nearly used up on the occasion—bones were half picked, and dishes half emptied and then handed to the dogs. I was not forgotten neither, in the general surfeit; several large and generous wooden bowls of pemican and other palatable food were sent to my painting room, and I received them in this time of searcity with great pleasure.

"After this general indulgence was over, and the dogs had

licked the dishes, their usual games and amusements ensued—and hilarity and mirth, and joy took possession of, and reigned in every nook and corner of the village; and in the midst of this. screams and shrieks were heard, and echoed everywhere. Women and children scrambled to the tops of their wigwams, with their eyes and their hands stretched in agonizing earnestness to the prairie, whilst blackened warriors ran furiously through every winding maze of the village, and issuing their jarring gutturals of vengeance, as they snatched their deadly weapons from their lodges, and struck the reddened post as they furiously passed it by!

“Two of their hunters were bending their course down the sides of the bluff towards the village, and another broke suddenly out of a deep ravine, and yet another was seen dashing over and down the green hills, and all were goading on their horses at full speed. And then came another, and another, and all entered the village amid shouts and groans of the villagers who crowded around them; the story was told in their looks, for one was bleeding, and the blood that flowed from his naked breast had crimsoned his milk white steed as it had dripped over him; another grasped in his left hand a scalp that was reeking in blood—and in the other his whip—another grasped nothing, save the reins in one hand and the mane of his horse in the other, having thrown his bow and arrows away, and trusted to the fleetness of his horse for his safety; yet the story was audibly told, and the fatal tragedy recited in irregular and almost suffocating ejaculations—the names of the dead were in turns pronounced and screams and shrieks burst forth at their recital—murmurs and groans ran through the village, and this happy little community were in a moment smitten with sorrow and distraction.

“Their proud band of hunters who had started out full of glee and mirth in the morning, had been surrounded by their enemy, the Sioux, and eight of them killed. The Sioux, who had probably reconnoitered their village during the night, and ascertained that they were dancing for buffaloes, laid a ~~stratagem to entrap~~ them in the following manner: Some six or eight of them appeared the next morning (on a distant bluff, in the sight of the sentinel) under the skins of buffaloes, imitating the movements of these animals while grazing; and being discovered by the sen-

tincl, the intelligence was telegraphed to the village, which brought out their hunters as I have described. The masked buffalos were seen grazing on the top of a high bluff, and when the hunters had approached within half a mile or so of them, they suddenly disappeared over the hill. Louison Frenier, who was leading a little band of hunters, became at that moment suspicious of so strange a movement, and came to a halt. * * *

“‘Look,’ said a Mandan, pointing to a little ravine to the right, and at the foot of the hill, from which suddenly broke some forty or fifty furious Sioux, on fleet horses and under full whip, who were rushing upon them; they wheeled, and in front of them came another band more furious from the other side of the hill. They started for home (poor fellows), and strained every nerve; but the Sioux were too fleet for them; and every now and then the whizzing arrows and the lance were heard to rip the flesh of their naked backs, and a grunt and a groan, as they tumbled from their horses. Several miles were run in this desperate race; and Frenier got home, and several of the Mandans, though eight of them were killed and scalped by the way.

“So ended that day and the hunt; but many a day and sad, will last the grief of those whose hearts were broken on that unlucky occasion.

“This day, though, my readers, has been one of a more joyful kind, for the Great Spirit, who was indignant at so flagrant an injustice, has sent the Mandans an abundance of buffalos; and all hearts have joined in a general thanksgiving to Him for his goodness and justice.” (p. 130.)

Boys’ Sham-fight, Etc. “In my last letter I gave an account of the buffalo dance, and in future epistles may give some description of a dozen other kinds of dance, which these people have in common with other tribes; but in the present letter I shall make an endeavor to confine my observations to several other customs and forms, which are very curious and peculiar to the Mandans.

“Of these, one of the most pleasing is the sham-fight and sham scalp-dance of the Mandan boys, which is part of their regular exercise, and constitutes a material branch of their education. During the pleasant mornings of the summer, the little boys between the ages of seven and fifteen are called out, to the number of several hundred, and being divided into two companies, each

of which is headed by some experienced warrior, who leads them on, in the character of a teacher; they are led out into the prairie at sunrise, where this curious discipline is regularly taught them. Their bodies are naked, and each one has a little bow in his left hand and a number of arrows made of large spears of grass, which are harmless in their effects. Each one also has a little belt or girdle around his waist, in which he carries a knife made of a piece of wood and equally harmless—on the tops of their heads are slightly attached small tufts of grass, which answer as scalps, and in this plight, they follow the dictates of their experienced leaders, who lead them through the judicious evolutions of Indian warfare—of feints—of retreats—of attacks—and at last to a general fight. Many maneuvers are gone through, and eventually they are brought up face to face within fifteen or twenty feet of each other, with their leaders at their head stimulating them on. Their bows are bent upon each other and their missiles flying, whilst they are dodging and fending them off.

“If any one is struck with an arrow in any vital part of his body, he is obliged to fall, and his adversary rushes up to him, places his foot upon him, and snatching from his belt his wooden knife, grasps hold of his victim’s scalp-lock of grass, and making a feint at it with his wooden knife, twitches it off and puts it into his belt and enters again into the ranks and front of battle.

“This mode of training generally lasts an hour or more in the morning and is performed on an empty stomach, affording them a rigid and wholesome exercise, whilst they are instructed in the importance science of war. Some five or six miles of ground are run over during these evolutions, giving suppleness to their limbs and strength to their muscles, which last and benefit them through life.

“After this exciting exhibition is ended, they all return to their village where the chiefs and braves pay profound attention to their vaunting and applaud them for their artifice and valour.

“Those who have taken scalps then step forward, brandishing them and making their boast as they enter into the scalp dance (in which they are also instructed by their leaders or teachers) jumping and yelling, brandishing their scalps and reciting their sanguinary deeds to the great astonishment of their tender aged sweethearts, who are gazing with wonder upon them.



Games and Tchug-kee. "The games and amusements of these people are in most respects like those of other tribes, consisting of ball plays, game of the moccasin, of the platter feats, of archery, horse racing, etc., and they have yet another which may be said to be their favorite amusement, and unknown to the other tribes about them—the game of Tchug-kee, a beautiful and athletic exercise, which they seem to be almost unceasingly practicing whilst the weather is fair, and they have nothing else of moment to demand their attention. This game is decidedly their favorite amusement, and is played near to the village on a pavement of clay, which has been used for that purpose until it has become as smooth and hard as a floor. For this game two champions form their respective parties by choosing alternately the most famous players, until their requisite numbers are made up. Their bettings are then made, and their stakes are held by some of the chiefs or others present. The play commences with two (one from each party) who start off on a trot, abreast of each other, and one of them rolls in advance of them on the pavement a little ring of two or three inches in diameter, cut out of a stone; and each one follows it up with his 'tchug-kee' a stick of six feet in length with little bits of leather projecting from its sides of an inch or more in length, which he throws before him as he runs, sliding it along upon the ground after the ring, endeavoring to place it in such a position when it stops that the ring may fall upon it, and receive one of the little projections of leather through it, which counts for game, one, or two, or four, according to the position of the leather on which the ring is lodged. The last winner always has the rolling of the ring, and both start and throw the tchug-kee together. If either fails to receive the ring or to lie in a certain position, it is a forfeiture of the amount of the number he was nearest to and he loses his throw, when another steps into his place. This game is a very difficult one to describe so as to give an exact idea of it, unless one can see it played. It is a game of great beauty and fine bodily exercise, and these people become excessively fascinated with it, often gambling away everything they possess, and even sometimes when everything else was gone, have been known to stake their liberty upon the issues of these games, offering themselves as slaves to their opponents in case they get beaten.

"Feasting and fasting are important customs observed by the Mandans, as well as by most other tribes, at stated times and for particular purposes. These observations are strictly religious and rigidly observed. There are many of these forms practiced amongst the Mandans, some of which are exceedingly interesting and important also, in forming a correct estimate of the Indian character, and I shall at a future period take particular pains to lay them before my readers.

"Sacrificing is also a religious custom with these people and is performed in many different modes and numerous occasions. Of this custom I shall also speak more fully hereafter, merely noticing at present some few of the hundred modes in which these offerings are made to the good and evil spirits. Human sacrifices have never been made by the Mandans, nor by any of the North-western tribes (so far as I can learn) excepting the Pawnees of the Platte, who have, undoubtedly, observed such an inhuman practice in the former times, though they have relinquished it of late. The Mandans sacrificed their fingers to the Great Spirit, and of their wordly goods, the best and most costly. If a horse or a dog it must be the favorite one; if it is an arrow from their quiver they will select the most perfect one as the most effective gift; if it is meat it is the choicest piece cut from the buffalo or other animal; if it is anything from the stores of the traders, it is the most costly—it is blue or scarlet cloth, which costs them in this country an enormous price, and is chiefly used for the purpose of hanging over their wigwams to decay, or to cover the scaffolds where rest the bones of their departed relations.

"Of these kinds of sacrifices there are three of an interesting nature, erected over the great medicine lodge in the center of the village—they consist of ten or fifteen yards of blue and black cloth each, purchased from the fur company at fifteen or twenty dollars per yard, which are folded up so as to resemble human figures, with quills in their heads and masks on their faces. These singular looking figures, like scare crows are erected on poles about thirty feet high, over the door of the mystery lodge, and there are left to decay. There hangs now by the side of them another, which was added to the number a few days since, of the skin of the white buffalo, which will remain there until it decays and falls to pieces.

White Robe. "This beautiful and costly skin, when its history is known, will furnish a striking proof of the importance which they attach to these propitiatory offerings. But a few weeks since a party of Mandans returned from the mouth of the Yellowstone, two hundred miles above, with information that a party of Blackfeet were visiting that place on business with the American Fur Company; and that they had with them a white buffalo robe for sale. This was looked upon as a subject of great importance by the chiefs, and one worthy of public consideration. A white buffalo robe is a great curiosity, even in the country of buffalos, and will always command an almost incredible price, from its extreme scarcity; and then, from its being the most costly article of traffic in these regions, it is usually converted into a sacrifice, being offered to the Great Spirit, as the most acceptable gift that can be procured. Amongst the vast herds of buffalo which graze in these boundless prairies, there is not one in a hundred thousand, perhaps, that is white, and when such a one is obtained, it is considered great medicine or mystery.

"On the receipt of the intelligence above mentioned, the chiefs convened in council, and deliberated on the expediency of procuring the white robe from the Blackfeet; and also of appropriating the requisite means, and devising the proper mode of procedure for effecting the purchase. At the close of their deliberations, eight men were fitted out on eight of their best horses, who took from the fur company's store, on the credit of the chiefs, goods exceeding even the value of their eight horses; and they started for the mouth of the Yellowstone, where they arrived in due time, and made the purchase, by leaving the eight horses and all the goods which they carried; returning on foot to their own village, bringing home with them the white robe, which was looked upon by all eyes of the villagers as a thing that was vastly curious, and containing (as they expressed it) something of the Great Spirit. This wonderful anomaly laid for several days in the chief's lodge, until public curiosity was gratified; and then it was taken by the doctors or high priests, and with a great deal of form and mystery consecrated, and raised on the top of a long pole over the medicine lodge; where it now stands in a group with the others, and will stand as an offering to the Great Spirit, until it decays and falls to the ground."

Here Catlin ends a chapter by relating the exploits of another professional among the Mandans.

The "Rain Maker." "Readers, did you ever hear of 'Rain Makers?' If not, sit still, and read on; but laugh not—keep cool and sober, or else you may laugh in the beginning and cry at the end of my story. Well, I introduce you to a new character—not a doctor or a high priest, yet a medicine-man, and one of the highest and most respectable order, a 'Rain Maker.' Such dignitaries live in the Mandan nation, aye, and 'Rain Stoppers,' too; and even those also amongst their conjurati, who, like Joshua of old, have even essayed to stop the sun in his course; but from the inefficiency of their medicine or mystery, have long since descended into insignificance.

"Well the story begins thus: The Mandans, as I have said in a former letter, raise a great deal of corn; and sometimes a most disastrous drought will be visited on the land, destructive to their promised harvest. Such was the case when I arrived at the Mandan village on the steamboat, Yellowstone. Rain had not fallen for many a day, and the dear little girls and the ugly old squaws, together (all of whom had fields of corn), were groaning and crying to their lords, and imploring them to intercede for rain, that their little respective patches, which were now turning pale and yellow, might not be withered, and they be deprived of the pleasure of their customary annual festivity, and the joyful occasion of the 'roasting ears', and the 'green corn dance.'

"The chiefs and doctors sympathized with the complaints of the women, and recommended patience. Great deliberation, they said, was necessary in these cases; and though they resolved on making the attempt to produce rain for the benefit of the corn; yet they very wisely resolved that to begin too soon might insure their entire defeat in the endeavor; and that the longer they put it off, the more certain they would feel of ultimate success. So, after a few days of further delay, when the importunities of the women had become clamorous, and even mournful, and almost insupportable, the medicine-men assembled in the council house, with all their mystery apparatus about them—with an abundance of wild sage, and other aromatic herbs, with a fire prepared to burn them—that their savory odors might be sent forth to the Great Spirit. The lodge was closed to all the villagers, except some ten or fifteen young men, who were willing to hazard the

dreadful alternative of making it rain, or suffer the everlasting disgrace of having made a fruitless essay.

"They, only, were allowed as witnesses to the **hocus pocus** and **conjunction** devised by the doctors inside of the medicine lodge; and they were called up by lot, each one in his turn, to spend a day upon the top of the lodge, to test the potency of his medicine; or, in other words, to see how far his voice might be heard and obeyed amongst the clouds of the heavens; whilst the doctors were burning incense in the wigwam below, and with their songs and prayers to the Great Spirit for success, were sending forth grateful fumes and odors to Him 'who lives in the sun and commands the thunders of Heaven.' Wah-kee (the shield) was the first who ascended the wigwam at sunrise; and he stood all day and looked foolish, as he was counting over and over his string of mystery beads—the whole village were assembled around him and praying for his success. Not a cloud appeared, the day was calm and hot; and at the setting of the sun, he descended from the lodge and went home—'his medicine was not good,' nor can he ever be a **medicine man**.

"Om-pah (the elk) was the next; he ascended the lodge at sunrise the next morning. His body was entirely naked, being covered with a yellow clay. On his left arm he carried a beautiful shield, and a long lance in his right, and on his head the skin of a raven, the bird that soars amidst the clouds, and above the lightning's glare—he flourished his shield and brandished his lance, and raised his voice, but in vain; for at sunset the ground was dry and the sky was clear; the squaws were crying, and their corn was withering at its roots.

"War-rah-pa (the beaver) was the next; he also spent his breath in vain upon the empty air, and came down at night—and Wak-a-dah-ha-hee (the white buffalo's hair) took the stand the next morning. He is a small, but beautifully proportioned young man. He was dressed in a tunic and leggins of the skins of the Mountain sheep, splendidly garnished with quills of the porcupine, and fringed with locks of hair taken by his own hand from the heads of his enemies. On his arm he carried his shield, made of the buffalo's hide—its boss was the head of the war eagle—and its front was ornamented with 'red chains of lightning.' In his left hand he clenched his sinewy bow and one single arrow. The villagers were all gathered about him when he threw up a feather

to decide on the course of the wind, and he commenced thus: 'My friends! People of the pheasants! You see me here a sacrifice—I shall this day relieve you from great distress, and bring joy amongst you; or I shall descend from this lodge when the sun goes down, and live amongst the dogs and old women all my days. My friends! You see which way the feather blew, and I hold my shield this day in the direction where the wind comes—the lightning on my shield will draw a great cloud, and this arrow which is selected from my quiver, and which is feathered with the quill of the white swan, will make a hole in it. My friends! This hole in the lodge at my feet, shows me the medicine-men, who are seated in the lodge below me and crying to the Great Spirit, and through it comes and passes into my nose delightful odors, which you see rising in the smoke to the Great Spirit above, who rides in the clouds and commands the winds. Three days they have sat here, my friends, and nothing has been done to relieve your distress. On the first day was Wah-kee (the shield), he could do nothing; he counted his beads and came down—his medicine was not good—his name was bad, and it kept off the rain. The next was Om-pah (the elk); on his head the raven was seen, who flies **above** the storm, and he failed. War-rah-pa (the beaver) was the next, my friends; the beaver lives under the water, and he never wants it to rain. My friends I see you are in great distress, and nothing has yet been done; this shield belonged to my father, the White Buffalo; and the lightning you see on it is red; it was taken from a black cloud, and that cloud will come over us today. I am the White Buffalo's hair—and I am the son of my father.'

"In this manner flourished and maneuvered Wak-a-dah-ha-hee (the white buffalo's hair), alternately addressing the audience and the Heavens—and holding converse with the winds and the 'je-bi' (spirits) that are floating about in them—stamping his foot over the heads of the **Magi**, who were involved in mysteries beneath him, and invoking the spirits of darkness and light to send rain, to gladden the hearts of the Mandans.

Steam Spook. "It happened on this memorable day about noon, that the steamboat Yellowstone, on her first trip up the Missouri river, approached and landed at the Mandan village, as I have described in a former epistle. I was lucky enough to be a passenger on this boat, and helped to fire a salute of twenty

guns of twelve pounds calibre, when we first came in sight of the village, some three or four miles below. These guns introduced a new sound into this strange country, which the Mandans at first supposed to be thunder; and the young man upon the lodge, who turned it to good account, was gathering fame in rounds of applause, which were repeated and echoed through the whole village; all eyes were centered upon him—chiefs envied him—mother's hearts were beating high whilst they were decorating and leading up their fair daughters to offer him in marriage, on his signal success. The medicine-men had left the lodge, and come up to bestow upon him the envied title of 'medicine-man,' or 'doctor,' which he had so deservedly won—wreaths were prepared to decorate his brows, and eagles plumes and calumets were in readiness for him; his friends were all rejoiced—his enemies wore on their faces a silent gloom and hatred; and his old sweethearts, who had formely cast him off, gazed intently upon him, as they glowed with the burning fever of repentance.

"During all this excitement, Wak-a-dah-ha-kee kept his position, assuming the most commanding and threatening attitude; brandishing his shield in the direction of the thunder, although there was not a cloud to be seen, until he (poor fellow), being elevated above the rest of the village, espied, to his inexpressible amazement, the steamboat ploughing its way up the windings of the river below; puffing her steam from her pipes, and sending forth the thunder from a twelve-pounder on her deck. * * *

"The White Buffalo's Hair stood motionless and turned pale, he looked a while and turned to the chiefs and to the multitude, and addressed them with a trembling lip—"My friends we will get no rain! There are, you see, no clouds; but my medicine is great, I have brought a **thunder-boat**! Look and see it! The thunder you hear is out of her mouth, and the lightning which you see is on the water!"

"At this intelligence, the whole village flew to the tops of their wigwams, or to the bank of the river, from whence the steamer was in full view, and ploughing along, to their utter dismay and confusion.

"In this promiscuous throng of chiefs, doctors, women, children and dogs, was mingled Wak-a-dah-ha-kee (the white buffalo's hair), having descended from his high place to mingle with the frightened throng.

"Dismayed at the approach of so strange and unaccountable an object, the Mandans stood their ground but a few minutes; when, by an order of the chiefs, all hands were ensconced within the piquets of their village, and all the warriors armed for desperate defense. A few moments brought the boat in front of the village, and all was still and quiet as death; not a Mandan was to be seen upon the banks. The steamer was moored, and three or four of the chiefs soon after, walked boldly down the bank and on to her deck, with a spear in one hand and the calumet or pipe of peace in the other. The moment they stepped on board they met (to their great surprise and joy) their old friend, Major Sanford, their agent, which circumstance put an instant end to all their fears. The villagers were soon apprised of the fact, and the whole race of the beautiful and friendly Mandans was paraded on the bank of the river, in front of the steamer.

"The 'Rain Maker,' whose apprehensions of a public calamity brought upon the nation by his extraordinary medicine, had for the better security of his person from apprehended vengeance, secreted himself in some secure place, and was the last to come forward, and the last to be convinced that this visitation was a friendly one from the white people; and that his medicine had not in the least been instrumental in bringing it about. This information, though received by him with much caution and suspicion, at length gave him great relief, and quieted his mind as to his danger. Yet still in his breast there was a rankling thorn, though he escaped the dreaded vengeance which he had a few minutes before apprehended as at hand; as he had the mortification and disgrace of having failed in his mysterious operations. He set up however, (during the day, in his conversation about the strange arrival), his medicines, as the cause of its approach; asserting everywhere and to everybody, that he knew of its coming and that he had by his magic brought the occurrence about. This plea, however, did not get him much audience; and in fact, everything else was pretty much swallowed up in the guttural talk, and bustle, and gossip about the mysteries of the 'thunder-boat;' and so passed the day, until just at the approach of evening, when the 'White Buffalo's Hair' (more watchful of such matters on this occasion than most others) observed that a black cloud had been jutting up in the horizon, and was almost directly over the village! In an instant his shield was on his arm, and his bow in his hand, and he

again upon the lodge. Stiffened and braced to the last sinew, he stood, with his face and his shield presented to the cloud, and his bow drawn. He drew the eyes of the whole village upon him as he vaunted forth his super-human powers, and at the same time commanded the cloud to come nearer, that he might draw its contents upon the heads and the corn fields of the Mandans. In this wise he stood, waiving his shield over his head, stamping his foot and frowning as he drew his bow and threatened the Heavens, his bow was bent and the arrow drawn to its head, was sent to the cloud, and he exclaimed, 'My friends, it is done! Wak-a-dah-ha-hee's arrow has entered that black cloud, and the Mandans will be wet with the waters of the skies!' His predictions were true; in a few moments the cloud was over the village, and the rain fell in torrents. He stood for some time wielding his weapons and presenting his shield to the sky, while he boasted of his power and the efficacy of his **medicine**, to those who had been about him, but were now driven to the shelter of their wigwams. He at length, finished his vaunts and his threats, and descended from his high place (in which he had been perfectly drenched), prepared to receive the honors and the homage that were due to one so potent in his mysteries; and to receive the style and title of '**medicine-man**.' This is one of the hundred different modes in which a man in Indian countries acquires the honorable appellation.

"This man had 'made it rain,' and of course was to receive more than the usual honors, as he had done much more than ordinary men could do. All eyes were upon him, and all were ready to admit that he was skilled in the magic art; and must be so nearly allied to the Great or Evil Spirit, that he must needs be a man of great and powerful influence in the nation, and well entitled to the style of doctor or **medicine-man**.

"Readers, there are two facts relative to these strange transactions, which are infallibly true, and should needs be made known. The first is, that when the Mandans undertake to make it rain, they never fail to succeed, for their ceremonies never stop until rain begins to fall. The second is equally true, and is this: That he who has once 'made it rain,' never attempts it again; his **medicine** is undoubted—and on future occasions of the kind, he stands aloof, who has once done it in the presence of the whole

village, giving an opportunity to other young men who are ambitious to signalize themselves in the same way."

Lightning's Bolt. "During the memorable night which I have just spoken, the steamboat remained by the side of the Mandan village; and the rain that had commenced falling continued to pour down its torrents until midnight; black thunder roared, and livid lightning flashed until the heavens appeared to be lit up with one unceasing and appalling glare. In this frightful moment of consternation, a flash of lightning buried itself in one of the earth covered lodges of the Mandans, and killed a beautiful girl. Here was food and fuel fresh for their superstitions, and a night of vast tumult and excitement ensued. The dreams of the new made medicine-man were troubled, and he had dreadful apprehensions for the coming day—for he knew that he was subject to the irrevocable decree of the chiefs and doctors, who canvass every strange and unaccountable event, with close and superstitious scrutiny, and let their vengeance fall without mercy upon its immediate cause.

"He looked upon his well earned fame as likely to be withheld from him; and also considered that his life might perhaps be demanded as the forfeit for this girl's death, which would certainly be charged upon him. He looked upon himself as culpable, and supposed the incident to have been occasioned by his criminal desertion of his post, when the steamboat was approaching the village. Morning came, and he soon learned from some of his friends, the opinions of the wise men; and also the nature of the tribunal that was preparing for him; he sent to the prairie for his three horses, which were brought in, and he mounted the medicine lodge, around which, in a few moments the villagers were all assembled. 'My friends! (said he) I see you all around me, and I am before you; my medicine, you see, is great—it is too great—I am young, and I was too fast—I knew not when to stop. The wigwam of Mah-sish is laid low, and many are the eyes that weep for Ko-ka (the antelope); Wak-a-dah-ha-hee gives three horses to gladden the hearts of those who weep for Ko-ka; his medicine was great—his arrow pierced the black cloud, and the lightning came, and the thunder-boat also! Who says the medicine of Wak-a-dah-ha-hee is not strong?"

"At the end of this sentence an unanimous shout of approbation ran through the crowd, and the 'Hair of the White Buffalo' de-

scended amongst them, where he was greeted by shakes of the hand; and amongst whom he now lives and thrives under the familiar and honorable appellation of the 'Big Double Medicine.' "

Catlin now explains the dexterity of the Mandans in the use of the bow and arrow; shows why they shoot at short instead of long range, how the combination of rider and handler of that formidable weapon results in wonderful execution; that the Mandan horses were of Mexican stock; and mentions the "game of the arrow" and horse-racing as among the games and recreations of that tribe:

"This day has been one of unusual mirth and amusement amongst the Mandans, and whether on account of some annual celebration or not, I am as yet unable to say, though I think such is the case; for these people have many days which, like this, are devoted to festivities and amusements.

"Their lives, however, are lives of idleness and ease, and almost all their days and hours are spent in innocent amusements. Amongst a people who have no office hours to attend to—no professions to study, and of whom but very little time is required in the chase, to supply their families with food, it would be strange if they did not practice many games and amusements, and also become exceedingly expert in them.

"I have this day been a spectator of games and plays until I am fatigued with looking on; and also by lending a hand, which I have done; but with so little success as only to attract general observation and as generally to excite the criticisms and laughter of the squaws and little children."

Arrow Game. "I have seen a fair exhibition of their archery this day, in a favorite amusement which they call the 'game of the arrow,' where the young men who are the most distinguished in this exercise, assemble on the prairie at a little distance from the village, and having paid, each one, his 'entrance fee,' such as a shield, a robe, a pipe, or other article, step forward in turn, shooting their arrows into the air, endeavoring to see who can get the greatest number flying in the air at one time, thrown from the same bow. For this, the number of eight or ten arrows are clenched in the left hand with the bow, and the first one which is thrown is elevated to such a degree as will enable it to remain the longest time possible in the air, and while it is flying, the

others are discharged as rapidly as possible; and he who succeeds in getting the greatest number up at once, is 'best,' and takes the goods staked.

"In looking on at this amusement, the spectator is surprised; not at the great distance to which the arrows are actually sent; but at the quickness of fixing them on the string, and discharging them in succession; which is no doubt, the result of great practice, and enables the most expert of them to get as many as eight arrows up before the first one reaches the ground."

Short-Range Shooting. "For the successful use of the bow, as it is used through all this region of country on horseback, and that invariably at full speed, the great object of practice is to enable the bowman to draw the bow with suddenness and instant effect; and also to repeat the shots in the most rapid manner. As their game is killed from their horses' back while at the swiftest rate and their enemies fought in the same manner; and as the horse is the swiftest animal of the prairie, and always able to bring his rider along side, within a few paces of his victim; it will easily be seen that the Indian has little use in throwing his arrow more than a few paces; when he leans quite low on his horse's side, and drives it with astonishing force, capable of producing instant death to the buffalo, or any other animal in the country. The bows which are generally in use in the regions I have described in a former letter, and the effects produced by them at the distance of a few paces is almost beyond belief, considering their length, which is not often over three—and sometimes not exceeding two and a half feet. It can easily be seen, from what has been said, that the Indian has little use or object in throwing the arrow to any great distance. And as it is very seldom that they can be seen shooting at a target, I doubt very much whether their skill in such practice would compare with that attained to in many parts of the civilized world; but with the same weapon, and dashing forward at the fullest speed on the wild horse, without the use of the rein, when the shot is required to be made with the most instantaneous effect, I scarcely think it possible that any people can be found more skilled, and capable of producing more deadly effects with the bow.

Use Mexican Horses. "The horses which the Indians ride in this country are invariably the wild horses, which are found in great numbers on the prairies; and have, unquestionably, strayed

from the Mexican borders, into which they were introduced by the Spanish invaders of that country; and now range and subsist themselves, in winter and summer, over the vast plains of prairie that stretch from the Mexican frontiers, to lake Winnipeg on the north, a distance of 3,000 miles. These horses are all of small stature, of the pony order; but very hardy and tough animals being able to perform for the Indians a continual and essential service. They are taken with the lasso, which is a long halter or thong, made of rawhide, of some fifteen or twenty yards in length, and which the Indians throw with great dexterity; with a noose at one end of it, which drops over the head of the animal they wish to catch, whilst running at full speed—when the Indian dismounts from his own horse, and holding to the end of the lasso, chokes the animal down, and afterwards tames and converts him to his own use.

“Scarcely a man is to be found in these regions, who is not the owner of one or more of these horses; and in many instances of eight, ten, or even twenty, which he values as his own personal property.”

Horse Racing. “The Indians are hard and cruel masters; and, added to their cruelties is the sin that is familiar in the Christian world, of sporting with the limbs and lives of these noble animals. Horse racing here, as in all more enlightened communities, is one of the most exciting amusements, and one of the most extravagant modes of gambling.

“I have been this day a spectator to scenes of this kind, which have been enacted in abundance, on a course which they have, just back of their village; and although I never had the least taste for this cruel amusement in my own country, yet I must say, I have been not little amused and pleased with the thrilling effect which these exciting scenes have produced amongst so wild and picturesque a group.

“I have made a sketch of the ground and the group, as near as I could; showing the manner of ‘starting’ and ‘coming out,’ which vary little from the customs of the knowing world; but in other respects, I believe, a horse race is the same all the world over.”

War Party. “Besides these, many have been the amusements of this day, to which I have been an eye witness; and since writing the above, I have learned the cause of this unusual expression

of hilarity and mirth; which was no more or less than the safe return of a small war party, who had been so long out without any tidings having been received of them, that they had long since been looked upon as sacrificed to the fates of war and lost. This party was made up of the most distinguished and desperate young men of the tribe, who had sallied against the Riccarees, and taken the most solemn oath amongst themselves never to return without achieving a victory. They had wandered long and faithfully about the country, following the trails of their enemies, when they were attacked by a numerous party, and lost several of their men and all their horses. In this condition, to evade the scrutiny of their enemy, who were closely investing the natural route to their village; they took a circuitous range of the country, to enable them to return with their lives, to their village.

"In this plight, it seems, I had dropped my little canoe along side of them, while descending from the mouth of Yellowstone to this place, not many weeks since; where they had bivouacked or halted, to smoke and consult on the best and safest mode of procedure. At the time of meeting them, not knowing anything of their language, they were unable to communicate their condition to me, and more probably were afraid to do so even if they could have done so, from apprehension that we might have given some account of them to their enemies. I rested my canoe an hour or so with them, during which time they treated us with an indifferent reserve, yet respectfully; and we passed on our way, without further information of them or their plans than the sketch that I there made, and which I shall preserve and value as one of the most pleasing groups I ever have had the pleasure to see. Seated on their buffalo robes, which were spread upon the grass, with their respective weapons laying about them, and lighting their pipes at a little fire which was kindled in the center—the chief or leader of the party, with his arms stacked behind him, and his long head-dress of war eagles' quills and ermine falling down over his back, whilst he sat in a contemplative and almost desponding mood, was surely one of the most striking and beautiful illustrations of a natural hero that I ever looked upon.

"These gallant fellows got safely home to their village, and the numerous expressions of joy for their return, which I have this day witnessed, have so much fatigued me, that I write brief, and close my letter here." (p. 144.)

Now follows a return by Catlin to the subject of the noted chief, Four Bears, whom he describes with great particularity as to his garb and personal ornaments in connection with the painting of his picture. This and many other paintings made by Catlin in the Indian country form, as is well known, part of the famous "Catlin's Museum" in the Smithsonian Institution in Washington, D. C. If the fine drawing of Four Bears thus "tricked out," published in connection in his "North American Indians," could be here reproduced, the reader would be immensely assisted and further entertained in the following narrative.

"In a former letter I gave some account of Mah-to-toh-pa (the four bears), second chief of the Mandans, whom I said I had painted at full length, in a splendid costume. I therein said, also, that 'this extraordinary man, though second in office, is undoubtedly the first and most popular man in the nation. Free, generous, elegant, and gentlemanly his deportment—handsome, brave, and valiant; wearing a robe on his back, with the history of all his battles painted on it, which would fill a book of themselves if they were properly enlarged and translated.'"

Four Bears' Costume. "I gave you also, in another epistle, an account of the manner in which he invited me to feast in his hospitable wigwam, at the same time presenting me with a beautifully garnished robe; and I promised to say more of him on a future occasion. My readers will therefore pardon me for devoting a letter or two at this time, to a sketch of this extraordinary man, which I will give in as brief a manner as possible, by describing the costume in which I painted his portrait; and afterwards reciting the most remarkable incidents of his life, as I had them from the traders and the Indian agents, and afterwards corroborated by his own words, translated to me as he spoke, whilst I was writing them down.

"The dress of Mah-to-toh-pa then, the greater part of which I have represented in his full length portrait, and which I shall now describe, was purchased of him after I had painted his picture; and every article of it can be seen in my Indian gallery by the side of the portrait, provided I succeed in getting them home to the civilized world without injury.

"Mah-to-toh-pa had agreed to stand before me for his portrait at an early hour of the next morning, and on that day I sat with my palette of colors prepared, and waited till twelve o'clock, be-

fore he could leave his toilette with feelings of satisfaction as to the propriety of his looks and the arrangement of his equipments; and at that it was announced that 'Mah-to-toh-pa was coming in full dress.' I looked out of the door of the wigwam, and saw him approaching with a firm and elastic step, accompanied by a great crowd of women and children, who were gazing on him with admiration, and escorting him to my room. No tragedian ever trod the stage, nor gladiator ever entered the Roman Forum, with more grace and manly dignity than did Mah-to-toh-pa enter the wigwam, where I was in readiness to receive him.

"He took his attitude before me, and with the sternness of a Brutus and the stillness of a statue, he stood until the darkness of night broke upon the solitary stillness. His dress which was a very splendid one, was complete in all its parts, and consisted of a shirt or tunic, leggins, moccasins, head-dress, necklace, shield, bow and quiver, lance, tobacco sack, and pipe; robe, belt, and knife; medicine-bag, tomahawk, and war-club, or Po-ko-mo-kon.

"The shirt of which I have spoken, was made of two skins of the mountain sheep, beautifully dressed, and sewed together by seams which rested upon the arms; one skin hanging in front, upon the breast, and the other falling down upon the back; the head being passed between them, and they falling over and resting on the shoulders. Across each shoulder, and somewhat in the form of an epaulette, was a beautiful band; and down each arm from the neck to the hand was a similar one, of two inches in width (and crossing the other at right angles on the shoulder), beautifully embroidered with porcupine quills worked on the dress, and covering the seams. To the lower edge of these bands the whole way, at intervals of half an inch, were attached long locks of black hair, which he had taken with his own hand from the heads of his enemies whom he had slain in battle, and which he thus wore as a trophy, and also as an ornament to his dress. The front and back of the shirt were curiously garnished, in several parts with porcupine quills and paintings of the battles he had fought, and also with representations of the victims that had fallen by his hand. The bottom of the dress was bound or hemmed with ermine skins, and tassels of ermines' tails were suspended from the arms and shoulders.

"The leggins, which were made of deer skins, beautifully

dressed, and fitting tight to the leg, extended from the feet to the hips, and were fastened to a belt which was passed around the waist. These, like the shirt, had a similar band, worked with porcupine quills of richest dyes, passing down the seam on the outer part of the leg, and fringed also the whole length of the leg, with the scalp locks taken from his enemies' heads.

"The moccasins were of buckskin, and covered in almost every part with the beautiful embroidery of porcupines' quills.

"The head-dress, which was superb and truly magnificent, consisted of a crest of war eagles' quills, gracefully falling back from the forehead over the back part of the head, and extending quite down to his feet; set the whole way in a profusion of ermine, and surmounted on the top of the head, with the horns of the buffalo, shaved thin and highly polished.

"The necklace was made of fifty huge claws or nail of the grizzly bear, ingeniously arranged on the skin of an otter, and worn, like the scalp-locks, as a trophy—as an evidence unquestionable, that he had contended with and overcome that desperate enemy in open combat.

"His shield was made of the hide of the buffalo's neck, and hardened with glue that was taken from its hoofs; its boss was the skin of a pole-cat, and its edges were fringed with rows of eagles' quills and hoofs of the antelope.

"His bow was of bone, and as white and beautiful as ivory; over its back was laid, and firmly attached to it, a coating of deer's sinews, which gave it its elasticity, and of course death to all that stood inimically before it. Its string was three stranded and twisted of sinews, which many a time had twanged and sent the whizzing death to animal and to human victims.

"The quiver was made of a panther's skin and hung upon his back, charged with its deadly arrows; some were poisoned and some were not; they were feathered with hawks' and eagles' quills; some were clean and innocent, and pure, and others were stained all over, with animal and human blood that was dried upon them. Their blades or points were of flints, and some of steel; and altogether were a deadly magazine.

"The lance or spear was held in his left hand; its blade was two-edged and of polished steel, and the blood of several human victims was seen dried upon it, one over the other; its shaft was

of the toughest ash, and ornamented at intervals with tufts of war eagles' quills.

"His **tobacco sack** was made of the skin of an otter, and tastefully garnished with quills of the porcupine; in it was carried his k'nick-k'nick (the bark of the red willow, which is smoked as a substitute for tobacco), it contained also his flint and steel, and punk for lighting.

"His **pipe**, which was ingeniously carved out of the red steatite (or pipe stone), the stem of which was three feet long and two inches wide, made from the stalk of the young ash; about half its length was wound with delicate braids of the porcupine's quills, so ingeniously wrought as to represent figures of men and animals upon it. It was also ornamented with the skins and beaks of wood-peckers' heads, and the hair of the white buffalo's tail. The lower half of the stem was painted red, and on its edges it bore the notches he had recorded for the snows (or years) of his life.

"His **robe** was made of the skin of a young buffalo bull, with the fur on one side, and the other finely and delicately dressed; with all the battles of his life emblazoned on it with his own hand.

"His **belt**, which was of a substantial piece of buckskin, was firmly girded around his waist; and in it were worn his tomahawk and scalping knife.

"His **medicine bag** was the skin of a beaver, curiously ornamented with hawks' bills and ermine. It was held in his right hand, and his po-ko-mo-kon or (war club) which was made of a round stone, tied up in a piece of rawhide, and attached to the end of a stick, somewhat in the form of a sling, was laid with the others of his weapons at his feet.

"Such was the dress of Mah-to-toh-pa when he entered my wigwam to stand for his picture; but such I have not entirely represented it in his portrait; having rejected such trappings and ornaments as interfered with the grace and simplicity of the figure. He was beautifully and extravagantly dressed; and in this he was not alone, for hundreds of others are equally elegant. In plumes, and arms, and ornaments, he is not singular; but in laurels and wreaths he stands unparalleled. His breast has been bared and scarred in defense of his country, and his brows

crowned with honors that elevate him conspicuous above all of his nation. There is no man amongst the Mandans so generally loved, nor any one who wears a robe so justly famed and honorable as that of Mah-to-toh-pa.

His History Robe. "I said his robe was of the skin of a young buffalo bull, and that the battles of his life were emblazoned upon it; and on a former occasion, that he presented me a beautiful robe, containing all the battles of his life, which he had spent two weeks' time in copying from his original one, which he wore on his shoulders.

"This robe with his tracings on it, is the chart of his military life; and when explained, will tell more of Mah-to-toh-pa.

"Some days after this robe was presented, he called upon me with Mr. Kipp, the trader and interpreter for the Mandans, and gave me of each battle there portrayed the following history, which was interpreted by Mr. Kipp, from his own lips, and written down by me, as we three sat upon the robe.

"Mr. Kipp, who is a gentleman of respectability and truth, and who has lived with these people ten years, assured me, that nearly every one of these narrations were of events that had happened whilst he had lived with them, and had been familiarly known to him; and that every word that he asserted was true.

"And again, reader, in this country where, of all countries I ever was in men are the most jealous of rank and of standing; and in a community so small also, that every man's deeds of honor and chivalry are familiarly known to all; it would not be reputable, or even safe to life, for a warrior to wear upon his back the representations of battles he never had fought; professing to have done what every child in the village would know he never had done.

"So then I take the records of battles on the robe of Mah-to-toh-pa to be matter of historical fact; and I proceed to give them as I wrote them down from his own lips. Twelve battle scenes are there represented, where he has contended with his enemy, and in which he has taken fourteen of their scalps. The groups are drawn according to his own rude ideas of the arts; and I proceed to describe them in turn, as they were explained to me.

ROBE OF MAH-TO-TOH-PA.

"1. Mah-to-toh-pa kills a Sioux chief—the three heads represent the three Riccarees, whom the Sioux chief had previously killed. The Sioux chief is seen with war paint black on his face. Mah-to-toh-pa is seen with the scalp of the Sioux in one hand, and his knife in the other, with his bow and quiver lying behind him.

"2. A Shienne chief, who sent word to Mah-to-toh-pa that he wished to fight him—was killed by Mah-to-toh-pa with a lance, in the presence of a large party of Mandans and Shiennes. Mah-to-toh-pa is here known by his lance with eagles' quills on it.

"3. A Shienne killed by Mah-to-toh-pa after Mah-to-toh-pa had been left by his party, badly wounded and bleeding; the twenty-five or thirty foot tracks around, represent the number of Shiennes, who were present when the battle took place; and the bullets from their guns represented as flying all around the head of Mah-to-toh-pa.

"4. Shienne chief with war eagle head-dress, and a beautiful shield, ornamented with war eagles' quills, killed by Mah-to-toh-pa. In this battle the wife of the Shienne rushed forward in a desperate manner to his assistance; but arriving too late fell a victim. In this battle Mah-to-toh-pa obtained two scalps.

"5. Mah-to-toh-pa, with a party of Riccarees, fired at by a party of Sioux; the Riccarees fled—Mah-to-toh-pa dismounted and drove his horse back, facing the enemy alone and killing one of them. Mah-to-toh-pa is here represented with a beautiful head-dress of war-eagles' quills, and one on his horse's head of equal beauty; his shield is on his arm, and the party of Sioux is represented in front of him by the number of horse's tracks.

"6. The brother of Mah-to-toh-pa killed by a Riccaree, who shot him with an arrow, and then running a lance through his body, left it there. Mah-to-toh-pa was the first to find his brother's body with the lance in it; he drew the lance from the body, kept it four years with the blood dried on its blade, and then, according to his oath, killed the same Riccaree with the same lance; the dead body of his brother is here seen with the arrow and lance remaining in it, and the tracks of the Riccaree's horses in front."

His Exploits. "The following was, perhaps, one of the most extraordinary exploits of this remarkable man's life, and is well

attested by Mr. Kipp, and several white men, who were living in the Mandan village at the time of its occurrence. In a skirmish, near the Mandan village, when they were set upon by their enemies, the Riccarees, the brother of Mah-to-toh-pa was missing for several days, when Mah-to-toh-pa found the body shockingly mangled, and a handsome spear left piercing the body through the heart. The spear was brought by him into the Mandan village, where it was recognized by many as a famous weapon belonging to a noted brave of the Riccarees, by the name of Won-go-tap. This spear was brandished through the Mandan village by Mah-to-toh-pa (with the blood of his brother dried on its blade), crying most piteously, and swearing that he would some day revenge the death of his brother with the same weapon.

“It is almost an incredible fact, that he kept this spear with great care in his wigwam for the space of four years, in the fruitless expectation of an opportunity to use it upon the breast of its owner; when his indignant soul, impatient of further delay, burst forth in the most uncontrollable frenzy and fury; he again brandished it through the village, and said, that the blood of his brother’s heart which was seen on its blade was yet fresh, and called loudly for revenge. ‘Let every Mandan (said he) be silent, and let no one sound the name of Mah-to-toh-pa—let no one ask for him, nor where he has gone, until you hear him sound the war-cry in front of the village, when he will enter it and show you the blood of Won-go-tap. The blade of this lance shall drink the heart’s blood of Won-go-tap, or Mah-to-toh-pa mingles his shadow with that of his brother.’

“With this he sallied forth from the village, and over the plains, with the lance in his hands; his direction was towards the Riccaree village, and all eyes were upon him, though none dared to speak till he disappeared over the distant grassy bluffs. He traveled the distance of two hundred miles entirely alone, with a little parched corn in his pouch, making his marches by night, and lying secreted by days, until he reached the Riccaree village; where (being acquainted with its shapes and its habits, and knowing the position of the wigwam of his doomed enemy) he loitered about in disguise, mingling himself in the obscure throng; and, at last, silently and alone, observed through the rents of the wigwam, the last motions and movements of his victim, as he

retired to bed with his wife; saw him light his last pipe and smoke it 'to its end'—he saw the last whiff, and saw the last curl of blue smoke that faintly steeped from its bowl—he saw the village a while in darkness and silence, and the embers that were covered in the middle of the wigwam gone nearly out, and the last flickering light which had been gently playing over them; when he walked softly but not slyly, into the wigwam and seated himself by the fire, over which was hanging a large pot, with a quantity of cooked meat remaining in it; and by the side of the fire, the pipe and tobacco pouch which had just been used; and knowing that the twilight of the wigwam was not sufficient to disclose the features of his face to his enemy, he very deliberately turned to the pot and completely satiated the desperate appetite, which he had got in a journey of six or seven days, with little or nothing to eat; and then, as deliberately, charged and lighted the pipe, and sent (no doubt, in every whiff that he drew through its stem) a prayer to the Great Spirit for a moment longer for the consummation of his design. Whilst eating and smoking, the wife of his victim, while laying in bed, several times inquired of her husband, what man it was who was eating in their lodge? To which, he as many times replied, 'its no matter; let him eat for he is probably hungry.'

"Mah-to-toh-pa knew full well that his appearance would cause no other reply than this, from the dignitary of the nation; for, from an invariable custom amongst these northern Indians, any one who is hungry is allowed to walk into any man's lodge and eat. Whilst smoking his last gentle and tremulous whiffs on the pipe, Mah-to-toh-pa (leaning back, and turning gradually on his side, to get a better view of the position of his enemy, and to see a little more distinctly the shapes of things) stirred the embers with his toes (readers, I had every word of this from his own lips, and every attitude and gesture acted out with his own limbs), until he saw his way was clear; at which moment, with his lance in his hands, he arose and drove it through the body of his enemy, and snatching the scalp from his head, he darted from the lodge—and quick as lightning, with the lance in one hand, and the scalp in the other, made his way to the prairie. The village was in an uproar, but he was off, and no one knew the enemy who had struck the blow. Mah-to-toh-pa ran all night, and,

lay close during the days; thanking the Great Spirit for strengthening his heart and his arm to this noble revenge; and praying fervently for a continuance of his aid and protection till he should get back to his own village. His prayers were heard; and on the sixth morning at sun-rise, Mah-to-toh-pa descended the bluffs, and entered the village amidst deafening shouts of applause, while he brandished and showed to his people the blade of his lance, with the blood of his victim dried upon it, over that of his brother; and the scalp of Won-go-tap suspended from its handle.

“Such was the feat represented by Mah-to-toh-pa on his robe—and the lance, of which I have just spoken, is seen in the hand of his portrait, which will stand in my gallery, and of which I have thus formerly spoken. ‘The lance or spear of Mah-to-toh-pa, when he stood for his portrait, was held in his left hand; its blade was two-edged, and of polished steel, and the blood of several human victims was seen dried upon its surface, one over the other; its shaft was of the toughest ash, and ornamented at intervals with tufts of war eagles’ quills.’

“In the portrait of which I am speaking, there will be seen an eagle’s quill balanced on the hilt of the lance, severed from its original position and loose from the weapon. When I painted his portrait, he brought that quill to my wigwam in his left hand, and carefully balancing it on the lance, as seen in the painting; he desired me to be very exact with it, to have it appear as separate from, and unconnected with the lance; and to represent a spot of blood which was visible upon it. I indulged him in his request, and then got from him the following explanation: ‘That quill (said he) is great medicine. It belongs to the Great Spirit, and not to me—when I was running out of the lodge of Won-ga-tap, I looked back and saw that quill hanging to the wound in his side; I ran back, and pulling it out, brought it home in my left hand, and I have kept it for the Great Spirit to this day.’

“‘Why do you not then tie it on to the lance again, where it came off?’

“‘Hush-sh (said he), if the Great Spirit had wished it to be tied on in that place, it never would have come off; he has been kind to me, and I will not offend him.’

“7. A Riccaree killed by Mah-to-toh-pa in revenge of the

death of a white man killed by a Riccaree in the fur traders' fort, a short time previous.

"8. Mah-to-toh-pa, or Four Bears, kills a Shienne chief, who challenged him to a single combat, in presence of the two war parties; they fought on horseback with guns, until Mah-to-toh-pa's powder horn was shot away; they then fought with bows and arrows, until their quivers were emptied, when they dismounted and fought single-handed. The Shienne drew his knife, and Mah-to-toh-pa had left him; they struggled for the knife, which Mah-to-toh-pa wrested from the Shienne, and killed him with it; in the struggle the blade of the knife was several times drawn through the hand of Mah-to-toh-pa, and the blood is seen running from the wound.

"This extraordinary occurrence also, was one which admits of, and deserves a more elaborate description, which I will here give as it was translated from his own lips, while he sat upon the robe, pointing to his painting of it; and at the same time brandishing the identical knife which he drew from his belt, as he was showing how the fatal blow was given; and exhibiting the wounds inflicted in his hand, as the blade of the knife was several times drawn through it before he wrested it from his antagonist.

"A party of about 150 Shienne warriors had made an assault upon the Mandan village at an early hour in the morning, and driven off a considerable number of horses, and taken one scalp. Mah-to-toh-pa, who was then a young man, but famed as one of the most valiant of the Mandans, took the lead of a party of fifty warriors, all he could at that time muster, and went in pursuit of the enemy; about noon of the second day, they came in sight of the Shiennes; and the Mandans seeing their enemy much more numerous than they had expected, were generally disposed to turn about and return without attacking them. They started to go back, when Mah-to-toh-pa galloped out in front upon the prairie, and plunged his lance into the ground; the blade was driven into the earth to its hilt—he made another circuit around, and in that circuit tore from his breast a reddened sash, which he hung upon its handle as a flag, calling out to the Mandans. 'What! Have we come to this? We have dogged our enemy two days, and now that we have found them, are we to turn about

and go back like cowards? Mah-to-toh-pa's lance, which is red with the blood of brave men, has led you to the sight of your enemy, and you have followed it; it now stands firm in the ground, where the earth will drink the blood of Mah-to-toh-pa. You may go back, and Mah-to-toh-pa will fight them alone.'

"During this maneuver, the Shiennes, who had discovered the Mandans behind them, had turned about and were gradually approaching, in order to give them battle; the chief of the Shienne war party seeing and understanding the difficulty, and admiring the gallant conduct of Mah-to-toh-pa, galloped his horse forward within hailing distance, in front of the Mandans, and called out to know 'who he was who had stuck down his lance and defied the whole enemy alone?'

"'I am Mah-to-toh-pa, second in command of the brave and valiant Mandans.'

"'I have heard often of Mah-to-toh-pa, he is a great warrior—dares Mah-to-toh-pa to come forward and fight this battle with me alone, and our warriors will look on?'

"'Is he a chief who speaks to Mah-to-toh-pa?'

"'My scalps you see hanging to my horse's bits, and here is my lance with the ermine skins and the war eagle's tail.'

"'You have said enough.'

"The Shienne chief made a circuit or two at full gallop on a beautiful white horse, when he struck his lance into the ground, and left it standing by the side of the lance of Mah-to-toh-pa, both of which were waiving together their little red flags, tokens of blood and defiance.

"The two parties then drew nearer, on a beautiful prairie, and the two full-plumed chiefs, at full speed, drove furiously upon each other. Both firing their guns at the same moment. They passed each other a little distance and wheeled, when Mah-to-toh-pa threw off his powder horn, and by holding it up, showed his adversary that the bullet had shattered it to pieces and destroyed his ammunition; he then threw it from him, and his gun also—drew his bow from his quiver, and an arrow, and his shield upon his left arm! The Shienne instantly did the same; his horn was thrown off, and his gun was thrown into the air—his shield was balanced on his arm—his bow drawn, and quick as lightning, they were both on the wing for a deadly combat! Like two soaring

eagles in the open air, they made their circuits around, and the twangs of their sinewy bows were heard, and the war-whoop, as they dashed by each other, parrying off the whizzing arrows with their shields! Some lodged in their legs and some others in their arms; but both protected their bodies with their bucklers of bull's hide. Deadly and many were the shafts that fled from their murderous bows. At length the horse of Mah-to-toh-pa fell to the ground with an arrow in his heart! His rider sprang upon his feet prepared to renew the combat; but the Shienne seeing his adversary dismounted, sprang from his horse, and driving him back, presented the face of his shield towards his enemy, inviting him to come on! A few shots were exchanged thus, when the Shienne, having discharged all his arrows, held up his empty quiver and dashing it furiously to the ground, with his bow and his shield, drew and brandished his naked knife.

"'Yes,' said Mah-to-toh-pa, as he threw his shield and quiver to the earth, and was rushing up—he grasped for his knife, but his belt had it not; he had left it at home! His bow was in his hand, with which he parried his antagonist's blow and felled him to the ground! A desperate struggle now ensued for the knife—the blade of which was several times drawn through the right hand of Mah-to-toh-pa, inflicting the most frightful wounds, while he was severely wounded in several parts of the body. He at length succeeded however, in wresting it from his adversary's hand, and plunged it to his heart.

"By this time the two parties had drawn up in close view of each other, and at the close of the battle, Mah-to-toh-pa held up, and claimed in deadly silence, the knife and scalp of the noble Shienne chief.

"9. Several hundred Minnetarees and Mandans attacked by a party of Assiniboinés—all fled but Mah-to-toh-pa, who stood his ground, fired and killed one of the enemy, putting the rest of them to flight, and driving off sixty horses. He is here seen with his lance and shield—foot tracks of his enemy in front, and his own party's horse tracks behind him, and a shower of bullets flying around his head; here he got the name of 'the four bears,' as the Assinibones said he rushed on like four bears.

"10. Mah-to-toh-pa gets from his horse and kills two Ojibbeway women, and takes their scalps; done by the side of an Ojibbe-

way village, where they went to the river for water. He is here seen with his lance in one hand and his knife in the other—an eagle's plume head-dress on his horse, and his shield left on his horse's back. I incurred his ill-will for a while by asking him, whether it was manly to boast of taking the scalps of women? And his pride prevented him from giving me any explanation or apology. The interpreter, however, explained to me that he had secreted himself in the most daring manner, in full sight of the Ojibbeway village, seeking to revenge a murder, where he remained six days without sustenance, and then killed the two women in full view of the tribe, and made his escape, which entitled him to the credit of a victory, though his victims were women.

"11. A large party of Assiniboines entrenched near the Mandan village attacked by the Mandans and Minnetarees, who were driven back—Mah-to-toh-pa rushes into the entrenchment alone—an Indian fires at him and burns his face with the muzzle of his gun, which bursts—the Indian retreats, leaving his exploded gun, and Mah-to-toh-pa shoots him through the shoulders as he runs, and kills him with his tomahawk; the gun of the Assiniboine is seen falling to the ground, and in front of him the heads of the Assiniboines in the entrenchment; the horse of Mah-to-toh-pa is seen behind him.

"12. Mah-to-toh-pa between his enemy the Sioux, and his own people, with an arrow shot through him, after standing the fire of the Sioux for a long time alone. In this battle he took no scalps, yet his valor was so extraordinary that the chiefs and braves awarded him the honor of a victory.

"This feat is seen in the center of the robe—head-dress of war eagles' quills on his own and his horse's head—the tracks of his enemies' horses are seen in front of him, and bullets flying both ways all around him. With his whip in his hand he is seen urging his horse forward, and an arrow is seen flying, and bloody, as it has passed through his body. For this wound, and several others mentioned above, he bears the honorable scars on his body, which he generally keeps covered with red paint.

"Such are the battles traced upon the robe of Mah-to-toh-pa, or Four Bears, interpreted by J. Kipp, from the words of the hero

whilst sitting upon the robe, explaining each battle as represented." (p. 155.)

The note below quoted is found written by Catlin as a foot-note upon the knife in question, referred to under heading "8" in his explanation of Four Bears' robe: "This celebrated weapon with the blood of several victims dried upon its blade, now hangs in the Indian gallery, with satisfactory certificates of its identity and its remarkable history, and an exact drawing of it and its scabbard can be seen in Plate 99, a."

The "Annual Religious Ceremony," so long looked for by Catlin at the Mandan villages, is now described by him at length, in which narration he refers to the "Great (or Good) Spirit" and the "Evil Spirit" as the two distinguishing deities of the Mandans, and in connection with the ceremony in question, brings out the mysterious coming into the village of the "First Man" as being commemorative of the subsidence of the flood, which event he declares is accountable for the ceremony itself; the successive dances, the varied and strange incidents in the celebration; the hideous or grotesque postures, etc., symbolic of the occasion, and the terrible sufferings and feats of endurance through self-imposed tests as the climax to the whole performance—all are related in detail in the graphic mode of that fortunate student of Indian life whose opportunities, large and fateful, were utilized through the species of inspired narration so characteristic of Catlin. It is a long chapter, but no abridgement of it could be other than an effacement of its realities:

Annual Religious Ceremony. "Oh! 'horrible Visu et Mirabile Dictu.' Thank God, it is over, that I have seen it, and am able to tell it to the world.

"The annual religious ceremony, of four days, of which I have so often spoken, and which I have so long been wishing to see, has at last been enacted in this village; and I have, fortunately, been able to see and to understand it in most of its bearings, which was more than I had reason to expect; for no white man, in all probability, has ever been before admitted to the medicine-lodge during these most remarkable and appalling scenes.

"Well and truly has it been said, that the Mandans are a strange and peculiar people; and most correctly had I been informed, that this was an important and interesting scene, by

those who had, on former occasions, witnessed such parts of it as are transacted out of doors, and in front of the medicine-lodge.

"Since the date of my last letter I was lucky enough to have painted the medicine-man, who was high-priest on this grand occasion, or conductor of the ceremonies, who had me regularly installed as doctor or 'medicine;' and who on the morning when the grand refinements in mysteries commenced, took me by the arm, and led me into the medicine-lodge, where the fur trader, Mr. Kipp, and his two clerks accompanied me in close attendance for four days; all of us going to our own quarters at sun-down, and returning at sun-rise the next morning.

"I took my sketch book with me, and have made many and faithful drawings of what we saw, and full notes of everything as translated to me by the interpreter; and since the close of that horrid and frightful scene, which was a week ago or more, I have been closely ensconced in an earth covered wigwam, with a fine sky-light over my head, with my palette and brushes, endeavoring faithfully to put the whole of what we saw upon canvass, which my companions all agree to be critically correct, and of the fidelity of which they have attached their certificates to the backs of the paintings.

"I have made four paintings of these strange scenes, containing several hundred figures, representing the transactions of each day; and if I live to get them home, they will be found to be exceedingly curious and interesting.

"I shudder at the relation, or even at the thought of these barbarous and cruel scenes, and am almost ready to shrink from the task of reciting them after I have so long promised some account of them. I entered the medicine-house of these scenes, as I would have entered a church, and expected to see something extraordinary and strange, but yet in the form of worship or devotion; but alas! Little did I expect to see the interior of their holy temple turned into a **slaughter-house**, and its floors strewed with the blood of its fanatic devotees. Little did I think that I was entering a house of God, where his blinded worshippers were to pollute its sacred interior with their blood, and propitiatory suffering and tortures—surpassing, if possible, the cruelty of the rack or the inquisition; but such the scene has been, and as such I will endeavor to describe it.

"The 'Mandan religious ceremony' then, as I believed it is very justly denominated, is an annual transaction, held in their medicine-lodge once a year, as a great religious anniversary, and for several distinct objects, as I shall in a few minutes describe; during and after which, they look with implicit reliance for the justification and approval of the Great Spirit."

Indians Religious. "All of the Indian tribes, as I have before observed, are religious—are worshipful—and many of them go to almost incredible lengths (as will be seen in the present instance, and many others I may recite) in worshipping the Great Spirit; denying and humbling themselves before Him for the same purpose, and in the same hope as we do, perhaps in a more rational and acceptable way.

"The tribes, so far as I have visited them, all distinctly believe in the existence of a Great (or Good) Spirit, and Evil (or Bad) Spirit, and also in a future existence and future accountability, according to their virtues and vices in this world. So far the North American Indians would seem to be one family, and such an unbroken theory among them; yet with regard to the manner and form, and time and place of that accountability—to the construction of virtues and vices, and the modes of appeasing and propitiating the Good and Evil Spirits, they are found with all the changes and variety which fortuitous circumstances, and fictions, and fables have wrought upon them.

"If from their superstitions and their ignorance, there are oftentimes obscurities and mysteries thrown over and around their system, yet these affect not the theory itself, which is everywhere essentially the same—and which, if it be not correct, has this much to commend the admiration of the enlightened world, that they worship with great sincerity, and all according, to one creed.

"The Mandans believe in the existence of a Great (or Good) Spirit, and also of an Evil Spirit, who they say existed long before the Good Spirit, and is far superior in power. They all believe also in a future state of existence, and a future administration of rewards and punishments, and (so do all other tribes that I have yet visited) they believe those punishments are not eternal, but commensurate with their sins.

Heaven and Hell. "These people living in a climate where they

suffer from cold in the severity of their winters, have very naturally reversed our ideas of Heaven and Hell. The latter they describe to be a country very far to the north, of barren and hideous aspect, and covered with eternal snows and ice. The torments of this freezing place they describe as most excruciating; whilst Heaven they suppose to be in a warmer and delightful latitude, where nothing is felt but the keenest enjoyment, and where the country abounds in buffalos and other luxuries of life. The Great or Good Spirit they believe dwells in the former place for the purpose of there meeting those who have offended him; increasing the agony of their sufferings, by being himself present, administering the penalties. The Bad or Evil Spirit they at the same time suppose to reside in Paradise, still tempting the happy; and those who have gone to the regions of punishment they believe to be tortured for a time proportioned to the amount of their transgressions, and that they are then to be transferred to the land of the happy, where they are again liable to the temptation—of the Evil Spirit, and answerable again at a future period for their new offenses.

“Such is the religious creed of the Mandans, and for the purpose of appeasing the Good and Evil Spirits, and to secure their entrance into those ‘fields Elysian,’ or beautiful hunting grounds, do the young men subject themselves to the horrid and sickening cruelties to be described in the following pages.

“There are other three distinct objects (yet to be named) for which these religious ceremonies are held, which are as follows:

The Flood. “First, they are held annually as a celebration of the event of the subsiding of the flood, which they call Mee-nee-ka-ha-sha, (sinking down or settling of the waters).

“Secondly, for the purpose of dancing what they call, Bel-lohek-na-pie (the bull dance); to the strict observance of which they attribute the coming of buffalos to supply them with food during the season, and

“Thirdly, and lastly, for the purpose of conducting all the young men of the tribe, as they annually arrive at the age of manhood, through an ordeal of privation and torture, which, while it is supposed to harden their muscles and prepare them for extreme endurance, enables the chiefs who are spectators to the scene, to decide upon their comparative bodily strength and

ability to endure the extreme privations and sufferings which often fall to the lot of Indian warriors; and that they may decide who is the most hardy and best able to lead a war party in case of extreme exigency.

"This part of the ceremony, as I have just witnessed it, is truly shocking to behold, and will almost stagger the belief of the world when they read of it. The scene is too terrible and too revolting to be seen or to be told, were it not an essential part of the whole, which will be new to the civilized world, and therefore worth their knowing.

"The bull-dance, and many other parts of these ceremonies are exceedingly grotesque and amusing, and that part of them which has a relation to the Deluge is harmless and full of interest.

"In the center of the Mandan village is an open, circular arena of 150 feet in diameter, kept always clear, as a public ground, for the display of all their public feasts, parades, etc., and around it are their wigwams placed as near to each other as they can well stand, their doors facing the center of this public arena."

"**Big Canoe.**" "In the middle of this ground, which is trodden like a hard pavement, is a curb (somewhat like a large hogshead standing on its end) made of planks (and bound with hoops) some eight or nine feet high, which they religiously preserve and protect from year to year, free from mark or scratch, and which they call the 'big canoe'—it is undoubtedly a symbolic representation of a part of their traditional history of the flood; which it is very evident, from this and numerous other features of this grand ceremony, they have in some way or other received, and are here endeavoring to perpetuate by vividly impressing it on the minds of the whole nation. This object of superstition, from its position, as the very center of the village is the rallying point of the whole nation. To it their devotions are paid on various occasions of feasts and religious exercises during the year; and in this extraordinary scene it was often the nucleus of their mystery and cruelties, as I shall shortly describe them, and becomes an object worth bearing in mind, and worthy of being understood."

The Returning Bird. "This exciting and appalling scene, then, which is familiarly (and no doubt correctly) called the 'Mandan religious ceremony, commences, not on a particular day of the year, (for these people keep no record of the days or weeks), but

at a particular season, which is designated by the full expansion of the willow leaves under the bank of the river; for, according to their tradition, 'the twig that the bird brought home was a willow bough, and had full grown leaves on it,' and the bird to which they allude is the mourning or turtle-dove, which they took great pains to point out to me, as it is often to be seen feeding on the sides of their earth covered lodges, and which, being as they call it, a medicine-bird, it is not to be destroyed or harmed by any one, and even their dogs are instructed not to do it injury.

"On the morning on which this strange transaction commenced, I was sitting at breakfast in the house of the trader, Mr. Kipp. when at sun-rise, we were suddenly startled by the shrieking and screaming of the women, and barking and howling of dogs, as if an enemy were actually storming their village.

"'Now we have it!' (exclaimed mine host, as he sprang from the table), 'the grand ceremony has commenced! Drop your knife and fork, Monsr, and get your sketch book as soon as possible, that you may lose nothing, for the very moment of commencing is as curious as anything else of this strange affair.' I seized my sketch book, and all hands of us were in an instant in front of the medicine-lodge, ready to see and to hear all that was to take place. Groups of women and children were gathered on the tops of their earth covered wigwams, and all were screaming; and dogs were howling, and all eyes directed to the prairies in the west, where was beheld at a mile distant, a solitary individual descending a prairie bluff, and making his way in a direct line towards the village!

"The whole community joined in the general expression of great alarm, as if they were in danger of instant destruction; bows were strung and thumbed to test their elasticity—their horses were caught upon the prairie and run into the village—warriors were blackening their faces, and dogs were muzzled, and every preparation made, as if for instant combat.

"**"First Man" Arrives.** "During this deafening din and confusion within the piquets of the village of the Mandans, the figure discovered on the prairie continued to approach with a dignified step and in a right line towards the village; all eyes were upon him, and he at length made his appearance (without opposition) within the piquets, and proceeded towards the center of the vil-

lage, where all the chiefs and braves stood ready to receive him, which they did in a cordial manner, by shaking hands with him, recognizing him as an old acquaintance, and pronouncing his name Nu-mohk-muck-nah (the first or only man). The body of this strange personage, which was chiefly naked, was painted with white clay, so as to resemble at a little distance, a white man; he wore a robe of four white wolf skins falling back over his shoulders; on his head he had a splendid head-dress made of two ravens' skins, and in his left hand he cautiously carried a large pipe, which he seemed to watch and guard as something of great importance. After passing the chiefs and braves as described, he approached the medicine or mystery lodge which he had the means of opening, and which had been religiously closed during the year except for the performance of these religious rites.

"Having opened and entered it, he called in four men whom he appointed to clean it out, and put it in readiness for the ceremonies, by sweeping and strewing a profusion of green willow boughs over its floor, and with them decorating its sides. Wild sage also, and many other aromatic herbs they gathered from the prairies, and scattered over its floor; and over these were arranged a curious group of buffalo and human skulls, and other articles, which were to be used during this strange and unaccountable transaction.

"During the whole of this day, and while these preparations were making in the medicine-lodge, Nu-mohk-muck-a-nah (the first or only man) traveled through the village, stopping in front of every man's lodge, and crying until the owner of the lodge came out, and asked who he was, and what was the matter? To which he replied by relating the sad catastrophe which had happened on the earth's surface by the overflowing of the waters, saying that 'he was the only person saved from the universal calamity; that he landed his big canoe on a high mountain in the west, where he now resides; that he had come to open the medicine-lodge, which must needs receive a present of some edged-tool from the owner of every wigwam, that it may be sacrificed to the water;' for he says, 'if this is not done, there will be another flood, and no one will be saved, as it is with such tools that the big canoe was made.'

"Having visited every lodge or wigwam in the village, during the day, and having received such a present at each, as a hatchet, a knife, etc., (which is undoubtedly always prepared and ready for the occasion), he returned at evening and deposited them in the medicine-lodge, where they remained until the afternoon of the last day of the ceremony, when, as the final or closing scene, they were thrown into the river in a deep place, from a bank thirty feet high, and in presence of the whole village; from whence they can never be recovered, and where they were, undoubtedly, sacrificed to the Spirit of the Water.

"During the first night of this strange character in the village, no one could tell where he slept; and every person, both old and young, and dogs and all living things were kept within doors, and dead silence reigned everywhere. On the next morning at sunrise, however, he made his appearance again, and entered the medicine-lodge; and at his heels (in 'Indian file,' i. e. single file, one following in another's tracks) all the young men who were candidates for the self-tortures which were to be inflicted, and for the honors that were to be bestowed by the chiefs on those who could the most manfully endure them. There were on this occasion about fifty young men who entered the lists, and as they went into the sacred lodge, each one's body was chiefly naked, and covered with clay of different colors; some were red, others were yellow, and some were covered with white clay, giving them the appearance of white men. Each one of them carried in his right hand his medicine-bag—on his left arm, his shield of the bull's hide—in his left hand, his bow and arrow, with his quiver slung on his back.

"When all had entered the lodge, they placed themselves in reclining posture around its sides, and each one had suspended over his head his respective weapons and medicine, presenting altogether one of the most wild and picturesque scenes imaginable.

"Nu-mohk-muck-a-nah (the first or only man) was in the midst of them, and having lit and smoked his medicine-pipe for their success and having addressed them in a short speech, stimulating and encouraging them to trust to the Great Spirit for his protection during the severe ordeal they were about to pass through, he called into the lodge an old medicine or mystery man, whose

body was painted yellow and whom he appointed master of ceremonies during this occasion, whom they denominate in their language O-kee-pah Ka-se-kah (keeper or conductor of the ceremonies.) He was appointed and the authority passed by the presentation of the medicine-pipe, on which they consider hangs all the power of holding and conducting all these rites.

"After this delegated authority had thus passed over to the medicine-man, Nu-mohk-muck-a-nah shook hands with him and bade him good-bye, saying 'that he was going back to the mountains in the west, from which he should assuredly return in just a year from that time to open the lodge again.' He then went out of the lodge, and passing through the village, took formal leave of the chiefs in the same manner, and soon disappeared over the bluffs from whence he came. No more was seen of this surprising character during the occasion, but I shall have something yet to say of him and his strange office before I get through the letter.

Mystery Man. "To return to the lodge, the medicine or mystery man just appointed, and who had received his injunctions from Nu-mohk-muck-a-nah, was left sole conductor and keeper, and according to these injunctions it was his duty to lie by a small fire in the center of the lodge with his medicine pipe in his hand, crying to the Great Spirit incessantly, watching the young men and preventing entirely their escape from the lodge, and all communication whatever with people outside, for the space of four days and nights, during which time they were not allowed to eat, to drink, or to sleep, preparatory to the excruciating self-tortures which they were to endure on the fourth day.

"I mentioned that I had made four paintings of these strange scenes and the first one exhibits the interior of the medicine-lodge at this moment, with the young men all reclining around its sides, and the conductor or mystery man lying by the fire, crying to the Great Spirit. It was just at this juncture that I was ushered into this sacred temple of their worship, with my companions, which was undoubtedly the first time that their devotions had ever been trespassed upon by the presence of pale faces, and in this instance it had been brought about in the following strange and unexpected manner.

Catlin as "White Medicine." "I had most luckily for myself

painted a full-length portrait of this great magician or high-priest, but a day previous to the commencement of the ceremonies (in which I had represented him in the performance of some of his mysteries) with which he had been so exceedingly pleased as well as astonished (as 'he could see its eyes move'), that I must needs be, in his opinion, deeply skilled in magic and mysteries, and well entitled to a respectable rank in the craft, to which I had been at once elevated by the unanimous voice of the doctors, and regularly initiated and styled Te-ho-pee-nee-wash-ee-waska-pooska, the white medicine or Spirit painted.

"With this honorable degree which had just been conferred upon me, I was standing in front of the medicine lodge early in the morning with my companions by my side, endeavoring to get a peep if possible into its sacred interior, when this master of ceremonies, guarding and conducting its secrets, as I before described, came out of the door and taking me with a firm professional affection by the arm, led me into this sanctum sanctorum, which was strictly guarded from even a peep or a gaze of the vulgar, by a vestibule of eight or ten feet in length, guarded with a double screen or door, and two or three dark and frowning sentinels with spears or war-clubs in their hands. I gave the wink to my companions as I was passing in, and the potency of my medicine was such as to gain them a quiet admission, and all of us were comfortably placed on elevated seats, which our conductor soon prepared for us.

"We were then in full view of everything that transpired in the lodge, having before us the scene exactly, which is represented in the first of the four pictures. To this seat we returned every morning at sunrise and remained until sundown for four days, the whole time which these strange scenes occupied."

Mysterious "Medicine." "In addition to the preparation and arrangements of the interior of this sanctuary, as above described, there was a curious, though a very strict arrangement of buffalo and human skulls placed on the floor of the lodge, and between them (which were divided into two parcels), and in front of the reclining group of young candidates, was a small and very delicate scaffold, elevated about five feet from the ground, made of four posts or crotches, not larger than a gun-rod, and placed some four or five feet apart, supporting four equally delicate rods,

resting in the crotches; thus forming the frame of the scaffold, which was completed by a number of still smaller and more delicate sticks, transversely resting upon them. On the center of, this little frame rested some small object, which I could not exactly understand from the distance of twenty or thirty feet which intervened between it and my eye. I started several times from my seat to approach it, but all eyes were instantly upon me, and every mouth in the assembly sent forth a hush-sh—which brought me back to my seat again; and I at length quieted my stifled curiosity as well as I could, upon learning the fact, that so sacred was that object, and so important its secrets or mysteries, that not I alone, but even the young men, who were passing the ordeal, and all the village, save the conductor of the mysteries, were stoppd from approaching it, or knowing what it was.

“This little mystery-thing, whatever it was, had the appearance from where I sat, of a small tortoise or frog lying on its back, with its head and legs quite extended, and wound and tasselled off with exceedingly delicate red and blue, and yellow ribbons or tassels, and other bright colored ornaments; and seemed, from the devotion paid it, to be the very nucleus of their mysteries—the sanctissimus sanctorum, from which seemed to emanate all the sanctity of their proceedings, and to which, all seemed to be paying the highest devotional respect.

“This strange, yet important essence of their mysteries, I made every inquiry about; but got no further information of, than what I could learn by my eyes, at the distance at which I saw it, and from the silent respect which I saw paid it. I tried with the doctors, and all the fraternity answered me, that that was ‘great medicine,’ assuring me that it ‘could not be told.’ So I quieted my eūriosity as well as I could, by the full conviction that I had a degree or two yet to take before I could fathom all the arcana of Indian superstitions; and that this little, seemingly wonderful, relic of antiquity, symbol of some grand event, or ‘secret too valuable to be told,’ might have been at last nothing but a silly bunch of strings and toys, to which, they pay some great peculiar regard; giving thereby to some favorite Spirit or essence an ideal existence, and which, when called upon to describe, they refuse to do so, calling it, ‘Great Medicine’, for the very reason that there is nothing in it to reveal or describe.

"Immediately under the little frame or scaffold described, and on the floor of the lodge was placed a knife, and by the side of it a bundle of splints or skewers, which were kept in readiness for the infliction of the cruelties directly to be explained. There were seen also, in this stage of the affair, a number of cords of rawhide hanging down from the top of the lodge, and passing through its roof, with which the young men were to be suspended by the splints passed through their flesh, and drawn up by men placed on top of the lodge for the purpose, as will be described in a few moments."

Residium of the Flood. "There were also four articles of great veneration and importance lying on the floor of the lodge, which were sacks, containing in each some three or four gallons of water. These also were objects of superstitious regard, and made with great labor and much ingenuity; each one of them being constructed of the skin of the buffalo's neck, and most elaborately sewed together in the form of a large tortoise lying on its back, with a bunch of eagle's quills appended to it as a tail; and each of them having a stick, shaped like a drum stick, lying on them, with which, in a subsequent stage of these ceremonies, as will be seen, they are beaten upon by several of their mystery men, as a part of the music for their strange dances and mysteries. By the side of these sacks which they call Eeh-teeh-ka are two other articles of equal importance, which they call Eeh-na-dee (rattles), in the form of a gourd—shell made also of dried skins, and used at the same time as the others, in the music (or rather noise and din) for their dances, etc.

"These four sacks of water have the appearance of very great antiquity; and by inquiring of my very ingenious friend and patron, the medicine-man, after the ceremonies were over, he very gravely told me, that 'those four tortoises contained the water from the four quarters of the world—that these waters had been contained therein ever since the settling down of the waters.' I did not think it best to advance any argument against so ridiculous a theory, and therefore could not even inquire or learn, at what period they had been instituted, or how often, or on what occasions, the water in them had been changed or replenished.

"I made several propositions, through my friend Mr. Kipp, the

trader and interpreter, to purchase one of these strange things by offering them a very liberal price; to which I received in answer that these, and all the very numerous articles used in these ceremonies, being a society property and were medicine, and could not be sold for any consideration; so I abandoned all thoughts of obtaining anything, except what I have done by the medicine operation of my pencil, which was applied to everything, and even upon that they looked with decided distrust and apprehension, as a sort of theft or sacrilege.

"Such then was the group, and such the appearance of the interior of the medicine-lodge during the three first, and part of the fourth day also, of the Mandan religious ceremonies. The medicine-man, with a group about him of the young aspirants who were under his sole control, as was every article and implement to be used, and the sanctity of this solitary and gloomy looking place, which could not be trespassed upon by any man's presence without his most sovereign permission."

Bull Dance. "During the three first days of this solemn conclave, there were many very curious forms and amusements enacted in the open area in the middle of the village, and in front of the medicine lodge, by other members of the community, one of which formed a material part or link of these strange ceremonies. This very curious and exceedingly grotesque part of their performance which they denominated *Bel-lohek-nah-pick* (the bull dance) of which I have before spoken, as one of the avowed objects for which they held this annual fete; and to the strictest observance of which they attribute the coming of the buffalos to supply them with food during the season—is repeated four times during the first day, eight times on the second day, twelve times on the third day, and sixteen times on the fourth day; and always around the curb, or 'big canoe,' of which I have before spoken.

"This subject I have selected for my second picture, and the principal actors in it were eight men, with the entire skins of buffalos thrown over their backs, with the horns and hoofs and tails remaining on; their bodies in a horizontal position, enabling them to imitate the actions of the buffalo, whilst they were looking out of its eyes as through a mask. The bodies of these men were chiefly naked and all painted in the most extraordinary

manner, with the nicest adherence to exact similarity; their limbs, bodies and faces, being in every party covered, either with black, red or white paint. Each one of these strange characters had also a lock of buffalo's hair tied around his ankles—in his right hand a rattle, and a slender white rod or staff, six feet long, in the other; and carried on his back, a bunch of green willow boughs about the usual size of a bundle of straw. These eight men, being divided into four pairs, took their positions on the four different sides of the curb or big canoe, representing thereby the four cardinal points; and between each group of them, with the back turned to the big canoe, was another figure, engaged in the same dance, keeping step with them, with similar staff or wand in one hand and a rattle in the other, and (being four in number) answering again to the four cardinal points. The bodies of these four young men were chiefly naked, with no other dress upon them than a beautiful kelt (or quartz quaw), around the waist, made of eagles' quills and ermine, and very splendid head-dresses made of the same materials. Two of these figures were painted entirely black with pounded charcoal and grease, whom they called the 'firmament or night,' and the numerous white spots which were dotted all over their bodies, they called 'stars.' The other two were painted from head to foot as red as vermilion could make them; these they said represented the day, and the white streaks which were painted up and down over their bodies, were 'ghosts which the morning rays were chasing away.'

"These twelve are the only persons actually engaged in this strange dance, which is each time repeated in the same form, without the slightest variation. There are, however, a great number of characters engaged in giving the whole effect and wildness to this strange and laughable scene, each one acting well his part, and whose offices, strange and inexplicable as they are, I will endeavor to point out and explain as well as I can, from what I saw, elucidated by their own descriptions.

"This most remarkable scene, then, which is witnessed more or less often on each day, takes place in the presence of the whole nation, who are generally gathered around, on the tops of the wigwams or otherwise, as spectators, whilst the young men are reclining and fasting in the lodge as above described. On the first day, this 'bull dance' is given once to each of the cardinal

points, and the medicine-man smokes his pipe in those directions. On the second day, twice to each; three times to each on the third day, and four times to each on the fourth. As a signal for the dancers and other characters (as well as the public) to assemble, the old man, master of ceremonies, with the medicine-pipe in hand, dances out of the lodge, singing (or rather crying) forth a most pitiful lament, until he approaches the big canoe, against which he leans, with the pipe in his hand, and continues to cry. At this instant, four very aged and patriarchal looking men, whose bodies are painted red, and who have been guarding the four sides of the lodge, enter and bring out the four sacks of water, which they place near the big canoe, where they seat themselves by the side of them and commence thrumping on them with the mallets or drumsticks which have been lying on them; and another brandishes and shakes the eeh-na-dees or rattles, and all unite to them their voices, raised to the highest pitch possible, as the music for the bull dance, which is then commenced and continued for fifteen minutes or more in perfect time, and without cessation or intermission. When the music and dancing stop, which are always perfectly simultaneous, the whole nation raise the huzza, and a deafening shout of approbation; the master of ceremonies dances back to the medicine-lodge, and the old men return to their former place; the sacks of water, and all rest as before, until by the same method, they are again called into a similar action.

“The supernumeraries or other characters who play their parts in this grand spectacle are numerous and well worth description. By the side of the big canoe are seen two men with the skins of grizzly bears thrown over them, using the skins as a mask over their heads. These ravenous animals are continually growling and threatening to devour everything before them and interfering with the forms of their religious ceremony. To appease them the women are continually bringing and placing before them dishes of meat, which are as often snatched up and carried to the prairie, by two men whose bodies are painted black and their heads white, whom they call bald eagles, who are darting by them and grasping their food from before them as they pass. These are again chased upon the plains by a hundred or more small boys, who are naked, with their bodies painted

yellow and their heads white, whom they call Cabris or antelopes; who at length get the food away from them and devour it; thereby inculcating (perhaps) the beautiful moral, that by the dispensations of providence, his bountiful gifts will fall at last to the hands of the innocent.

"During the intervals between these dances, all these characters, except those from the medicine-lodge, retire to a wigwam close by, which they use on the occasion also as a sacred place, being occupied exclusively by them while they are at rest, and also for the purpose of painting and ornamenting their bodies for the occasion.

"During each and every one of these dances, the old men who beat upon the sacks and sing, are earnestly chanting forth their supplications to the Great Spirit, for the continuation of his influence in sending them buffalos to supply them with food during the year; they are administering courage and fortitude to the young men in the lodge, by telling them, that 'the Great Spirit has opened his ears in their behalf—that the very atmosphere all about them is peace—that their women and children can hold the mouth of the grizzly bear—that they have invoked from day to day O-kee-hee-de (the Evil Spirit)—that they are still challenging him to come, and yet he has not dared to make his appearance.'

The "Evil Spirit." "But alas! In the last of these dances, on the fourth day, in the midst of all their mirth and joy, and about noon, in the height of all these exaltations, an instant scream burst forth from the top of these lodges. Men, women, dogs and all, seemed actually to howl and shudder with alarm, as they fixed their glaring eyeballs upon the prairie bluff, about a mile in the west, down the side of which a man was seen descending at full speed towards the village. This strange character darted about in a zig-zag course in all directions on the prairie, like a boy in pursuit of a butterfly, until he approached the piquets of the village, when it was discovered that his body was entirely naked, and painted as black as a negro, with pounded charcoal and bear's grease; his body was therefore every where of a shining black, except occasionally white rings of an inch or more in diameter, which were marked here and there all over him: and frightful indentures of white around his mouth, resembling canine teeth. Added to his hideous appearance he gave the most fright-

ful shrieks and screams as he dashed through the village and entered the terrified group, which was composed (in that quarter) chiefly of females, who had assembled to witness the amusements which were transpiring around the 'big canoe.'

"The unearthly looking creature carried in his two hands a wand or staff of eight or nine feet in length, with a red ball at the end of it, which he continually slid on the ground ahead of him as he ran. All eyes in the village, save those of the persons engaged in the dance, were centered about him, and he made a desperate rush toward the women, who screamed for protection as they were endeavoring to retreat; and falling in groups upon each other as they were struggling to get out of his reach. In this moment of general terror and alarm there was an instant check! And all for a few moments were as silent as death."

Satan Overcame. "The old master of ceremonies, who had run from his position at the big canoe, had met this monster of fiends, and having thrust the medicine-pipe before him, held him still and immovable under its charm. This check gave the females an opportunity to get out of his reach, and when they were free from their danger, though all hearts beat yet with the instant excitement, their alarm soon cooled down into the most exorbitant laughter and shouts of applause at his sudden defeat, and the awkward and ridiculous posture in which he was stopped and held. The old man was braced stiff by his side, with his eyeballs glaring him in the face, whilst the medicine-pipe held in its mystic chains his Satanic Majesty, annulling all the powers of his magical wand, and also depriving him of the powers of locomotion. Surely no two human beings ever presented a more striking group than these two individuals did for a few moments, with their eyeballs set in direst mutual hatred upon each other; both struggling for the supremacy, relying on the potency of their medicine or mystery. The one held in check, with his body painted black, representing (or rather assuming to be) his sable majesty, O-kee-hee-he (the Evil Spirit), frowning everlasting vengeance on the other, who sternly gazed him back with a look of exultation and contempt, as he held him in check and disarmed under the charm of his sacred mystery-pipe.

"When the superior powers of the medicine-pipe (on which hang all these annual mysteries) had been thus fully tested and

acknowledged, and the women had had requisite time to withdraw from the reach of this fiendish monster, the pipe was very gradually withdrawn from before him, and he seemed delighted to recover the use of his limbs again, and power of changing his position from the exceedingly unpleasant and really ridiculous one he appeared in, and was compelled to maintain, a few minutes before; rendered more superlatively ridiculous and laughable, from the further information, which I am constrained to give, of the plight in which this demon of terror and vulgarity made his *entree* into the midst of the Mandan village, and to the center and nucleus of their first and greatest religious ceremony.

"Then to proceed. I said that this strange personage's body was naked—was painted jet black with charcoal and bear's grease, with a wand in his hands of eight feet in length with a red ball at the end of it, which was rubbing about on the ground in front of him as he ran."

Here follows an explanation of certain acts by the "Evil Spirit" which partake of vulgarity and which will not be quoted, consisting of further efforts to impose upon and break up the general ceremony but which are laughed at by the Indians, and under the spell of the "Medicine-pipe" his Satanic Majesty is rendered impotent. The narrative continues:

"After this he paid his visits to three others of the eight, in succession, receiving as before the deafening shouts of approbation which pealed from every mouth in the multitude, who were all praying to the Great Spirit to send them buffalos to supply them with food during the season, and who attributed the coming of buffalos for this purpose entirely to the strict and critical observance of this ridiculous and disgusting part of the ceremonies.

During the half hour or so that he had been jostled about amongst man and beasts, to the great amusement and satisfaction of the lookers-on, he seemed to have become exceedingly exhausted, and anxiously looking out for some feasible mode of escape.

"In this awkward predicament he became the laughing stock and butt for the women, who, being no longer afraid of him, were gathering in groups around to tease and tantalize him; and in the midst of this dilemma, which soon became a very sad one—one of the women, who stole up behind him with both hands full of

yellow dirt—dashed it into his face and eyes, and all over him, and his body being covered with grease, took instantly a different hue.

“He seemed heart-broken at this signal disgrace, and commenced crying most vehemently, when, at an instant, another caught his wand from his hand, and broke it across her knee. It was snatched by others, who broke it still into bits, and then threw them at him. His power was now gone—his bodily strength was exhausted, and he made a bolt for the prairie—he dashed through the crowd, and made his way through the picquets on the back part of the village, where were placed for the purpose a hundred or more women and girls, who escorted him as he ran on the prairie for half a mile or more, beating him with sticks, and stones, and dirt, and kicks, and cuffs, until he was at length seen escaping from their clutches, and making the best of his retreat over the prairie bluffs, from whence he had first appeared.

At the moment of this signal victory, and when all eyes lost sight of him as he disappeared over the bluffs, the whole village united their voices in shouts of satisfaction. The bull-dance then stopped, and preparations were instantly made for the commencement of the cruelties which were to take place within the lodge, leaving us to draw, from what had just transpired, the following beautiful moral:

“That in the midst of their religious ceremonies, the Evil Spirit (O-kec-hee-de) made his entree for the purpose of doing mischief, and of disturbing their worship—that he was held in check, and defeated by the superior influence and virtue of the medicine pipe, and at last, driven in disgrace out of the village, by the very part of the community whom he came to abuse.”

Ceremonial Tortures. “At the close of this exciting scene, preparations were made, as above stated, by the return of the master of ceremonies and musicians to the medicine-lodge, where also were admitted at the same time a number of men, who were to be instruments of the cruelties to be inflicted; and also the chief and doctors of the tribe, who were to look on, and bear witness to, and decide upon, the comparative degree of fortitude, with which the young men sustained themselves in this most extreme and excruciating ordeal. The chiefs having seated them-

selves on one side of the lodge, dressed out in their robes and splendid head-dresses—the band of music seated and arranged themselves in another part; and the old master of ceremonies having placed himself in front of a small fire in the center of the lodge, with his ‘big pipe’ in his hands, and having commenced smoking to the Great Spirit, with all possible vehemence for the success of these aspirants, presented the subjects for the third picture, which they call ‘pohk-hong,’ the cutting scene. Around the sides of the lodge are seen still reclining, as I have before mentioned, a part of the group, whilst others of them have passed the ordeal of self-tortures, and have been removed out of the lodge; and others still are seen in the very act of submitting to them which were inflicted in the following manner: After having removed the **Sanctissimus Sanctorum**, or little scaffold, of which I before spoke, and having removed also the buffalo and human skulls from the floor, and attached them to the posts of the lodge; and two men having taken their positions near the middle of the lodge, for the purpose of inflicting the tortures—the one with the scalping knife, and the other with a bunch of splints (which I have before mentioned) in his hand; one at a time of the young fellows, already emaciated with fasting, and thirsting, and waking, for nearly four days and nights, advanced from the side of the lodge, and placed himself on his hands and feet, or otherwise, as best suited for the performance of the operation, where he submitted to the cruelties in the following manner: An inch or more of the flesh on each shoulder or each breast was taken up between the thumb and finger by the man who held the knife in his right hand; and the knife which had been ground sharp on both edges, and then hacked and notched with the blade of another, to make it produce as much pain as possible, was forced through the flesh below the fingers, and being withdrawn, was followed with a splint or skewer, from the other, who held a bunch of such in his left hand, and was ready to force them through the wound. There were then two cords lowered down from the top of the lodge (by men who were placed on the lodge outside, for the purpose), which were fastened to these splints or skewers, and they instantly began to haul him up; he was thus raised until his body was suspended from the ground where he rested, until the knife and a splint were passed through the

flesh or integuments in a similar manner on each arm below the shoulder (over the *brachialis externus*), below the elbow (over the *extensor carpi radialis*), on the thighs (over the *vastus externus*), and below the knees (over the *peroneus*).

"In some instances they remained in a reclining position on the ground until this painful operation was finished, which was performed, in all instances, exactly on the same parts of the body and limbs; and which in its progress, occupied some five or six minutes.

"Each one was then instantly raised with the cords, until the weight of his body was suspended by them, and then while the blood was streaming down their limbs, the bystanders hung upon the splints of each man's appropriate shield, bow and quiver, etc., and in many instances, the skull of a buffalo with the horns on it, was attached to each lower arm and each lower leg, for the purpose, probably, of preventing by their great weight, the struggling which might otherwise have taken place to their disadvantage whilst they were hung up.

"When these things were all adjusted, each one was raised higher by the cords, until these weights all swung clear from the ground, leaving his feet in most cases, some six or eight feet above the ground. In this plight they at once became appalling and frightful to look at—the flesh, to support the weight of their bodies, with the additional weights which were attached to them, was raised six or eight inches by the skewers; and their heads sank forward on their breasts, or thrown backwards, in a much more frightful condition, according to the way in which they were hung up.

"The unflinching fortitude, with which every one of them bore this part of the torture surpassed credulity; each one as the knife was passed through his flesh sustained an unchangable countenance; and several of them, seeing me making sketches, beckoned me to look at their faces, which I watched through all this horrid operation, without being able to detect anything but the pleasantest smiles as they looked me in the eye, while I could hear the knife rip through the flesh, and feel enough of it myself, to start involuntary and uncontrollable tears over my cheeks.

"When raised in the condition above described, and completely

suspended by the cords the sanguinary hands, through which he had just passed, turned back to perform a similar operation on another who was ready, and each one in his turn passed into the charge of others, who instantly introduced him to a new and improved stage of their refinements in cruelty.

"Surrounded by imps and demons as they appear, a dozen or more who seemed to be concerting and devising means for his exquisite agony, gather around him, when one of the number advances towards him in a sneering manner, and commences turning him around with a pole which he brings in his hand for the purpose. This is done in a gentle manner at first; but gradually increased, when the brave fellow, whose proud spirit can control its agony no longer, burst out in the most lamentable and heart-rendering cries that the human voice is capable of producing, crying forth to the Great Spirit to support and protect him in this dreadful trial; and continually repeating his confidence in his protection. In this condition he is continued to be turned, faster and faster—and there is no hope of escape from it, nor chance for the slightest relief, until by fainting, his voice falters, and his struggling ceases, and he hangs apparently, a still and lifeless corpse! When he is by turning, gradually brought to this condition, which is generally done within ten or fifteen minutes, there is a close scrutiny passed upon him, among his tormentors, who are checking and holding each other back as long as the least struggling or tremor can be discovered, lest he should be removed before he is (as they term it) 'entirely dead.'

"When brought to this alarming and most frightful condition, and the turning has gradually ceased, as his voice and his strength have given out, leaving him hanging entirely still, and apparently lifeless; when his tongue is distended from his mouth, and his medicine-bag, which he has affectionately and superstitiously clung to with his left hand, has dropped to the ground; the signal is given to the men on top of the lodge, by gently striking the cord with the pole below, when they very gradually and carefully lower him to the ground.

"In this helpless condition he lies, like a loathsome corpse to look at, though in keeping (as they call it) of the Great Spirit, whom he trusts will protect him, and enable him to get up and walk away. As soon as he is lowered to the ground thus, one of

the bystanders advances, and pulls out the two splints, or pins, from the breasts and shoulders, thereby disengaging him from the cords by which he has been hung up; but leaving all the others with their weights, etc., hanging to his flesh.

"In this condition he lies for six or eight minutes, until he gets strength to rise and move himself, for no one is allowed to assist or offer him aid, as he is here enjoying the most valued privilege which a Mandan can boast of, that of trusting his life to the keeping of the Great Spirit, in this time of extreme peril."

Great Spirit Revives Victim. "As soon as he is seen to get strength enough to rise on his hands and feet, and drag his body around the lodge, he crawls with the weights still hanging to his body, to another part of the lodge, where there is another Indian sitting with a hatchet in his hands, and a dried buffalo skull before him; and here in the most earnest and humble manner, by holding up the little finger of his left hand to the Great Spirit, he expresses to him, in a speech of a few words, his willingness to give it as a sacrifice; when he lays it on the dried buffalo skull, where the other chops it off near the hand, with a blow of the hatchet.

"Nearly all the young men whom I saw passing this horrid ordeal, gave in the above manner, the little finger of the left hand; and I saw also several, who immediately afterwards (and apparently with very little concern or emotion), with a similar speech, extended in the same way, the forefinger of the same hand, and that too was struck off; leaving on the left hand only the two middle fingers and the thumb; all of which they deem absolutely essential for holding the bow, the only weapon for the left hand.

"One would think that this mutilation had thus been carried quite far enough; but I have since examined several of the head chiefs and dignitaries of the tribe, who have also given, in this manner, the little finger of the right hand, which is considered by them to be a much greater sacrifice than both of the others; and I have found also a number of their most famous men, who furnish me incontestable proof, by five or six corresponding scars on each arm, and each breast, and each leg, that they had so many times in their lives submitted to this almost incredible operation, which seems to have been optional with them; and the

oftener they volunteer to go through it, the more famous they become in the estimation of their tribe.

"No bandages are applied to the fingers which have been amputated, nor any arteries taken up; nor is any attention whatever, paid to them or the other wounds; but they are left (as they say) 'for the Great Spirit to cure,' who will surely take good care of them. It is a remarkable fact (which I learned from a close inspection of their wounds from day to day) that the bleeding is but very slight and soon ceases, probably from the fact of their extreme exhaustion and debility, caused by want of sustenance and sleep, which checks the natural circulation, and admirably at the same time prepares them to meet the severity of these tortures without the same degree of sensibility and pain, which, under other circumstances, might result in inflammation and death.

"During the whole of the time of this cruel part of these most extraordinary inflictions, the chiefs and dignitaries of the tribe are looking on to decide who are the hardest and "stoutest hearted"—who can hang the longest by his flesh before he faints, and who will be soonest up, after he has been down; that they may know whom to appoint to lead a war party, or to place at the most honorable and desperate post. The four old men are incessantly beating upon the sacks of water and singing the whole time, with their voices strained to the highest key, vaunting forth for the encouragement of the young men, the power and efficacy of the medicine-pipe, which has disarmed the monster O-kec-hee-de (or Evil Spirit), and driven him from the village, and will be sure to protect them and watch over them through their present severe trial.

"As soon as six or eight had passed the ordeal as above described, they were led out of the lodge, with their weights hanging to their flesh, and dragging on the ground, to undergo another, and still more appalling mode of suffering in the center of the village, and in the presence of the whole nation, in the manner as follows:

Last Race. "The signal for the commencement of this part of the cruelties was given by the old master of ceremonies, who again ran out as in the buffalo dance, and leaning against the big canoe, with his medicine-pipe in his hand, began to cry. This was done several times in the afternoon, as often as there were six

or eight who had passed the ordeal just described within the lodge, who were then taken out in the open area in the presence of the whole village, with the buffalo skulls and other weights attached to their flesh and dragging on the ground. There were then in readiness, and prepared for the purpose, about twenty young men, selected of equal height and equal age; with their bodies chiefly naked, with beautiful (and similar) head-dresses of war-eagles' quills, on their heads, and a wreath made of willow boughs held in the hands between them, connecting them in a chain or circle in which they run around the big canoe, with all possible speed, raising their voices in screams and yelps to the highest pitch that was possible, and keeping the curb or big canoe in the center, as their nucleus.

"Then were led forward the young men who were further to suffer, and being placed at equal distances apart, and outside of the ring just described, each one was taken in charge of two athletic young men, fresh and strong, who stepped up to him, one on each side, and by wrapping a broad leather strap around his wrists, without tying it, grasped it firm underneath the hand, and stood prepared for what they call Eh-ke-nah-ka-nah-pick (the last race). This the spectator looking on would suppose was most correctly named, for he would think it was the last race he could possibly run in this world.

"In this condition they stand, pale and ghastly, from abstinence and loss of blood, until all are prepared, and the word is given, then all start and run around, outside of the other ring; and each poor fellow with his weights dragging on the ground, and his furious conductors by his side, who hurry him forward by the wrists, struggles in the desperate emulation to run longer without 'dying' (as they call it) than his comrades, who are fainting around him and sinking down, like himself, where their bodies are dragged with all possible speed, and often with their faces in the dirt. In the commencement of this dance or race they all start at a moderate pace, and their speed being gradually increased, the pain becomes so excruciating that their languid and exhausted frames give out, and they are dragged by their wrists, until they are disengaged from the weights that were attached to their flesh, and this must be done by such violent force as to tear the flesh out with the splint, which (as they say) can never

be pulled out end-ways, without greatly offending the Great Spirit and defeating the object for which they have thus far suffered. The splints or skewers which are put through the breast and shoulders, take up a part of the pectoral or trapezius muscle, which is necessary for the support of the great weight of their bodies, and which, as I have before mentioned, are withdrawn as soon as he is lowered down—but all the others, on the legs and arms, seem to be very ingeniously placed through the flesh and integuments without taking up the muscle, and even these to be broken out, require so strong and so violent a force that most of the poor fellows fainted under the operation, and when they were freed from the last of the buffalo skulls and other weights, (which was often done by some of the bystanders throwing the weight of their bodies on them as they were dragging on the ground) they were in every instance dropped by the persons who dragged them, and their bodies were left, appearing like nothing but a mangled and loathsome corpse. At this strange and frightful juncture, the two men who had dragged them, fled through the crowd and away upon the prairie, as if they were guilty of some enormous crime, and were fleeing from summary vengeance.

“Each poor fellow having thus patiently and manfully endured the privations and tortures devised for him, and (in this last struggle with the most appalling effort) tore himself loose from them and his tormentors, he lies the second time, in the ‘keeping (as he terms it) of the Great Spirit,’ to whom he issues his repeated prayers, and entrusts his life; and in whom he reposes the most implicit confidence for his preservation and recovery. As an evidence of this, and of the high value which these youths set upon this privilege, there is no person, not a relation or a chief of the tribe, who is allowed, or who would dare, to step forward to offer an aiding hand, even to save his life; for not only the rigid customs of the nation, and the pride of the individual who has intrusted his life to the keeping of the Great Spirit, would sternly reject such a tender; but their superstitions, which is the strongest of all arguments in an Indian community, would alone, hold all the tribe in fear and dread of interfering, when they consider they have so good a reason to believe that

the Great Spirit has undertaken the special care and protection of his devoted worshippers.

"In this 'last race,' which was the struggle which finally closed their sufferings, each one was dragged until he fainted, and was thus left, looking more like the dead than the living; and thus each one laid, until, by the aid of the Great Spirit, he was in a few minutes seen gradually rising, and at last reeling and staggering, like a drunken man, through the crowd (which made way for him) to his wigwam, where his friends and relatives stood ready to take him in hand and restore him.

"In this frightful scene, as in the buffalo dance, the whole nation was assembled as spectators, and all raised the most piercing and violent yells and screams they could possibly produce, to drown the cries of the suffering ones, that no heart could even be touched with sympathy for them. I have mentioned before, that six or eight of the young men were brought from the medicine-lodge at a time, and when they were thus passed through this shocking ordeal, the medicine-man and the chiefs returned to the interior, where as many more were soon prepared, and underwent a similar treatment, and after that another batch, and another, and so on, until the whole number, some forty-five or fifty had run in this sickening circle, and by leaving their weights, had opened the flesh for honorable scars. I said all, but there was one poor fellow though (and I shudder to tell it), who was dragged around and around the circle, with the skull of an elk hanging to the flesh on one of his legs—several had jumped upon it, but to no effect, for the splint was under the sinew, which could not be broken. The dragging became every instant more and more furious, and the apprehensions for the poor fellow's life, apparent by the piteous howl which was set up for him by the multitude around; and at last the medicine-man ran, with his medicine-pipe in his hand, and held them in check, when the body was dropped, and left upon the ground, with the skull yet hanging to it. The boy, who was an extremely interesting and fine looking youth, soon recovered his senses and his strength, looking deliberately at his torn and bleeding limbs; and also with the most pleasant smile of defiance, upon the misfortune which had now fallen to his peculiar lot, crawled through the crowd (instead of walking, which they are

never again at liberty to do until the flesh is torn out, and the article is left) to the prairie, and over which, for the distance of half a mile, to a sequestered spot, without any attendant, where he lay three days and three nights, yet longer, without food, and praying to the Great Spirit, until suppuration took place in the wound, and by the decaying of the flesh the weight was dropped, and the splint also, which he dare not extricate in another way. At the end of this, he crawled back to the village on his hands and knees, being too much emaciated to walk, and begged for something to eat, which was at once given him, and he was soon restored to health.

"These extreme and difficult cases often occur, and I learn that in such instances the youth has it at his option to get rid of the weight that is thus left upon him, in such way as he may choose, and some of these modes are far more extraordinary than the one which I have just named. Several of the traders, who have been for a number of years in the habit of seeing this part of the ceremony, have told me that two years since, when they were looking on, there was one whose flesh on the arms was so strong that the weights could not be left, and he dragged them with his body to the river by the side of the village, where he set a stake fast in the ground on the top of the bank, and fastening cords to it, he let himself half way down a perpendicular wall of rock, of twenty-five or thirty feet, where the weight of his body was suspended by the two cords attached to the flesh of his arms. In this awful condition he hung for several days, equidistant from the top of the rock and the deep water below, into which he at last dropped and saved himself by swimming ashore."

Superior Stoicism. "I need record no more of these shocking and disgusting instances, of which I have already given enough to convince the world of the correctness of the established fact of the Indian's superior stoicism and power of endurance, although some recent writers have, from motives of envy, from ignorance, or something else, taken great pains to cut the poor Indian short in everything, and in this, even as if it were a virtue.

"I am ready to accord to them in this particular, the palm; the credit of out-doing anything and everybody, and of enduring more

than civilized man ever aspired to or ever thought of. My heart has sickened also with disgust for so abominable and ignorant a custom, and still I stand ready with all my heart, to excuse and forgive them for adhering so strictly to an ancient celebration, founded in superstitions and mysteries, of which they knew not the origin, and constituting a material part and feature in the code and forms of their religion.

"Reader, I will return with you a moment to the medicine-lodge, which is just to be closed, and then we will indulge in some general reflections upon what has passed, and in what, and for what purposes this strange batch of mysteries has been instituted and perpetuated.

"After these young men, who had for the last four days occupied the medicine-lodge, had been operated on, in the manner above described, and taken out of it, the old medicine-man, master of ceremonies, returned, (still crying to the Great Spirit) sole tenant of that sacred place, and brought out the 'edged tools,' which I have before said had been collected at the door of every man's wigwam, to be given as a sacrifice to the water, and leaving the lodge securely fastened, he approached the bank of the river, when all the medicine-men attended him, and all the nation were spectators; and in their presence he threw them from a high bank into very deep water, from which they cannot be recovered, and where they are, correctly speaking, made a sacrifice to the water. This part of the affair took place just exactly at sun-down, and closed the scene, being the end or the finale of the Mandan Religious Ceremony."

Catlin appends this certificate to his text relative to the Mandan ceremonies:

Catlin's Certificate. "The reader will forgive me for here inserting the certificate which I have just received from Mr. Kipp, of the city of New York, and two others, who were with me; which I offer for the satisfaction of the world, who read the above account.

"We hereby certify, that we witnessed, in company with Mr. Catlin, in the Mandan village, the ceremonies represented in the four paintings, and described in his notes, to which this certificate refers; and that he has therein faithfully represented those scenes

as we saw them transacted, without any addition or exaggeration.

'J. KIPP, Agent Amer. Fur Company.
L. CRAWFORD, Clerk.
ABRAHAM BOGARD.'

" 'Mandan village, July 20, 1833.' "

Mandan Flood Traditions. "The strange country that I am in—its excitements—its accidents and wild incidents which startle me at almost every moment, prevent me from any very elaborate disquisition upon the above remarkable events at present; and even had I all the time and leisure of a country gentleman, and all the additional information which I am daily procuring and daily expect to procure hereafter in explanation of these unaccountable mysteries, yet do I fear that there would be that inexplicable difficulty that hangs over most of the customs and traditions of these simple people, who have no history to save facts and systems from falling into the most absurd and disjointed fable and ignorant fiction.

"What few plausible inferences I have as yet been able to draw from the above strange and peculiar transactions I will set forth, but with some diffidence, hoping and trusting that by further intimacy and familiarity with these people I may yet arrive at more satisfactory and important results.

"That these people should have a tradition of the flood is by no means surprising; as I have learned from every tribe I have visited, that they all have some high mountain in their vicinity, where they insist upon it the big canoe landed; but that these people should hold an annual celebration of the event, and the season of that decided by such circumstances as the full leaf of the willow, and the medicine-lodge opened by such a man as Nu-mohk-muck-a-nah (who appears to be a white man), and making his appearance from the high mountains in the west; and some other circumstances, is surely a very remarkable thing, and requires some extraordinary attention.

"This Nu-mohk-muck-a-nah (first or only man) is undoubtedly some mystery or medicine-man of the tribe, who has gone out on the prairie on the evening previous, and having dressed and painted himself for the occasion, comes into the village in the morning, endeavoring to keep up the semblance of reality; for

their tradition says, that at a very ancient period such a man did actually come from the west—that his body was of a white color. as this man's body is represented—that he wore a robe of four white wolf skins—his head-dress was made of two raven's skins—and in his left hand was a hugh pipe. He said 'he was at one time the only man—he told them of the destruction of everything on the earth's surface by water—that he stopped in his big canoe on a high mountain in the west, where he landed and was saved.' ”

Annual Sacrifices. “That the Mandans, and all other people were bound to make yearly sacrifices of some edged-tools to the water, for of such things the big canoe was made. Then he instructed the Mandans how to build their medicine-lodge, and taught them also the forms of these annual ceremonies; and told them that as long as they made these sacrifices, and performed their rites to the full letter, they might be assured of the fact, that they would be the favorite people of the Almighty, and would always have enough to eat and drink; and that so soon as they should depart in one tittle from these forms, they might be assured, that their race would decrease, and finally run out; and that they might date their nation's calamity to that omission or neglect.’

“These people, have no doubt, been long living under the dread of such an injunction, and in the fear of departing from it; and while they are living in total ignorance of its origin, the world must remain equally ignorant of much of its meaning, as they needs must be of all Indian customs resting on ancient traditions, which soon run into fables, having lost all their system by which they might have been construed.

“This strange and unaccountable custom is undoubtedly peculiar to the Mandans; although, amongst the Minatarees, and some others of the neighboring tribes, they have seasons of abstinence and self-torture, somewhat similar, but bearing no other resemblance to this than a mere feeble effort or form of imitation.”

The Willow Branch. “It would seem from their traditions of the willow branch, and the dove, that these people must have had some proximity to some parts of the civilized world; or that missionaries or others have been formerly among them, inculcating

the Christian religion and the Mosaic account of the flood; which is in this and some other respects, decidedly different from the theory which most natural people have distinctly established of that event.

“There are other strong and almost decisive proofs in my opinion in support of the assertion, which are to be drawn from the diversity of colour in their hair and complexions, as I have before described, as well as from their traditions just related, of the ‘first and only man,’ whose body was white, and who came from the west, telling them of the destruction of the earth by water, and instructing them in the forms of these mysteries; and, in addition to the above, I will add the two following very curious stories, which I had from several of their old and dignified chiefs, and which are, no doubt, standing and credited traditions of the tribe.”

Vine Legend. “The Mandans (people of the pheasants) were the first people created in the world, and they originally lived inside of the earth; they raised many vines, and one of them had grown up through a hole in the earth overhead, and one of their young men climbed up it until he came out on top of the ground, on the bank of the river, where the Mandan village stands. He looked around, and admired the beautiful country and prairies about him—saw many buffaloes—killed one with his bow and arrows, and found that its meat was good to eat. He returned and related what he had seen, when a number of others went up the vine with him, and witnesseth the same things. Amongst those who went up, were two very pretty young women, who were favourites with the chiefs, because they were virgins, and amongst those who were trying to get up, was a very large and fat woman, who was ordered by the chiefs not to go up, but whose curiosity led her to try it as soon as she got a secret opportunity, when there was no one present. When she got part of the way up, the vine broke under the great weight of her body and let her down. She was very much hurt by the fall, but did not die. The Mandans were very sorry about this, and she was disgraced for being the cause of a very great calamity, which she had brought upon them, and which could never be averted, for no more could ever ascend, nor could those descend who had got up; but they build the Mandan village, where it formerly stood, a great ways

below on the river; and the remainder of the people live underground to this day.'

"The above tradition is told with great gravity by their chiefs and doctors or mystery-men; and the latter profess to hear their friends talk through the earth at certain times and places, and even consult them for their opinions and advice on many important occasions.

"The next tradition runs thus:

The Evil Spirit. "At a very ancient period, O-kec-hee-de (the Evil Spirit, the black fellow mentioned in the religious ceremonies) came to the Mandan village with Nu-mohk-muck-a-nah (the first or only man) from the west, and sat down by a woman who had but one eye and was hoeing corn. Her daughter, who was very pretty, came up to her and the evil spirit desired her to go and bring some water, but wished before she started, she would come to him and eat some buffalo meat. He told her to take a piece out of his side, which she did, and ate it, which proved to be buffalo fat. She then went for the water, which she brought, and met them in the village where they had walked, and they both drank of it—nothing more was done.

"The friends of the girl soon after endeavored to disgrace her, by telling her that she was *enciente*, which she did not deny. She declared her innocence at the same time, and boldly defied any man in the village to come forward and accuse her. This raised a great excitement in the village, and as no one could stand forth to accuse her, she was looked upon as great medicine.

"She soon after went off secretly to the upper Mandan village, where the child was born.

"Great search was made for her before she was found; as it was expected that the child would also be great medicine or mystery, and of great importance to the existence and welfare of the tribe. They were induced to this belief from the very strange manner of its conception and birth, and were soon confirmed in it from the wonderful things which it did at an early age. They say that amongst other miracles which he performed, when the Mandans were like to starve, he gave them four buffalo bulls, which filled the whole village, leaving as much meat as there was before they had eaten, saying that these four bulls would supply them forever. Nu-mohk-muck-a-nah (the first or only man) was

bent on the destruction of the child, and after making many fruitless searches for it, found it hidden in a dark place, and put it to death by throwing it into the river.

“‘When O-kee-hee-de (the Evil Spirit) heard of the death of this child, he sought for Nu-mohk-muck-a-nah with intent to kill him. He traced him for a long distance, and at length found him at Heart River, about seventy miles below the village, with the big medicine pipe in his hand, the charm or mystery of which protects him from all his enemies. They soon agreed, however, to become friends, smoked the big pipe together and returned to the Mandan village.

“‘The Evil Spirit was satisfied, and Nu-mohk-muck-a-nah told the Mandans never to pass the Heart River to live, for it was the center of the world, and to live beyond it would be destruction to them, and he named it Nat-com-pa-sa-hah (heart or center of the world.)’

“Such are a few of the principal traditions of these people, which I have thought proper to give in this place, and I have given them in their own way, with all the imperfections and absurd inconsistencies which should be expected to characterize the history of all ignorant and superstitious people who live in a state of simple and untaught nature, with no other means of perpetuating historical events, than by oral traditions.

“I advance these vague stories then, as I have done, and shall do in other instances, not in support of any theory, but merely as I have heard them related by the Indians; and preserved them, as I have everything else that I could meet in the Indian habits and character, for the information of the world, who may get more time to theorize than I have at present; and who may consider better than I can, how far such traditions should be taken as evidence of the facts, that these people have for a long period preserved and perpetuated an imperfect knowledge of the deluge—of the appearance and death of a Saviour—and of the transgressions of mother Eve.”

Earth a Tortoise. “I am not yet able to learn from these people whether they have any distinct theory of the creation; as they seem to date nothing further back than their own existence as a people; saying (as I have before mentioned) that they were the first people created; involving the glaring absurdities that

they were the only people on earth before the flood, and the only one saved was a white man; or that they were created inside of the earth as their tradition says; and that they did not make their appearance on its outer surface until after the deluge. When an Indian story is told, it is like all other gifts, 'to be taken for what it is worth,' and for any seeming inconsistency in their traditions there is no remedy; for as far as I have tried to reconcile them by reasoning with, or questioning them, I have been entirely defeated; and more than that have generally incurred their distrust and ill-will. One of the Mandan doctors told me very gravely a few days since, that the earth was a large tortoise, that it carried the dirt on its back; that a tribe of people, who are now dead, and whose faces were white, used to dig down very deep in this ground to catch badgers; and that one day they stuck a knife through the tortoise shell, and it sank down so that the water ran over its back, and drowned all but one man. And on the next day, while I was painting his portrait, he told me there were four tortoises—one in the north, one in the east, one in the south, and one in the west; that each one of these rained ten days, and the water covered over the earth.

"These ignorant and conflicting accounts, and both from the same man, give as good a demonstration, perhaps, of what I have above mentioned, as to the inefficiency of Indian traditions as anything I could at present mention. They might, perhaps, have been in this instance, however, the creeds of different sects, or of different priests amongst them, who often advanced diametrically opposite theories and traditions relative to history and mythology.

"And however ignorant and ridiculous they may seem, they are yet worthy of a little further consideration, as relating to a number of curious circumstances connected with the unaccountable religious ceremonies which I have just described."

Four Cardinal Points, Etc. "The Mandan chiefs and doctors, in all their feasts, where the pipe is lit and about to be passed around, deliberately propitiate the good will and favor of the Great Spirit, by extending the stem of the pipe upwards before they smoke it themselves; and also as deliberately and as strictly offer the stem to the four cardinal points in succession, and then drawing a whiff through it, passing it around amongst the group.

"The annual religious ceremony invariably lasts four days, and the other following circumstances attending these strange forms, and seeming to have some allusion to the four cardinal points, or the 'four tortoises,' seem to me to be worthy of further notice. Four men are selected by Nu-mohk-muck-a-nah (as I have before said) to cleanse out and prepare the medicine lodge for the occasion—one he calls from the north part of the village, one from the east, one from the south and one from the west. The four sacks of water, in form of large tortoises, resting on the floor of the lodge and before described, would seem to be typical of the same thing; and also the four buffalo, and the four human skulls resting on the floor of the same lodge—the four couples of dancers in the bull-dance, as before described; and also the four intervening dancers in the same dance, and also described.

"The bull-dance in front of the medicine-lodge, repeated on the four days, is danced four times on the first day, eight times on the second, twelve times on the third, and sixteen times on the fourth (adding four dances on each of the four days) which added together makes forty, the exact number of days that it rained upon the earth, according to the Mosaic account, to produce the deluge. There are four sacrifices of black and blue cloths erected over the door of the medicine-lodge, the visits of O-kee-hee-de (or Evil Spirit) were paid to four of the buffaloes in the buffalo dance, as above described; and in every instance, the young men who underwent the tortures before explained, had four splints or skewers run through the flesh on their legs, four through the arms and four through the body.

"Such is a brief account of these strange scenes which I have just been witnessing, and such my brief history of the Mandans. I might write much more of them, giving yet a volume on their stories and traditions; but it would be a volume of fables, and scarce worth recording. A nation of Indians in their primitive condition, where there are no historians, have but a temporary historical existence, for the reason above advanced, and their history, what can be certainly learned of it, may be written in a very small compass.

"I have dwelt longer on the history and customs of these people than I have or shall on any other tribe, in all probability; and that

from the fact that I have found them a very peculiar people, as will be seen by my notes."

Different Origin. "From these very numerous and striking peculiarities in their personal appearance, their customs, traditions and language, I have been led conclusively to believe that they are a people of decidedly a different origin from that of any other tribe in these regions.

"From these reasons, as well as from the fact that they are a small and feeble tribe, against whom the powerful tribe of Sioux are waging a deadly war with the prospect of their extermination, and who with their limited numbers, are not likely to hold out long in their struggle for existence, I have taken more pains to portray their whole character, than my limited means will allow me to bestow upon other tribes."

Not Inhuman. "From the ignorant and barbarous and disgusting customs just recited, the world would naturally infer that these people must be the most cruel and inhuman beings in the world, yet, such is not the case, and it becomes my duty to say it, a better, more honest, hospitable and kind people, as a community, are not to be found in the world. No set of men that ever I associated with had better hearts than the Mandans, and none are quicker to embrace and welcome the white man than they are. None will press him closer to his bosom, that the pulsations of his heart may be felt, than a Mandan; and no man in any country will keep his word and guard his honour more closely."

What Catlin declares below as to the susceptibility of the Mandans to civilizing influences which would eradicate their savage religious ceremonials, etc., has been conclusively proven through contact of the missionaries with them and governmental oversight and teaching inculcated among them; since those customs long since disappeared, save as to some few of the less objectionable practices which, in a modified form, may yet remain.

Can be Civilized. "The shocking and disgusting custom that I have just described, sickens the heart and even the stomach of a traveler in the country, and he weeps for their ignorance, he pities them with all his heart for their blindness and laments that the light of civilization, of agriculture and religion cannot be extended to them, and that their hearts which are good enough,

could not be turned to embrace something more rational and conducive to their true happiness.

"Many would doubtless ask, whether such a barbarous custom could be eradicated from these people, and whether their thoughts and tastes, being turned to agriculture and religion, could be made to abandon the dark and random channel in which they are drudging, and made to flow in the light and life of civilization?

"To this query, I answer yes. Although this is a custom of long standing, being a part of their religion, and probably valued as one of their dearest rights; and notwithstanding the difficulty of making inroads upon the religion of a people in whose country there is no severance of opinions, and consequently no division into different sects, with different creeds to shake their faith; I still believe, and I know, that by judicious and persevering effort, this abominable custom, and others, might be extinguished, and the beautiful green fields about the Mandan village might be turned into productive gardens, and the waving green bluffs that are spread in the surrounding distance, might be spotted with lowing kine, instead of the sneaking wolves and the hobbled war horses that are now stalking about them.

"All ignorant and superstitious people, it is a well known fact, are the most fixed and stubborn in their religious opinions, and perhaps the most difficult to divert from their established belief, from the very fact that they are the most difficult to reason with. Here is an ignorant race of human beings, who have from time immemorial, been in the habit of worshipping in their own way, and of enjoying their religious opinions without ever having heard any one to question their correctness; and in those opinions they are quiet and satisfied, and it requires a patient, gradual and untiring effort to convince such a people that they are wrong, and to work the desired change in their belief, and consequently in their actions.

"It is decidedly my opinion, however, that such a thing can be done, and I do not believe there is a race of wild people on earth where the experiment could be more successfully made than amongst the kind and hospitable Mandans, nor any place where the missionary labors of pious and industrious men would be more

sure to succeed, or more certain to be rewarded in the world to come.

"I deem such a trial of patience and perseverance with these people of great importance, and well worth the experiment. One which I shall hope soon to see accomplished, and which, if properly conducted, I am sure will result in success. Severed as they are from the contaminating and counteracting vices which oppose and thwart most of the best efforts of the missionaries along the frontier, and free from the almost fatal prejudices which they have there to contend with, they present a better field for the labors of such benevolent teachers than they have yet worked in, and a far better chance than they have yet had that the poor Indian is not a brute, that he is a human and humane being, that he is capable of improvement, and that his mind is a beautiful blank on which anything can be written if the proper means be taken.

"The Mandans being but a small tribe, of two thousand only, and living in two villages, in sight of each other, and occupying these permanently, without roaming about like other neighboring tribes, offer undoubtedly, the best opportunity for such an experiment of any tribe in the country. The land about their villages is of the best quality for plowing and grazing, and the water just such as would be desired. Their villages are fortified with piquets or stockades, which protect them from the assaults of their enemies at home, and the introduction of agriculture (which would supply them with the necessities and luxuries of life, without the necessity of continually exposing their lives to their more numerous enemies on the plains when they are seeking in the chase the means of their subsistence) would save them from the continual wastes of life, to which, in their wars and the chase they are continually exposed, and which are calculated soon to result in their extinction.

"I deem it not folly nor idle to say that these people can be saved, nor officious to suggest to some of the very many excellent and pious men, who are almost throwing away the best energies of their lives along the debased frontier, that if they would introduce the ploughshare and their prayers amongst these people, who are so far separated from the taints and contaminating vices of the frontier, they would soon see their most ardent desires accomplished and be able to solve to the world the perplexing

enigma, by presenting a nation of savages, civilized and christianized (and consequently saved), in the heart of the American wilderness." (p. 184.)

We will next present portions of the accounts given by Maximilian, Prince of Wied, who visited and remained with the Mandans at their villages below Knife river in 1833. His journey up the Missouri river in general was made in the interest of science, and his keen insight into every subject of his observations and study is evidenced upon every page of his elaborate and exhaustive journal. His narratives were originally published in the German language; and in 1843 were translated into English by H. Evans Lloyd, and were thus published under the title "Travels in the Interior of North America by Maximilian, Prince of Wied," in 1843 by Ackermann & Company, London. Said English edition has now become very rare. It is to be greatly regretted that the plates from which the admirable illustrations from the drawings of Bodner, who accompanied Maximilian on his said journey, were published, are not at the disposal of the society under whose auspices this paper is written; as the subject of the Mandan Indians as treated by that renowned explorer in said journal is greatly enlivened by the numerous illustrations published therewith. Those illustrations are reprinted in connection with a reprint of Maximilian's journal by The Arthur H. Clark Company in 1906, as edited by Reuben Gold Thwaites, LL. D., in the work whose title is given below. Some of the valuable notes, by Dr. Thwaites, to Maximilian's narrative on the Mandans, are herein, in the appendix, extracted or reprinted by permission of the publishers, The Arthur H. Clark Company, Cleveland, Ohio, from their publication entitled "Early Western Travels, 1748-1846," for which permission and courtesy this society wishes to acknowledge its deep obligations.

Maximilian arrived at the Mandan villages on November 8, 1833. Some of his extended observations will now be given:

Maximilian on the Mandans. "The Mandans (called by the Canadians, *les Mandals*),¹¹ by which name these Indians are generally known, though it was originally given them by the Sioux, were formerly a numerous people, who, according to the narrative of an aged man, lately deceased, inhabited thirteen, and perhaps more villages. They called themselves *Numangkake* (i. e.

man), and if they wish to particularize their descent, they add the name of the village whence they came originally. Some for instance, call themselves Sipuske-Numangkake, the men of the pheasant or prairie hens from the village Sipuska-Mihte, pheasant village; others, Mato-Numangkake, the man of the bear, from the village Mato-Mihte, bear village, etc., etc. Another general name of this people is Mahna-Narra, the sulky, because they separated from the rest of their nation, and went higher up the Missouri.

Their Origin. "The early history of the Mandans is involved in obscurity; their own traditions and legends will be discussed in the sequel, when treating on their religious ideas. They affirm that they descended originally from the more eastern nations, near the sea coast.¹² Though the above named villages did not all exist at this time, these Indians still call themselves by their several names. They formerly dwelt near the Heart river; when Charbonneau arrived here at the end of the last century, the two Mandan villages, which are still standing, were about six or eight miles further down the Missouri. The smallpox and the assaults of their enemies have so reduced these people, that the whole number now reside in two villages, in the vicinity of Fort Clarke. These two villages are Mih-Tutta-Hang-Kush (the southern village), about 300 paces above Fort Clarke, and on the same side of the river, and Ruhptare,¹³ about three miles higher up, likewise on the same bank. The first had at the time of our visit, sixty-five huts, and contained about 150 warriors; the other, thirty-eight huts, and eighty-three warriors. According to this, the tribe had not more than 230 or 240 warriors; and on the whole, scarcely 900 or 1,000 souls."****

Characteristics—Complexion. "The Mandans are a vigorous, well-made race of people, rather above the middling stature, and very few of the men could be called short. The tallest man now living was Mahchsi-Karehde (the flying war-eagle), who was five feet ten inches two lines, Paris measure (above six feet English). In the general, however, they are not so tall as the Minnetarees. Many of them are robust, broad-shouldered, and muscular, while others are slender and small limbed. Their physiognomy, in general, the same as that of most of the Missouri Indians, but their noses are not so long and arched as those of the Sioux, nor have

they such high cheek bones. The nose of the Mandans and Minnetarees is not broad—sometimes aquiline, or slightly curved, and often quite straight. Their eyes are, in general, long and narrow, of a dark brown color; the inner angle is often rather lower in childhood, but it is rarely so in mature age. The mouth is broad, large, rather prominent, and the lower jaw broad and angular. No great difference occurs in the form of the skull; in general I did not find the facial angle smaller than in Europeans, yet there are some exceptions. Their hair is long, thick, lank, and black, but seldom as jet and glossy as that of the Brazilians; that of the children is often only dark brown, especially at the tips; and Bradbury speaks of brown hair among the Mandans. There are whole families among them, as well as among the Blackfeet, whose hair is grey, or black mixed with white, so that the whole head appears grey. The families of Sih-Chida and Mato-Chiha are instances of this peculiarity. The latter chief was particularly remarkable in this respect; his hair grew in distinct locks of brown, black, silver grey, but mostly white, and his eyebrows perfectly white, which had a strange effect in a tall otherwise handsome man, between twenty and thirty years of age. They encourage the growth of their hair, and often lengthen it by artificial means. Their teeth like those of all the Missouri Indians, are particularly fine, strong, firm, even, and white as ivory. It is very seldom that you see a defect or a tooth wanting even in old people, though in the latter, they are often worn very short, which is chiefly to be attributed to their chewing hard, dry meat. The women are pretty, robust and sometimes tall, but, for the most part, they are short and broad shouldered. They are but few who can be called handsome as Indians, but there are many tolerable and some pretty faces among them. It is usually said of the Mandan women that they in some respects, have a natural conformation, such as Le Vaillant and Peron ascribe to the Hot-tentot women; but it seems to be owing in the Mandan women, less to nature than to artificial means. The children have frequently slender limbs, and very prominent bellies. Deformed persons are very rare among the Mandans. I, however, saw a very little dwarf with a long narrow face, and one man who squinted. Persons who had lost the sight of one eye, or with a cataract, are by no means uncommon. There are several deaf and

dumb, among whom two brothers and a sister were all born with this defect. Some goiters, or rather, thick necks among the women, are doubtless caused by too great exertions in carrying burdens on their backs. Instances where joints of the fingers are wanting are frequent, but these come under the head of voluntary mutilations."

Color of Skin. "The color of these Indians is a fine brown, sometimes a reddish, more or less dark, which might, sometimes, come under the denomination of copper color. In some it is more of a greyish-brown, in others yellowish; after a thorough ablution the skin of some of them appears almost white, and even some color in their cheeks. They do not disfigure their bodies, only they make some apertures in the outer rim of the ear, in which they hang strings of beads, brass or iron rings of different sizes, or shells, the last of which they obtain from other Indian tribes. If they are questioned respecting these shells, they answer that they were brought from the sea."

Ornaments. "These Indians are vain, and in this respect childish, like all savage nations. They are very fond of ornament, and the young men have always a little looking-glass suspended from their wrists. The traders sell these looking-glasses in a pasteboard case, which, however, is immediately changed for a solid wooden frame, and attached to the wrist by a red ribbon or a leather strap. The looking-glasses are framed in various ways; the rude frame is often painted red, or with stripes of different colors, with footsteps of bears or buffalos carved upon it. Nay, sometimes these frames are of a considerable size, divided at one end like a boot-jack, and ornamented with brass nails, ribbons, pieces of skin and feathers. Some had very ingeniously fastened this important appendage to their fan made of an eagle's wing. The Indian dandy is constantly consulting his mirror, and, if he has been traveling, especially in the high winds so prevalent here, he immediately has recourse to his looking-glass, and his disordered dress is most carefully arranged.

"It is remarkable that the men are far more vain than the women, and the latter are obliged to be greatly inferior to the lords of the creation in their attire and adornments. The costume of the Mandans is rather simple; by far the greatest attention is paid to the head-dress. Their hair is parted transversely

across the middle of the head, the front hair combed smoothly down, and generally divided into three flat bands, two of which hang down on the temples and are generally plaited. To these plaits they attach the ornaments already mentioned, which consisted of two strips of leather or cloth closely embroidered with white or azure glass beads, and intertwined with brass wire, as represented in the portrait of Pehriska-Ruhpa. If the ground of this ornament is red or blue, it is studded with white beads, and if the ground is white the beads are blue. They put this ornament in their hair and pull it over the temples; a long string is fastened to the underpart, which reaches to the waist, and is adorned with alternate rows of blue beads and white dentalium shells. Between these two singular decorated plaits there is, in the center of the forehead, a smooth flat lock, reaching to the nose, which is not ornamented, but only tied with a red ribbon. The back hair falls smoothly from the crown of the head to the waist, and is divided into many tails, an inch and a half or two inches broad, which are smeared with brownish or red clay. When the hair is not naturally long enough it is frequently lengthened with other human hair, often that of enemies whom they have killed, which is fastened on with rosin. At the back of the head they sometimes wear a long stiff ornament in the shape of a ruler, three or four fingers broad, made of small sticks intertwined with wire, which is fastened to the hair, and reaches down to the shoulders. It is covered with porcupine quills, dyed of various colors, in very neat patterns. At the upper end of this ornament, an eagle's feather is affixed horizontally, the quill end of which is covered with red cloth, and the tip is ornamented with a bunch of horse hair dyed yellow. The lower white half of the feather is frequently dyed red with vermillion, and the quill covered with dyed porcupine quills. When the Indians are not in their best dresses, when they are traveling or going to the chase, they fasten their long hair in a thick bunch. When, however, they are full dressed, they put a variety of feathers in their hair, frequently a semi-circle of feathers of birds of prey, like radii, or sunbeams, or a bunch of tail feathers of the raven placed in a similar manner. Sometimes they have a thick tuft of owl's feathers, or small rosettes made of broad raven's feathers, cut short, in the center of which is the tail of a bird of prey spread out like a fan. These feather orna-

ments are frequently determined according to the several bands or unions, of which I shall speak in the sequel. They likewise wear the large horned feather cap; this is a cap consisting of strips of white ermine, with pieces of red cloth hanging down behind as far as the calves of the legs, to which is attached an upright row of black and white eagle's feathers, beginning at the head and reaching to the whole length. Only distinguished warriors, who have performed many exploits, may wear this head-dress.

"If they give away one or more of these head-dresses, which they estimate very highly, they are immediately considered men of great importance; the regular price of such a cap is a good horse; for a single eagle's feather is always valued at one or two dollars. On their buffalo robes they often represent this feather cap, under the image of a sun. Very celebrated and eminent warriors, when most highly decorated, wear in their hair various pieces of wood, as signals of their wounds and heroic deeds. Thus Mato-Tope had fastened transversely in his hair a wooden knife, painted red, and about the length of a hand, because he had killed a Cheyenne chief with his knife; then six wooden sticks, painted red, blue, and yellow, with a brass nail at one end, indicating so many musket wounds which he had received. For an arrow wound he fastened in his hair the wing feather of a wild turkey; at the back of his head he wore a large bunch of owl's feathers, dyed yellow with red tips, as the badge of the Meniss-Ochata (the dog band). The half of his face was painted red, and the other yellow; his body was painted reddish-brown, with narrow stripes, which were produced by taking off the color with the tip of the finger wetted. On his arms, from the shoulder downwards, he had seventeen yellow stripes, which indicated his war-like deeds, and on his breast the figure of a hand, of a yellow color, as a sign that he had captured some prisoners. A warrior so adorned takes more time for his toilet than the most elegant Parisian belle. The color with which they paint their bodies is mixed with grease. When in mourning they color the face and hands white. The women and children paint only their faces red, leaving the hair its natural color. The Mandans and Minnetarees, and all the Indians of the upper Missouri, often wear the handsome necklace made of the claws of the grizzly bear. These claws are very large

in the spring, frequently three inches long, and the points are tinged of a white color, which is much esteemed; only the claws of the fore feet are used for necklaces, which are fastened to a strip of otter skin, lined with red cloth, and embroidered with glass beads, which hangs down the back like a long tail. Such a necklace is seldom to be had for less than twelve dollars; and very often the owners of them will not part with them on any terms. The Mandans adorn themselves with many other kinds of necklaces such as strings of glass beads, scented roots, or fungi, elks' tooth, for a 100 or 150 of which they will, in exchange give a horse, or something equivalent. These Indians generally wear no covering on the upper part of the body; the leather shirt of the Assiniboinés, Sioux, Crows, Blackfeet, and other nations that live more to the north and northwest, are seldom used among them; yet a few individuals have obtained them from those Indians, either as presents, or by barter. Even in the midst of winter, the Mandans wear nothing on the upper part of the body, under their buffalo robes. They paint their bodies of a reddish-brown color, on some occasions with white clay; and frequently draw red or black figures on their arms. The face is, for the most part, painted all over with vermillion, or yellow, in which latter case the circumference of the eyes and the chin are red. There are, however, no set rules for painting, and it depends on the taste of the Indian dandy; yet, still, a general similarity is observed. The bands, in their dances, and also after battles, and when they have performed some exploit, follow the established rule. In ordinary festivals, and dances, and whenever they wish to look particularly fine the young men paint themselves in every variety of way, and each endeavors to find out some new mode. Should he find another dandy painted just like himself, he immediately retires and makes a change in the pattern, which may happen three or four times during the festival. If they have performed an exploit, the entire face is painted jet black. Sometimes, though seldom, the Mandans adorn the wrist and upper arm with polished steel bracelets, which they obtain from the merchants; often they wear many brass rings, on their fingers, and are, on the whole, excessively fond of ornaments and finery."

Buffalo Robes—Painting. "The chief article of their dress is

the ample buffalo robe, called mahita, or mih-sha, which is often very elaborate and valuable. In dry weather these buffalo robes are worn with the hair inwards, and in rainy weather with the hairy side outwards. They are tanned on the fleshy side, and painted either white or reddish-brown, and ornamented with a transverse band of blue or white glass beads, and three large rosettes of the same beads, often of very tasteful patterns, at regular intervals. The center is frequently red, surrounded with sky blue, embroidered with white figures, or sometimes the reverse. The transverse band is worked with various dyed porcupine quills, and is then narrower. This, however, is now old-fashioned, and was worn before the colored glass beads were obtained in such numbers from the whites. Other robes are painted with a reddish-brown ground, and black figures, especially of animals; others have a white ground, with representations of their heroic deeds in black, or in gay colors, with the wounds they received, the loss of blood, the killed, the prisoners, the arms they have taken, the horses stolen (the number of which is indicated by the number of horse shoes), in black, red, green, or yellow figures, executed in their yet rude style of painting. The nations on the Missouri are all in the habit of painting such robes, but the Pawnees, Mandans, Minnetarees and Crows, are the most skillful in this art. Another mode of painting their robes is, to represent the number of valuable presents they have made. By these presents, which are often of great value, they acquire great reputation and respect among their countrymen. On such robes we observed long red figures, with a black circle at the termination, placed close to each other in transverse rows; they represent whips, indicating the number of horses given, because the whip belonging to the horse is always bestowed with the animal. Red or dark blue transverse figures indicate cloth or blankets given; paralleled transverse stripes represent fire arms, the outlines of which are pretty correctly drawn. The robe is frequently cut, at the bottom, into narrow strips, like fringe, and ornamented on the sides with tufts of human hair, and horse hair dyed yellow and green, and with glass beads. Formerly the Indians painted these robes more carefully than they now do, and it was possible to obtain one for five musket balls and some powder; now they are far inferior, and eight or ten dollars is not infrequently paid for

them. A robe handsomely painted is equal in value to two not painted."

Leggins—Breachcloths, Etc. "Their leggins are fastened with straps to their leather girdles, and are embroidered at the outer seam with stripes, one or two inches in breadth, of porcupine quills, of beautiful various colors, and often with blue and white beads, and long leathern fringes, which form at the ankles a thick bunch, which trails on the ground. The leather of which leggins are made is, for the most part, stained of a reddish-brown, or pale red, usually of clay, sometimes white, and often marked below the knee with black transverse stripes.

"They, as well as all other tribes of North America, use what the English call a breachcloth (Nokka), which is a narrow strip of woolen cloth, striped black and white, which passes between the thighs under the girdle, before and behind, where it hangs down. Their shoes, which are made of buck-skin, or buffalo leather, are generally plain, or very slightly ornamented; but in full dress, they are embroidered with colored rosettes, or strips of dyed porcupine quills or beads. Those men who have performed exploits wear, round the ankles, wolf's tail, or pieces of otter skin, which are lined with red cloth, and trail on the ground. In the summer, when the men are at home, and go about in state, they carry the fan of eagles' feathers in their hands, which we have before described. What the Anglo-Americans call 'the crow,' which is worn by the warriors of the nations of the Mississippi, and the lower Missouri, is wholly unknown among the tribes of the upper Missouri, the Sioux, Assiniboinés, Crows, Mandans, Arikkaras, Minnetarees and Blackfeet."

Apparel. "The boys are generally naked, and in winter merely have a robe thrown over them; the girls are dressed in leather in summer as well as winter. The women wear a long leather garment, with open sleeves, and a girdle round the waist; the hem of this dress is often scalloped and fringed; they ornament the wrists with iron rings, and tie strings of glass beads round their necks, and sometimes in their ears. Their leggins, called by the Canadians, mitasse, are short, reaching only from the ankle to the knee. Their shoes are simple, and without any ornament."

Tattooing. "Tattooing is in use among these people, but by no means general. Most commonly only the left half of the breast

and the corresponding arm are marked with black parallel stripes, and few other figures. The lower arm and some of the fingers are occasionally marked; the men do not tattoo their faces, and they are far inferior in this art to the New Zealanders, and other nations of the South Seas. Among the women such designs are sometimes seen, but not frequently, and they are chiefly among the women's band of the white buffalo cow. The point of the needle is dyed a dark blue with the bark of the willow soaked in water.

"In Major Long's Travels to the Rocky Mountains it is stated that the Crows rub their bodies with castoreum, on account of its pleasant scent. I must observe, however, that the custom is not confined to one nation, but is practiced by the Mandans, Minnetarees, Crows and Blackfeet, and most of the other tribes of the upper Missouri. They mix the castoreum with red color, and with it rub their faces and frequently their hair."

Lodges—Palisades. "Having obtained a clear idea of the outward appearance of these Indians, we will next consider their habitations, villages, and domestic life. Their villages are assemblages of clay huts, of greater or less extent, placed close to each other, without regard to order. Mih-Tutta-Hang-Kush, the largest of the Mandan villages, was about 150 or 200 paces in diameter, the second was much smaller. The circumference forms an irregular circle, and was anciently surrounded with strong posts, or palisades, which have, however, gradually disappeared as the natives used them for fuel in the cold winters. At four places, to nearly equal distances from each other, is a bastion built of clay, furnished with loop holes, and lined both within and without with basket-work of willow branches. They form an angle, and are open towards the village; the earth is filled in between the basket-work; and it is said that these bulwarks, which are now in a state of decay, were erected for the Indians by the whites. There is nothing of the kind at Ruhptare. The huts, as I have before remarked, stand close to each other, leaving, in the center, an open circular space, about sixty paces in diameter, in the center of which (among the Mandans) the ark of the first man is set up; of which we shall speak in the sequel. It is a small cylinder, open above, made of planks, about four or five feet high,

fixed in the ground, and bound with climbing plants, or pliable boughs, to hold them together."

Medicine-Lodge. "At the north end of this circular space is the medicine-lodge, in which festivals are celebrated, and certain customs practiced, which are connected with the religious notions of this people, which we shall treat of in the sequel. At the top of a high pole, a figure is here placed, made of skins, with a wooden head, the face painted black, and wearing a fur cap and feathers, which is intended to represent the Evil Spirit, Ochki-Hadda (corresponding with the devil), or a wicked man as they affirm, who once appeared among them, had neither wife nor child, and vanished, and whom they now stand greatly in dread of. Other grotesque figures, made of skins and bundles of twigs, we saw hanging on high poles, most of them being offerings to the deity. Among the huts are many stages of several stories, supported by poles, on which they dry the maize. The huts themselves are of a circular form, slightly vaulted, having a sort of portico entrance. When the inmates are absent the entrance is shut up with twigs and thorns; and if they wish merely to close the door they put up a skin stretched out on a frame, which is shoved aside on entering. In the center of the roof is a square opening for the smoke to find vent, over which is a circular sort of screen made of twigs, as a protection against the wind and rain, and which, when necessary, is covered with skins."¹⁴

Interior of Lodge. "The interior of the hut is spacious, tolerably light, and cleanly. Four strong pillars towards the middle, with several cross-beams, support the roof. The inner circumference of the hut is formed by eleven or fifteen thick posts four or five feet in height, between which other rather shorter ones are placed close to each other. On these shorter posts, which are all of an equal height are long rafters, inclining to the center; they are placed near each other, and bear the roof. On the outside the huts are covered with a kind of mat, made of osiers, joined together with bark, and now the skeleton of the hut is finished. Over this hay is spread, and the outer covering is of earth. The men and women work together in erecting these huts, and the relations, neighbors, and friends, assist them in the work. The building of the huts, manufacturing of their arms, hunting, and wars, and part of the labors of the harvest, are the occupations of

the men; every other kind of work is left to the women, who, though in general well treated, are obliged to perform all the really laborous work. The women fetch fuel, in heavy loads, frequently from great distances, carry water, and, in winter, blocks of ice into the huts, cook, tan the skins, make all the clothing, lay out the plantations, perform field labor, etc., etc.

"In the center of the hut a circular place is dug for the fire, over which the kettle is suspended. This fire-place, or hearth, is often enclosed with a ledge of stones. The fuel is laid, in moderately thick pieces, on the external edge of the hearth, crossing each other in the middle, when it is kindled, and the pieces gradually pushed in as they burn away. The Indians are not fond of large fires. The inmates sit around it, on low seats, made of peeled osiers, covered with buffalo or bear's skin. Round the inner circumference of the hut lie or hang the baggage, the furniture, and other property, in leather bags, the painted parchment traveling bags, and the harness of the horses; and on separate stages there are arms, sledges, and snow-shoes, while meat and maize piled up, complete this motely assemblage. The beds stand against the wall of the hut; they consist of a large square case, made of parchment or skins, with a square entrance, and are large enough to hold several persons, who lie very conveniently and warm on skins and blankets.

"In the winter huts they place, at the inside of the door, a high screen of willow boughs, covered with hides, which keep off the draught of air from without, and especially protect the fire.

"The summer huts are very cool, and, generally speaking, have no unpleasant smell. Mr. Say gives a very good description, and a tolerably accurate print, of a Konza lodge, or hut, and with some slight differences, the mode of building resembles, in the main, those of the Mandans, Minnetarees and the Arikkaras. Among these differences are the mats which are fastened all around in the first hut, and which I did not observe among the tribes that I visited. The beds, too, are arranged in a different manner. The Mandans and Minnetarees are seen in their huts, sitting around the fire, employed in all kinds of domestic labor. The man has, generally, no clothing except the nokka, and is often merely smoking, but the women are never idle. In winter, that is, at the beginning or middle of November, these Indians remove,

with the greater part of their effects, to the neighboring forest, where their winter huts are situated. These consist of precisely similar huts, of rather smaller dimensions. Their departure from the summer huts is determined by the weather, but, as before said, is generally about the middle of November; and their return, in the spring, is usually about the latter end of February, or the beginning of March, so that we may reckon that they may pass above eight months in their summer quarters."

Horses. "Inside of the winter huts is a particular compartment, where the horses are put in the evening, and fed with maize. In the daytime they are driven into the prairie and feed in the bushes, on the bark of poplars. There are, probably, above 300 horses in the two Mandan villages; some of the people indeed, do not possess any, while others, again, have several. The Mandans and Minnetarees, like all the other Indians of this country, sometimes make what are here called caches, or hiding places in the vicinity of their villages. These caches are holes, or magazines, underground, often so artfully contrived that it is very difficult to discover them. The Indians frequently go from their winter to their summer village, to fetch any articles they may happen to want, as they invariably leave part of their property behind."

Dogs. "When they quit their huts for a longer period than usual, they load their dogs with the baggage, which is drawn in small sledges, made of a couple of thin, narrow boards, nine or ten feet in length, fastened together with leather straps, and with four cross pieces, by way of giving them firmness. Leather straps are attached in front, and drawn either by men or dogs. The load is fastened to the sledge by straps. When the snow is deep they use snow-shoes, which are described by Captain Franklin, only those of the Mandans are much smaller, about two feet and a half long; whereas in the north their length is from four to six feet. The Mandans and Minnetarees have not, by any means, so many dogs as the Assiniboinés, Crows and Blackfeet. They are rarely of the true wolf's color, but generally black, or white, or else spotted with black and white. Among the nations further to the northwest they more nearly resemble the wolf, but here they are more like the prairie wolf. We likewise found among these animals, a brown race, descended from European pointers, hence the genuine bark of the dog is more frequently heard here, whereas among the

western nations they only howl. The Indian dogs are worked very hard, have hard blows, and hard fare; in fact, they are treated just as this fine animal is treated among the Esquimaux."

Hospitality. "The Mandans are hospitable, and often invite their acquaintances to come and see them. Their pipes are made of the red stone, or of black clay. They obtain the red-pipe heads chiefly from the Sioux; sometimes they have wooden heads lined with stone; the tube is plain, long, round, or flat, on the whole, of the same shape as among the Sioux, but they are not so fastidious about ornamenting their pipes as other tribes. They smoke the leaves of the tobacco plant, which is cultivated by them; the bark of the red willow, which they obtain from the traders, is sometimes mixed with the tobacco, or the latter with the leaves of the bearberry. The tobacco of the whites, unmixed, is too strong for the Indians, because they draw the smoke into their lungs; hence they do not willingly smoke cigars."

Meals. "The meals of the Mandans are served in wooden dishes, the spoons are generally large and deep; they are made of the horn of the bighorn; and sometimes they are yellow, or else they are shallow, made of black buffalo's horn. They have a considerable variety of dishes. The Indians residing in permanent villages have the advantage of the roving hunting tribes, in that they not only hunt, but derive their chief substance from their plantations, which afford them a degree of security against distress. It is true, these Indians sometimes suffer hunger when the buffalo herds keep at a great distance, and their crops fail; but the distress can never be so great among the Missouri Indians, as in the tribes that live further northwards. The plants which they cultivate are maize, beans, French beans, gourds, sunflowers and tobacco, of which I brought home some seeds, which have flowered in several botanic gardens."

Corn, Etc. "Of maize there are several varieties of color, to which they give different names. The several varieties are: 1. White maize. 2. Yellow maize. 3. Red maize. 4. Spotted maize. 5. Black maize. 6. Sweet maize. 7. Very hard yellow maize. 8. White, or red-striped maize. 9. Very tender yellow maize.¹⁵

"The beans are likewise of various sorts—small white beans,

black, red, and spotted beans. The gourds are yellow, black, striped, blue, long, and thick-shelled gourds.

"The sunflower is a large helianthus, which seems perfectly to resemble that cultivated in our gardens. It is planted in rows between the maize. There are two or three varieties, with red and black, and one with smaller seeds. Very nice cakes are made of these seeds.

"The tobacco cultivated by the Mandans, Minnetarees and Arikkaras, attains a great height, and is suffered to grow up from the seeds, without having any care whatever bestowed upon it. It is not transplanted. When it is ripe the stalks are cut, dried, and powdered; or the leaves, with the small branches, are cut into little pieces. The taste and smell are disagreeable to an European, resembling camomile rather than tobacco. The plant is not now so much cultivated as formerly, being superseded by the more pleasant tobacco of the whites; but the species is still preserved. It is only on solemn occasions, for instance, in negotiations for peace, that this tobacco is still smoked; the seed, is therefore, preserved in the medicine bag of the nation, that the plant may never be lost. When they mean to smoke this tobacco, a small quantity of fat is rubbed on it."

Cultivation. "The cultivation of the maize and other fields, of which each family prepares three, four, or five acres, takes place in the month of May. Rows of small furrows are made, into which the grains of maize are thrown singly, and covered with earth. Three times in the summer the plants are hoed, and the earth heaped up against them, that the moisture may have better access to them. The harvest takes place in October, when men, women, and children each lend a helping hand. At present the women use in their field labor, a broad iron hoe, with a crooked wooden handle, which they obtain from the merchants. Charbonneau recollected the time when they used the shoulder blade of the buffalo for this purpose. The fields are never fenced, but lie quite open and exposed."

Wild Plants. "The wild plants of the prairie are used by the Mandans, and other people of the upper Missouri; and to those before mentioned, I can only add the feverolles, a fruit resembling the bean, which is said to grow in the ground, but which I did not see; there are many other roots in the prairie, which are

used for food. The gourds are eaten fresh as well as dry. The beans are seldom eaten of one kind, but many sorts are mixed together. The maize is boiled or roasted, then pounded, mixed with fat and made into small cakes and baked. There are, of course, many other ways of dressing it. The sweet maize has a very pleasant taste, especially when it is in what is called the milky state; it is then boiled, dried, and laid by for use."

Animal Food. "All kinds of animals serve the Mandans for food; the bear, when it is young and fat, the wolf, the fox, in short everything except the horse; the ermine is not eaten by many; and of birds they dislike the turkey-buzzard, and the raven, because they feed on the dead bodies deposited on the stages. They have a great aversion from serpents, but eat the turtle; the buffalo is the chief object of their chase, as it supplies them with skins, meat, tallow, marrowbones, sinews and many other necessities. Next to the buffalo the beaver is the most indispensable to them, since it not only furnished them with valuable skins, but supplies them with delicate food, the fat tail especially, being considered quite a dainty morsel by the Indians.

"Pemmican, which is so favorite a dish among the northern Indians, it not much in use among the Mandans. Their only drink is water, for they are unacquainted with the method of preparing fermented liquors. They do not obtain any spirits, either from the American Fur Company, or the agents of Messrs. Soublotte and Campbell; hence an intoxicated person is scarcely ever seen. They are extremely fond of sugar, and likewise of salt, which they procure from their lakes, and if the supply is insufficient, purchase from the whites. They are likewise fond of coffee and tea, well sweetened. It has been affirmed, that several North American nations, especially those which speak the Algonquin language, are cannibals, and more particularly the Chippeways and the Pottawatomis; but I found no trace of this unnatural custom among the Missouri nations."

Families. "Two, and sometimes three, families usually live together in an Indian hut, commonly the father, with his married sons or sons-in-law. Polygamy is everywhere practiced, and the number of wives differ; however, they have very seldom more than four, and, in general, only one. The women are very skillful in various kinds of work, particularly in dying and painting

the buffalo robes. They extract a red color from the roots of the savoyenne, or from buffalo berries; yellow from a lichen from the Rocky mountains; black from helianthus, as well as from a black stone or clay; blue and green they extract from European substances."

Beads—Pottery. "Among the Mandans, Minnetarees, and Arikkaras, the women, as Lewis and Clarke relate, manufacture beads from colored glass. They powder those which they obtain from the traders and mould them into different shapes.¹⁶ This custom is, however, no longer common. The dyeing of the skins, of which many travelers have spoken, employs a great portion of the women's time. These three nations understand the manufacture of earthen pots and vessels, of various forms and sizes. The clay is of a dark slate color, and burns a yellowish-red, very similar to what is seen in the burnt tops of the Missouri hills. This clay is mixed with flint or granite, reduced to powder by the action of fire. The work-woman forms the hollow inside of the vessel by means of a round stone which she holds in her hand, while she works and smooths the outside with a piece of poplar bark. When the pot is made, it is filled and surrounded with dry shavings, and then burnt, when it is ready for use. They know nothing of glazing."¹⁷

Boats. "With respect to their boats, the North Americans are far more expert than the Brazilians, Patagonians, and other South Americans, who live on the banks of rivers, and yet have contrived no means to pass them. The Chippeways and other northern nations have handsome vessels of birch bark; the Esquimaux makes his Kiack, which is curiously covered with sealskin; and on the Missouri, especially among the Mandans, there are boats of buffalo skin, which are represented in the plates accompanying this work. They are very light, of a circular form, stretched on a frame of several pieces of wood crossing each other, and may be carried on the shoulder of a single individual."

Courtship—Marriage. "If a young Indian desires to marry, and has obtained the consent of the girl, he endeavors to procure that of her father; when he is certain of this, he brings two, three, nay, even eight or ten horses, and fastens them to the hut of the young woman, who gives them to her father. The latter then takes other horses, and if he has them not himself, his relations

assist him, and these horses are fastened, in return, to the hut of the intended son-in-law. In such a case an estimate is previously made of the number of horses possessed by the woman's relations, for all presents are returned in equal number.

"The bride next boils some maize, and daily carries a kettle or dish filled with it to the hut of the bridegroom. After sometime has elapsed, the young man repairs to the hut of his bride, where he passes the night with her, and the marriage is considered as complete. The young couple often continue to reside in the hut of the father-in-law, but they more frequently build a new hut for themselves; sometimes however, they afterwards separate. The father-in-law is, subsequently, the principal person in the hut; everything depends on him, and is done on his account, and for him; if game is killed, the flesh is first presented to him, etc. There are often many children in these Indian families; some had as many as ten; yet on the whole, the Indians have not so many children as the Whites, doubtless because they keep them longer at the breast. They are extremely fond of them, but the children are often weak and sickly, in consequence, it is supposed, of the hard labor which the women have to perform. I was universally assured that the new-born children are of a reddish color. The births are, in general, extremely easy, and the mother bathes in the river immediately afterwards, even if it is frozen; in ten days the child is considered as safe, having got over the most dangerous period. A person is paid to give it the name chosen by the parents and relations. The child is held up, then turned to all sides of the heavens, in the direction of the course of the sun, and its name proclaimed. They have cradles for their infants, consisting of a leather bag, which is suspended by a strap to a cross beam in the hut. These cradles of the Mandans are not so elegant and beautifully worked as those which we saw among the Sioux and Assiniboines."

Discipline. "The children of these Indians are subject to no kind of discipline whatever; they may do and say whatever they please, and nobody finds fault with them. Everything is done to excite a spirit of independence and self-will in the boys; if the mother speaks to one of them, he will very likely slap her face, or kick her, nay, sometimes he will do the same to his father, who

says, coolly, bowing his head, 'This boy will some day become a great warrior.' "

Wives—Sisters. "The men sometimes treat their wives very brutally; and it has not infrequently happened, that a woman, after such treatment, has left the hut and hanged herself on a tree. This lately happened in the case of an aged woman, whose grown-up son had ill-treated her. She was missed, and was afterwards found suspended from a tree. The women have nothing to indemnify them for their incessant and laborious work, not even good clothing, for this right of the fair sex in Europe is claimed among the Indians by the men. It is singular that these women, who are condemned constantly to work like slaves, refuse to do any work whatever if they marry a white man, and, the whites being entirely in the power of the Indians, and the relations of their wives, they are obliged to submit to this. Sisters have great privileges among the Indians. All the horses which a young man steals, or captures in war, belong to them. If an Indian returns from an expedition on horseback, and meets his sister, he will immediately alight, and give her the horse, on the other hand, if he wishes to possess some object of value belonging to his sister, for instance, a dress, he goes and abruptly demands it, and immediately receives it; even should it be the very dress she is wearing, she will take it off at once, and give it to her brother."

Prudery. "Prudery is not a virtue of the Indian woman; they have often two, three, or more lovers; infidelity is not often punished. There was only one woman among the Mandanis, a piece of whose nose was cut off a circumstance which is very common among the Blackfeet. If an Indian elopes with a married woman, the husband whom she had abandoned avenges himself by seizing the seducer's property, his horses and other things of value, to which the latter must quietly submit. Such a woman is never taken back. If a man had the eldest daughter of a family for his wife, he had a right to all her sisters. A chief business of the young men among these Indian tribes is to try their fortunes with the young maidens and the women, and this together with their toilet fill up the greater part of their time. They do not meet with any coy beauties. In the evening, and generally till late at night, they roam about the village or in the vicinity, or from one village to another. They have a singular mode of displaying their

achievements in this field, especially when they visit the women in their best dresses. On these occasions they endeavor to gain credit by the variety of their triumphs, and mark the number of conquered beauties by bundles of peeled osier twigs, painted red at the tips. These sticks are of two kinds. Most of them are from two to three feet in length, others five to six feet. The latter, being carried singly, are painted with white and red rings alternately, which indicate the number of conquests.

"The shorter sticks are only painted red at the tips, and every stick indicates an exploit, the number of which is often bound up into a pretty large bundle. Thick fascies of this kind are carried about by the dandies in their gallant excursions. Among the Mandans these sticks are generally quite plain; among the Minnetarees, on the contrary, there is, usually, in the middle of the bundle, one larger stick, at the end of which there is a tuft of black feathers. These feathers indicate the favorite, and the dandies tell everybody that she is the person for whom his honor is intended.

"If these people have had familiar intercourse with a person who wore the white buffalo robe, a piece of skin of that color is fastened to the stick; if she wore a red blanket, or buffalo robe, a piece of red cloth is fastened to the stick. This custom, which is well known to the Mandans and Minnetarees, has not, to my knowledge, been mentioned by any traveler."

Relationship. "They have distinct names for the several degrees of relationship. The father's brother is called father, and the mother's sister, mother; cousins are called brothers and sisters. The mother-in-law never speaks to her son-in-law; but if he comes home, and brings her the scalp of a slain enemy, and his gun, she is at liberty, from that moment, to converse with him. This custom is found among the Minnetarees, who have doubtless, borrowed it from the Mandans, but not among the Crows and Arikkaras. Among the Chippeways, and the Algonquins in general, the name must not be changed; and persons with the same name must not marry, but consider each other as brothers and sisters. Among all the North American Indian nations there are men dressed and treated like women, called by the Canadians, *Bar-daches*, of whom McKenzies, Tanner, Longsdorff, and others

have spoken; but there was only one such among the Mandans, and two or three among the Minnetarees."

Morality—High Intelligence. "Volney, and some other writers, have spoken rather too unfavorably of the moral character of the aboriginals of North America, and their domestic habits. According to them, distrust and hostile feeling prevails among them, for which reason they never leave their huts unarmed; but I can bear witness that they are frequently seen in their villages, as well as in the environs, without arms, and that is only at greater distances, and when they appear in state, that they carry their weapons in their hands. I have never observed any disputes among them, but, on the contrary, much more unity and tranquillity than in civilized Europe. It has often been asserted that the Indians are inferior in intellectual capacity to the whites; but this has now been sufficiently refuted; and Harlan is not wrong in saying that, among the races of men, of which Blumenbach reckons five,¹⁸ the American should be reckoned immediately after the Caucasian. If man, in all his varieties, has not received from the Creator equally perfect faculties, I am, at least convinced that, in this respect, the Americans are not inferior to the whites. Many of the Mandans manifest a great thirst for knowledge, and many desire to hear something of objects of a higher order, and if they were not so much attached to the prejudices inherited from their ancestors, many of them might be very easily instructed. The bad examples which they so often observe in the white men, who roam about their country in quest of gain, are not calculated to inspire them with much respect for our race, or to improve their morality. And if they have not been found inclined to the Christian religion, this is, certainly, in some measure, the consequence of the bad conduct of the whites, who call themselves Christians, and are often worse, and more immoral, than the most uncivilized of the Indians. Many American and foreign works have taken notice of the striking good sense and wit, the correct judgment of the Indians, in all the occurrences of daily life, and it would be mere repetition here to quote examples. One is often at a loss to answer their questions, founded on correct and natural judgment. The inactive mode of life natural to the Indians, which disdains all laborious exertion, is a great obstacle to their adopting a different system. But they are not deficient

in talent for drawing, music, etc., and this is quite manifest at first sight. Several Mandans not only took much pleasure in drawing, but had a decided talent for it. The hieroglyphics are well known, which the Indians employ instead of writing; for instance, the figures on their robes, the drawings of Mato-Tope, and the subjoined Indian letter from a Mandan to a fur trader."

Drawings. "The following is the explanation of the hieroglyphic figures contained in it:

"The cross signifies, 'I will barter, or trade.' Three animals are drawn on the right side of the cross; one is a buffalo; the two others a weasel and an otter. The writer offers, in exchange for the skins of these animals (probably meaning that of a white buffalo), the articles which he has drawn on the left side of the cross.

"He has, in the first place, depicted a beaver very plainly, behind which there is a gun; to the left of the beaver are thirty strokes, each ten separated by a longer line; this means, I will give thirty beaver skins and a gun for the skins of the three animals on the right hand side of the cross.

"Many of them dispute, with great earnestness, on more elevated subjects; thus, they inquired our ideas of the various heavenly bodies, and of the origin of the universe, as they, themselves, declare their own silly traditions to be insufficient. Some, indeed, thought our ideas on these subjects much more silly than their own. They laughed outright, when we affirmed that the earth was round, and revolved about the sun. Others, however, would not reject our views, and were of the opinion that, as the whites could do so much which was incomprehensible to them, it was possible they might be right on this point also."

Oratory. "In all works that treat of these remarkable people, we find recorded very energetic and well digested speeches of their chiefs. They frequently use very appropriate figures, and often said bitter truths to their white oppressors. Dr. Morse quotes some such phrases, used at the conclusion of treaties of peace, or declarations of war, which express much in a few words. Thus, in declarations of war: 'The blood of our wives and children smokes on the ground! The bones of our warriors and old men are uncovered, and whiten the earth! The tomahawk is raised!' And on the conclusion of peace: 'The bones

of our warriors are buried! The tomahawk is buried! The blood of our women and children is covered! The path which leads to them must be kept clean; no weeds may grow there. The chain which binds us together must not become rusty.' Or, on the contrary: 'The chain begins to rust,' etc., etc. Though these people often manifest great energy of character, many have committed suicide on account of disappointments in love, or of wounded honor, of which Dr. Morse relates a remarkable instance, where an Indian killed himself because he was reproached with cowardice, after his mother had suffered death for him. Many travelers speak of the extraordinary memory of the Indians; several of them relate the entire history of their people in a continuous narrative."

Pride. "The Mandans and Minnetarees are proud, and have a high sense of honor. If a person expresses a wish to possess some article belonging to them, he generally receives it as a present, but a present of equal, or greater value, is always looked for in return. They estimate all their effects at a very high rate, ascribing to them an imaginary and far too great value; a trifling thing is often paid for with one or two horses. Among the articles of great value is the skin of a white buffalo cow. Fifteen florins was paid for a small ermine skin; whereas a wolf's skin may be purchased for a small quantity of tobacco and one or two horses are frequently given for a feather cap; a horse for 100 or 150 elk's teeth, or for a handful of dentalium shells.¹⁹ The men are much given to indolence, when they cannot pursue their chief avocations, hunting and war. In general, the Mandans and Minnetarees are not dangerous, and, though, there are many rude and savage men among them, they are, on the whole, well-disposed towards the whites; the former especially, manifest this, and have many good and trustworthy men among them. Some of them are addicted to thieving, especially the women and children; and it is said, that many of the Minnetarees, when they meet the whites in the prairie, though they do not kill them, as they used to do, generally plunder them."

At Fort Clarke. "They have always free access to the forts of the trading companies; and, as to Fort Clarke, there was no separate apartment for the Indians, we were molested by them, during the whole day, in every room; nay, they often took the

place of the owners, which during the severe cold of the winter time, was quite intolerable, as they stood in front of the fire, with their large buffalo robes, and kept the warmth from coming into the apartment. They require to be always regaled, which is generally done, and it was estimated that in one year they smoked 200 pounds of tobacco at the expense of the company. A few among them, indeed, manifest a much greater delicacy of feeling than the mass of them, and left the dining room when the dinner hour approached; but only a very small proportion possessed this correct sense of propriety, for the others generally came just at our dinner time; it is true they had but little meat in the winter season, and fared badly. Disputes and quarrels are very rare among them; but duels are frequent; and revenge for blood is still exercised."

Hardiness. "Many of them are particularly cleanly in their persons, bathe daily, both in winter and summer; their hands, however, are often smeared with colors and fat, nay, sometimes the whole body is bedaubed. The women are in general less cleanly, particularly their hands, which arises from their continual and severe labor. They generally let their nails grow long.

"The rude inhabitants of the prairies are extremely agile and hardy; they bathe in the depth of winter, in the half frozen rivers, and wear no covering on the upper part of their body under the buffalo robe; they are very expert swimmers, even when quite young. I have already observed that all these nations swim in the same manner as the Brazilian Tapuyas, which is confirmed by other writers. They often practice riding horseback without a saddle, and very swift horse racing. They are capital marksmen with the bow; all their senses are remarkable acute."

Indian Orders—Badges. "Among the Mandans, and all the nations of the upper Missouri, as well as among most of the North American tribes, there are certain bands or unions or companies, which are distinguished from the others, and kept together by certain external badges and laws.²⁰ They have three kinds of war or signal pipes, which are hung around the neck, and are among the badges of the unions which divide the men into six classes, according to their age. The first band or union is composed of 'the foolish dogs,' or 'the dogs whose name is not known.' They are young people from ten to fifteen years of age,

and wear a pipe made of the wing bone of the wild goose, which is but small. When they dance, three of them have a long broad piece of red cloth hanging from the back of the neck to the ground. Like every distinct class they have a particular song to accompany their dance. Formerly old people likewise belonged to this band, but then they never dared to retreat before the enemy; this has since been changed to the present limited rule. If a boy desires to enter the first band in order to become a man, he goes to a member of it, addresses him by the appellation of father, and endeavors to purchase the rank, the dance, the song, and the war pipe belonging to it, for certain articles of value, such as blankets, cloth, horses, powder, ball, and the like, which the father pays for him. If this place is sold to him he has a right to all the distinctions and privileges of the band, and he who sold it thereby renounces all claim to it, and endeavors to purchase admission to a higher band. The dances of the several classes are in the main very similar, but there is a particular song belonging to each, and sometimes even a different step. The drum and schischikue must likewise be purchased at the same time, the latter, among this band, is spherical, with a handle, and is made of leather.

“The second class or band is that of the crow or ravens; it consists of young men from twenty to twenty-five years of age. Frequently young people are in none of the bands for half a year or more. They then go to the band of the crows, and say, ‘Father, I am poor, but I wish to purchase from you.’ If the possessor agrees, they then receive the raven’s feathers, which the band wear on their heads, a double war-pipe, consisting of two wing bones of a goose joined together, a drum, schischikue, the song and the dance. Each of these bands has a leader, called, by the Americans, head-man, who decides on the sale of its rights and attributes. This head-man is chiefly applied to when one wishes for admission; a festival then takes place in the medicine-lodge, which is continued for forty successive nights, of which I shall speak in the sequel. They dance, eat, and smoke there; the purchasers defray the expenses, till the fathers, as they are called, are satisfied, and transfer their rights to the purchasers, with which the festival concludes.

“The third class, or band, is that of the soldiers, the most

eminent and esteemed warriors. In their dances they paint the upper part of the face red, and the lower part black. Their war pipe is large, and made of the wing bone of a crane. Their badges are two long straight sticks bound with otter skin to which owls' feathers are appended. When they go to war, they plant these sticks in the ground in front of the enemy, and, this done, they dare not leave them, not unlike the colors in a European army. They have a similar stick ornamented with raven's feathers. They likewise have a dance and song peculiar to their band, and must purchase their admission into higher classes. Their schischikue, or rattle, is made of iron plate, in the form of a small kettle, with a handle. They likewise possess two tobacco pipes, which are used for smoking on special occasions. Two men keep and carry with them these pipes. All the higher classes may at the same time, belong to the band of the soldiers, who act as police officers; it is, however, understood that all the members must be satisfied with the purchase. If but one object to the sale, the bargain cannot be concluded. It often happens that some individuals do not immediately give their consent, in order to raise the price and sell to more advantage afterwards. These soldiers, as they are called, form a kind of committee, which decides all the principal affairs, particularly general undertakings, such as changes of their placés of abode, buffalo hunting and the like. If the buffalo herds are in the vicinity, they watch them, and do not suffer them to be disturbed by individuals, till a general chase can be undertaken.

"If, during this time, anyone fires at a wolf or other animal, the soldiers take away his gun, ill-use, and sometimes beat him, to which he must submit; even the chiefs are not spared on these occasions. The whites living in the neighborhood are subject, during such a time, to the same laws, and the soldiers have often taken their hatchets from the wood-cutters of the fort, or forbidden them to cut wood, that the buffalos might not be disturbed by the noise.

"The fourth band, that of the dogs, wear in their dance, a large cap of colored cloth, to which a great number of raven's, magpie's and owls' feathers is fastened, adorned with dyed horse hair and strips of ermine; they have a large war pipe of the wing bone of a swan. Three of them have the same strips of red cloth hanging

down the back, as have been mentioned, when speaking of the first band. The head is generally adorned with a thick tuft of owl's, magpie's and raven's feathers hanging down behind, and often all three kinds of feathers are mixed together. The three men before mentioned, who wear the strips of red cloth, (the dogs, properly so called), are obliged, if anyone throws a piece of meat into the ashes, or on the ground, saying, 'there dog, eat,' to fall upon it, and devour it raw, like dogs or beasts of prey. The schischikue of this band is a stick, a foot or a foot and a half long, to which a number of animals' hoofs are fastened. The costume of these three dogs is shown in the portrait of Pehriska-Rupe.

"The fifth band is that of the buffalos. In their dance they wear the skin of the upper part of the head, the mane of the buffalo, with its horns, on their heads; but two select individuals, the bravest of all, who henceforward never dare to fly from the enemy, wear a perfect imitation of the buffalo's head, with horns, which they set on their heads, and in which there are holes left for the eyes, which are surrounded with an iron or tin ring. This band alone has a wooden war pipe, and in their union they have a woman, who, during the dance, goes 'round with a dish of water, to refresh the dancers, but she must give this water only to the bravest, who wear the whole buffalo's head. She is dressed, on these occasions, in a handsome new robe of bighorn leather, and colors here face with vermillion. The men have a piece of red cloth fastened behind, and a figure representing a buffalo's tail; they also carry their arms in their hands. The men with the buffalo heads always keen in the dance at the outside of the group, imitating the motions and the voice of this animal, as it timidly and cautiously retreats, looking around in all directions, etc.

"The sixth band is that of the black-tailed deer. It consists of all the men above fifty years of age, who, however, likewise dance. Two women belong to the band, who wait on them at the dance, cook, carry water around to refresh them, and the like. All the men of this band wear a garland of the claws of the grizzly bear around their heads, and all insignia of their warlike exploits about their bodies, such as feathers on their heads, tufts of hair on their arms and legs, scalps, painting, etc.

"All these bands, as well as the following dances, are bought and sold, and, as has been already observed, on these occasions, the buyer must give up his wife to the seller during the festivity. But if a young man is still unmarried, he will sometimes travel to a great distance to another village, to ask a friend or a companion for his wife, who accordingly goes with him, and, on the evening of the dance, gives up his wife for him. A man often brings three or four, and even more, wives, and gives them to his father, as he is called, as soon as the dancing, eating, smoking, and the relating of their exploits are concluded. Thus one woman after the other comes, as will be described in the account of the buffalo medicines of the Minnetarees, strikes, with her hand, the arm of the man whom she will favor, and goes to the entrance of the tent, where she waits till he follows her. The man so invited often keeps his seat, and bows down his head; the woman then goes home, bringing articles of value, such as guns, robes, blankets, etc., which she lays piece by piece before him, till he is satisfied, stands up, and follows her.

"There are other dances which are bought and sold, among which are a second dance of the third band, and the dance of the half-shorn heads, which the lower class may buy before they are old enough to belong to the third band.

"The medicine feast, the insignia, and the dance belonging to the half-shorn heads, will be described in the sequel. Another dance is that of the old dogs. The band of the dogs can buy it of the buffalos before they can become buffalos, or purchase their admission to the fifth band. In the dance of the old dogs, they paint themselves white, the hands red and black, and wear a girdle of the skin of the grizzly bear, and a bunch of feathers hanging down at the back of the head.

"What is called the hot dance is now danced at Ruhptare, and by the Minnetarees, who bought it of the Arikkaras. It is executed by the little dogs whose name is not known. A large fire is kindled on the occasion, and a quantity of live coals is scattered on the ground, about which the young men dance quite naked and barefooted. The hands, with the lower part of the arms, and the feet and ankles, are painted red. A kettle, with meat cut in small pieces, is hung over the fire; and when the meat is done they plunge their hands into the boiling water, take

out the meat, and eat it, at the risk of scalding themselves. The last comers are the worst off, having to dip their hands the deepest into the boiling water. During the dance they have in their hands their weapons and the schischikue.

"There is another dance which will be described in one of the following chapters. The dance is accompanied with the schischikue and drum, and is generally performed in a circle; the dancers carry in their hands the bow-lance,²¹ which is adorned with feathers and bear's entrails."

Women Bands. "The Mandan women are divided precisely in the same manner as the men, into four classes, according to their age. The youngest band is called 'the band of the gun.' They wear in their hair some down feathers of the eagle, and have their peculiar dance.

"The next class into which they obtain admission, by purchase is 'the river class.' When they dance they wear an eagle's feather, fastened to the fore part of the head with a piece of white ribbon, which projects on the left side, and is entwined 'round the quill with grass.

"The third class consists of the women of the hay, who, when they dance, put on their best clothes, and sing the scalp song.

"The fourth, and last class, is the band of the white cow. They paint one eye with some color according to their taste, generally sky-blue. On the chin, this class, mostly consisting of aged women, tattoo themselves with black lines; 'round their heads they wear a broad piece of the skin of a white buffalo cow, something like a hussar's cap, with a tuft of feathers in it. A more particular description of the dress of this band is given in the sequel.

"These unions, or bands, give occasion to many festivities, with singing, music, and dancing. But they have likewise other dances and diversions.

Scalp Dance. "One of these is the scalp dance, which may be more appropriately described among the usages of war. Their musical instruments are very simple. The mode of singing varies but little among all the American Indians; it consists of broken, deep exclamations, often intercepted by loud shouts, and is accompanied by a violent beating of time on the drum, and the rattling of the schischikue. Besides these two instruments, the

Mandans have long wooden pipes, at the lower end of which there is generally an eagle's feather hanging by a string. Other pipes are thicker, about twenty inches long, and are perforated with holes; in this respect they differ from the war pipe. They are sometimes ornamented with pieces of skin, etc. These are the only musical instruments of the Indians besides the war pipes."

Games. "The Indians have also many games; the game called billiards, by the French Canadians, is played by two young men, with long poles, which are often bound with leather, and have various ornaments attached to them. On a long, straight, level course, or a level path in or near the village they roll a hoop, three or four inches in diameter, covered with leather, and throw the pole at it; and the success of the game depends upon the pole passing through it. This game is also practiced among the Minnetarees, and is described, in Major Long's Travels to the Rocky Mountains, as being played by the Pawnees, who, however, have hooked sticks, which is not the case with the tribes mentioned.

"The women are expert at playing with a large leather ball, which they let fall alternately on their foot and knee, again throwing it up and catching it, and thus keeping it in motion for a length of time without letting it fall to the ground. Prizes are given, and they often play high. The ball is often very neat and curiously covered with dyed porcupine quills. Card playing has not yet reached these Indians, though it is in use among the Osages and other tribes. The children of the Mandans and Minnetarees play with a piece of stag's horn, in which a couple of feathers are inserted; this is thrown forward, the piece of horn being foremost. About the middle of March, when the weather is fine, the children and young men play with the hoop, in the interior of which strips of leather are interwoven; its diameter is about a foot. This hoop is either rolled or thrown, and they thrust at it with a pointed stick; he who approaches the center most nearly is the winner. As soon as the ice in the river breaks up, they run to the banks and throw this interlaced hoop into the water. In the summer time the Mandans and Minnetarees often amuse themselves with races in the prairie, for which they have the best opportunity in the vicinity of their villages; twenty young men, or more, often run at once, and on these occasions

there is always high betting. Some of them are very swift runners, and can hold out for a long time."

Superstitious—The Deluge. "The Mandans and Minnetarees are extremely superstitious, and all their important actions are guided by such motives. They have most strange ideas of surrounding nature, believe in a multitude of different beings in the heavenly bodies; offer sacrifices to them; invoke their assistance on every occasion; howl, lament, fast, inflict on themselves cruel acts of penance to propitiate these spirits; and, above all, lay very great stress upon dreams.²² Some of their traditions have a resemblance to the revelations of the Bible; for instance, Noah's Ark and the Deluge, the history of Samson, etc. The question here arises whether these particulars have not been gradually introduced among them, from their intercourse with Christians, and this seems highly probable. If they have not yet embraced the Christian religion, it would, however, appear that they have adopted some portions which strike them as being either remarkable or interesting. The belief in a future life, or a better state of things after death, exists among all the American nations; this is confirmed by D'Orbugny (*Voyages*, tom. 111. p. 90), who justly blames Azara for denying all religious ideas to the people of Paraguay. In order to obtain correct information respecting all their traditions and ideas, we persuaded Dipauch²³ to enliven our long winter evenings by his narratives, which he readily agreed to do. He spoke with much seriousness and gravity, and I had a most excellent interpreter in Mr. Kipp. I give these narratives, which are often extremely silly, as they were written down from his communications, though I must beg my reader's patience and indulgence. It was not possible to curtail them or to choose only the most interesting parts, since all their traditions and legends have a certain connection, and really possess some influence on the actual mode of life of this people."

Deities. "According to Dipauch, these Indians believe in several superior beings, of whom the lord of life, Ohmahank-Numakshi, is the first, the most exalted and the most powerful; who created the earth, man and every existing object.²⁴ They believe that he had a tail, and appears sometimes in the form of an aged man, and, at others, in that of a young man. The first man, Numank-Machana, holds the second rank; he was created by the lord of

life, but is likewise of a divine nature. The lord of life gave him great power, and they, therefore, worship and offer sacrifices to him. He is nearly identical with Nanabush among the Chippeways, or the people of the Algonquin language, who, according to the notion of these tribes, acts as mediator between the creator and the human race. Nanabush and the creator frequently had disputes, and the Mandans have similar legends. Omahank-Chika, the evil one of the earth, is a malignant spirit, who has, likewise, much influence over man, but who, is not as powerful as the lord of life and the first man. The fourth being is Rohanka-Tauihan-ka, who lives in the planet Venus, and it is he who protects mankind on the earth; for without his care the race would have been long since extinct. A fifth being, who, however, has no power, is something like the wandering Jew, ever in motion, and walking on the face of the earth in human form. They call him the lying prairie wolf. Besides these there is a sixth being, Ochki-Hadda, whom it is difficult to class, and of whom they have a tradition, that whoever dreams of him is doomed soon to die. He appears to figure in their traditions as a kind of devil, is said to have once come to their villages, and taught them many things, but has not since appeared. They are afraid to offer sacrifices to him, and have in their villages a hideous figure representing him. They worship the sun, because they believe it to be the residence of the lord of life. All their medicines or sacrifices are offered chiefly to the sun, or rather to the lord of life, as inhabiting it. In the moon, say they, lives the old woman who never dies, and who wears a white band from the front to the back of the head; sacrifices and offerings are likewise made to her. They do not know who she is, but her power is great. She has six children, three sons and three daughters, who all live in certain stars. The eldest son is the day (the first day of creation), the second, is the sun, in which the lord of life has his abode. The third son is the night. The eldest daughter is the star that rises in the east, the morning star; and they call her, 'the woman who wears a plume.' The second daughter, called 'the striped gourd,' is a high star which revolves around the polar star; and, lastly, the third daughter is the evening star which is near to the setting sun.

"The old woman in the moon desired to find a wife for her

son, and brought a girl, whom she desired to wait outside the door. When the old woman sent out to fetch her, they found in her place a toad; indignant at the exchange, the toad was boiled in a vessel, that it might be destroyed. But this could not be done, nor could it be eaten, and it was, therefore, cursed, on which it remained always visible as a spot on the moon. The narrator could not say whether the sun was large or small, but, at all events, it was glowing hot. The son married a woman whom they call 'the narrow-leaved wormwood.' They had a son of great promise, who appeared destined to act an important part. He was very skillful in making arrows, and versed in all kinds of hunting and catching of animals. He shot birds for his mother, though she had forbidden him to kill the prairie-larks, yet he shot all his arrows at these birds, but he was unable to kill any. Upon this one of the birds said to him, 'Why will you kill me, since I am related to you?' He dug up in the moon the pomme blanche for which his mother reproved him, because, through the hole which he had dug, they could see the Manitari villages in the earth beneath. And his mother said, 'See all those men are our relations; I did not intend to descend to the earth yet, but now we must go thither.' The father once ordered the son to shoot a buffalo for him, and to bring him all the sinews of the animal; but the son twisted a rope with part of those sinews, in order thereby to let himself down to the earth. Accordingly he descended to the earth in the vicinity of the Little Missouri, but his rope reached only to the top of the trees. If he had had all the sinews, of the buffalo, his rope would have reached the ground, but now remained suspended, and swung backwards and forwards. A large stone was thrown at him from the moon, which stone was in existence not very long since. The stone, however, could not kill him, he being medicine, that is charmed."

Thunder-Bird. "The Mandans believe that the thunder is produced by the motion of the wings of a gigantic bird. When this bird flies softly, as is usually the case, he is not heard, but when he flaps his wings violently, he occasions a roaring noise. This huge bird is said to have only two toes on each foot, one behind and the other before. It lives in the mountains, where it builds an immense nest, as big as Fort Clarke. Its food consists of deer and other large animals, the horns of which are heaped up 'round

the nest. The glance of its eyes produces lightning; it breaks through the clouds, the canopy of heaven, and makes a way for the rain. The isolated and peculiarly loud claps of thunder are produced by a gigantic tortoise, which lives in the clouds. When the lightning strikes it is a sign of anger. They believe the stars to be deceased men. When a child is born, a star descends and appears on the earth in human form; after its death it reascends and appears again as a star in the heavens.

"The rainbow is a spirit accompanying the sun, and is especially visible at its setting. Many affirm that the northern lights are occasioned by a large assembly of the medicine men and distinguished warriors of several nations in the north, who boil their prisoners and slain enemies in immense cauldrons. The Chippeways are said to call this phenomenon 'the dancing spirit,' and the milky way, 'the path of the ghosts.'

"The following account of the Mandan tradition of creation will be found to be substantially identical in its essential features with their current narratives on that head, though the latter as told to the writer is much briefer; as will be seen later on in this paper.

"Dipauch related a history of the creation and the origin of the Mandan tribe, in the following manner. Though this narrative is equally silly and tiresome, I subjoin it, as giving an idea of the intellectual condition of this people, and the nature of their conversations."

Mandan "Creation." "Before the existence of the earth, the lord of life created the first man, Numank-Machana, who moved on the waters, and met with a diver or duck, which was alternately diving and rising again. The man said to the bird, 'You dive so well, now dive deep and bring up some earth.' The bird obeyed, and soon brought up some earth, which the first man scattered upon the face of the waters, using some incantations, commanding the earth to appear, and it appeared. The land was naked; not a blade of grass growing on it; he wandered about and thought that he was alone, when he suddenly met with a toad. 'I thought I was here alone,' said he, 'but you are here, and who are you?' It did not answer. 'I do not know you, but I must give you a name. You are older than I am, for your skin is rough and scaly; I must call you my grandmother, for you are

so very old.' He went further and found a piece of an earthen pot. 'I thought I was here alone, but men must have lived here before me.' Thereupon he took the potsherd and said, 'I will give you also a name, and, as you were here before me, I must, likewise, call you my grandmother.' A little further he met with a mouse. 'It is clear,' said he to himself, 'that I am not the first being; I call you also my grandmother.' A little further on he and the lord of life met. 'Oh, there is a man like myself,' exclaimed he, and went up to him. 'How do you do, my son?' said the man to Omahank-Numakshi; but he answered, 'I am not your son, but you are mine.' The first man answered, 'I dispute this.' But the lord of life answered, 'You are my son, and I will prove it; if you will not believe me, we will sit down and plant our medicine sticks which we have in our hands in the ground; he who first rises is the youngest, and the son of the other.' They sat down and looked at each other for a long time, till, at length, the lord of life became pale, his flesh dropped from his bones, on which the first man exclaimed, 'Now you are surely dead.' Thus they looked at each other for ten years, at the end of which time, when the bare bones of the lord of life were in a decomposed state, the first man rose, exclaiming, 'Now he is surely dead.' He seized Omahank-Numakshi's stick, and pulled it out of the ground; but at the same moment the lord of life stood up, saying, 'See here, I am your father, and you are my son,' and the first man called him his father. As they were going on together the lord of life said, 'this land is not well formed, we will make it better.' At that time the buffalo were all ready on the earth. The lord of life called to the weasel, and ordered him to dive and bring up grass, which was done. He then sent him again to fetch wood, which he brought in like manner. He divided the grass and the wood, giving one-half to the first man. This took place at the mouth of Heart river. The lord of life then desired the first man to make the north bank of the Missouri, while he himself made the southwest bank, which is beautifully diversified with hills, valleys, forests, and thickets. The man, on the contrary, made the whole country flat, with a good deal of wood in the distance. They then met again, and, when the lord of life had seen the work of the first man, he shook his head and said, 'You have not done this well; all is too level, so that it will be

The first of these was the discovery of gold in California in 1848. This discovery led to a great influx of people to California, and the state became a free state in 1850. The second was the discovery of gold in Colorado in 1859. This discovery led to a great influx of people to Colorado, and the state became a free state in 1876. The third was the discovery of gold in Nevada in 1859. This discovery led to a great influx of people to Nevada, and the state became a free state in 1864. The fourth was the discovery of gold in Idaho in 1860. This discovery led to a great influx of people to Idaho, and the state became a free state in 1890. The fifth was the discovery of gold in Montana in 1865. This discovery led to a great influx of people to Montana, and the state became a free state in 1889. The sixth was the discovery of gold in Wyoming in 1869. This discovery led to a great influx of people to Wyoming, and the state became a free state in 1890. The seventh was the discovery of gold in Utah in 1871. This discovery led to a great influx of people to Utah, and the state became a free state in 1896. The eighth was the discovery of gold in Arizona in 1876. This discovery led to a great influx of people to Arizona, and the state became a free state in 1909. The ninth was the discovery of gold in New Mexico in 1878. This discovery led to a great influx of people to New Mexico, and the state became a free state in 1906. The tenth was the discovery of gold in Texas in 1880. This discovery led to a great influx of people to Texas, and the state became a free state in 1845.

The discovery of gold in California in 1848 was the first of a series of discoveries that led to the admission of new states to the Union. The discovery of gold in Colorado in 1859 led to the admission of Colorado as a free state in 1876. The discovery of gold in Nevada in 1859 led to the admission of Nevada as a free state in 1864. The discovery of gold in Idaho in 1860 led to the admission of Idaho as a free state in 1890. The discovery of gold in Montana in 1865 led to the admission of Montana as a free state in 1889. The discovery of gold in Wyoming in 1869 led to the admission of Wyoming as a free state in 1890. The discovery of gold in Utah in 1871 led to the admission of Utah as a free state in 1896. The discovery of gold in Arizona in 1876 led to the admission of Arizona as a free state in 1909. The discovery of gold in New Mexico in 1878 led to the admission of New Mexico as a free state in 1906. The discovery of gold in Texas in 1880 led to the admission of Texas as a free state in 1845.

The discovery of gold in California in 1848 was the first of a series of discoveries that led to the admission of new states to the Union. The discovery of gold in Colorado in 1859 led to the admission of Colorado as a free state in 1876. The discovery of gold in Nevada in 1859 led to the admission of Nevada as a free state in 1864. The discovery of gold in Idaho in 1860 led to the admission of Idaho as a free state in 1890. The discovery of gold in Montana in 1865 led to the admission of Montana as a free state in 1889. The discovery of gold in Wyoming in 1869 led to the admission of Wyoming as a free state in 1890. The discovery of gold in Utah in 1871 led to the admission of Utah as a free state in 1896. The discovery of gold in Arizona in 1876 led to the admission of Arizona as a free state in 1909. The discovery of gold in New Mexico in 1878 led to the admission of New Mexico as a free state in 1906. The discovery of gold in Texas in 1880 led to the admission of Texas as a free state in 1845.

The discovery of gold in California in 1848 was the first of a series of discoveries that led to the admission of new states to the Union. The discovery of gold in Colorado in 1859 led to the admission of Colorado as a free state in 1876. The discovery of gold in Nevada in 1859 led to the admission of Nevada as a free state in 1864. The discovery of gold in Idaho in 1860 led to the admission of Idaho as a free state in 1890. The discovery of gold in Montana in 1865 led to the admission of Montana as a free state in 1889. The discovery of gold in Wyoming in 1869 led to the admission of Wyoming as a free state in 1890. The discovery of gold in Utah in 1871 led to the admission of Utah as a free state in 1896. The discovery of gold in Arizona in 1876 led to the admission of Arizona as a free state in 1909. The discovery of gold in New Mexico in 1878 led to the admission of New Mexico as a free state in 1906. The discovery of gold in Texas in 1880 led to the admission of Texas as a free state in 1845.

impossible to surprise buffalos or deer, and approach them unperceived. Men will not be able to live there. They will see each other in the plains at too great a distance, and will be unable to avoid each other, consequently they will destroy each other.'

"He then took the first man to the other side of the river, and said, 'See here, I have made springs and streams in sufficient abundance, and hills and valleys, and added all kinds of animals and fine wood; here men will be able to live by the chase, and feed on the flesh of those animals.' They then both proceeded to the mouth of the Natke-Passaha (Heart river), in order, according to the directions of the lord of life, to make medicine pipes. He himself made them of ash, lined with stone. The man on the contrary made his pipes of box-elder, a soft wood. They placed these pipes together, and the lord of life said, 'This shall be the heart, the center of the world; and this river shall be the Heart river.' Each of them had now his pipe in his hand, and when they met any creature, the lord of life laid the pipe down before it; on doing this to a buffalo, it said, 'This is not enough; there must be something to smoke in the pipe,' and the lord of life said, 'Then do you get something to smoke.' On which the buffalo cleared a spot on the ground with his forefoot, and said, 'When the rutting time of the buffalos approaches, come here and you will find something to smoke.' The lord of life, according, sent at the time appointed, to fetch tobacco, but it was not yet dry and prepared; he therefore ordered the buffalo to be called, which at once spread out the leaves and dried them; and the lord of life smoked, and found the tobacco very good. The bull then taught him to pull off and smoke the flowers and the buds, for these are the very best parts of the plant.

"The lord of life and the first man were now resolved to create the human race. They began their operations near the bank of the Missouri; but the frog came up out of the water and said, 'How foolish you are.' 'What business have you to speak?' said the lord of life, and struck the frog upon the back with his stick, and since that time the frog has had a humped back. God had made man told him he should increase and multiply, but not live longer than a hundred years; since, otherwise, there would not be room enough for all. The first man now said to his father,

'When buffalos are hunted, the skins of the animals killed must be immediately taken off to wear as robes, the stomach must be emptied, and pemican made of the flesh.' The lord of life, however, answered, 'This would not be advisable. Men would then quarrel and destroy each other. Let them rather take the animals home, and tan the hides, then they will have robes for their own use, and for sale.' And it appeared that the lord of life was always right.'***

What next follows in this tradition of the "creation" may be compared with the reference to the "boats with wings" (sails?) referred to by a Mandan Indian in 1906 when interviewed by the writer; both accounts indicating a crossing of the sea or ocean. See the later account, further on in this paper.

"A saying was then current among these people, that on the other side of the great water, or the sea, there lived white men, who possessed wampum shells. Bodies of fifteen or twenty men were frequently sent thither, but they were all killed. Hereupon the chief said, 'I will send my boat thither, with eight men; this is the right number.' And the boat went, arrived at the right place, and brought to the white men the red mouse hair (beaver hair), which they highly value. They were well received, feasted in the dwellings, and materials for smoking were given them. Each received buffalo skins filled with wampum shells, and the boat returned quickly. The boat then went, for the second time, with eleven men, and the lord of life accompanied it. He had dressed himself in mean apparel, and took with him a large hollow cane. On their arrival they went into a village, but the first man remained sitting near the boat, and dug a deep hole, over which he seated himself. The inhabitants of the village agreed to kill the strangers by overfeeding them, and, with this view, gave them abundance of food. The first man to whom the overplus of the provisions was brought, let them drop through his cane into the hole, and the white men were astonished at the quantity of provisions consumed. They then agreed to kill them by smoke; but the first man made the smoke pass through his cane, and their plan was again defeated. As they could not kill the strangers either by eating or smoking they gave them as many wampum shells as they could take in their boat, and sent them away. When the children learned that the boat understood what

was said to it, they ordered it to go down the river to the white people; it obeyed, and was never afterwards seen.

"The first man now said to the Numangkake that he should leave them, and never return; that he was going to the west; but that in case of need, they might apply to him, and he would assist them. They were living in a small village, on the Heart river, when their enemies surrounded them, and threatened to destroy them. In this great distress they resolved to apply to their protector; but how were they to get to the first man? One man proposed to send a bird to him; but birds could not fly so far. Another thought that the eyesight might be able to reach him; but the prairie hills were in the way. At last, a third said that thought would undoubtedly be the best means of reaching the first man. He wrapped himself in his robe and fell to the ground. Soon afterwards he said, 'I think—I have thought—I return.' He threw off his robe, and was in a profuse perspiration all over. 'The first man will quickly come,' he exclaimed; and he was soon there, fell furiously on the enemy, drove them away, and immediately vanished. Since that time he has not been again seen.

"The lord of life once told the first man, that if the Numangkake should go over the river they would be devoured by the wolves; on which they both crossed the river, and killed all the old wolves. They ordered the young wolves not to devour men in the future, but to confine themselves to buffalos, deer, and other wild animals. They threw the old wolves into the north ocean where they became putrid, and their hair swam on the surface of the water, from which the white man originated. The lord of life also told the Numangkake, that when they had boiled their maize they should keep up only a small fire for the rest of the day; and this they still do. When the fire would not burn, they were to take the larger brands from below, and lay them on the top. When the lord of life was a little below Heart river, in the spring when the first wild geese flew past, he told them to wait, because he would fly with them, and assume the form of a goose. The Indians are accustomed to shout and halloo when they see the flocks of geese, by which they are frightened and thrown into confusion. So it happened on this occasion to the lord of life, and he fell to the ground. He was carried into the hut of the chief, who sent for the youngest woman to pluck the

goose, but it bit her, and she gave it to the oldest, who was likewise bitten; so that the lord of life escaped. He then flew to the Minnetarees. A young woman, who refused to marry, was here whipped and beaten by him. She went to the lower village, and complained that God had punished her, because she would not marry. A young man who wished to have her for his wife, took the dress of the lord of life, as she was resolved to marry none but him. She now desired to know whether her lover was really what he pretended to be, and with this view placed some pointed sticks in the ground, on which he must wound himself in the night, if he were not of a superior nature. He came and wounded himself, on which she fell on him, took away all his clothes and hid them, so that he looked for a long time both for them and his weapons. When day came, two long lines, like fishing lines, were hanging down from the sun to the earth, and near to the place where the girl was. A voice called to her, from above, to climb up by the lines; that the clothes were no longer in the place where she had hidden them; it was, therefore, the lord of life who had appeared to her under the form of the young man. The girl took hold of the lines, and the sun seemed to come down. Several of her relations, and other men, pulled the lines, but could not draw the sun down, while the lord of life lay quietly in it. A very strong man, who was able to pull up the largest trees by the roots, and cast them from him, was not able to do anything on this occasion; the line turned around his shoulders. 'I can pull up the largest trees,' said he, 'and my strength is greater than that of all other men united, and yet I cannot break this small line.' To which the lord of life answered, 'If you reach and kill me, the human race will be destroyed from the face of the earth.' "

The Ark. "At the time that the first man had incensed the whites by his voracity, the latter made the water rise so high that all the land was overflowed. On this, the first man advised the ancestors of the Numangkake to build a wooden tower or fort, upon an eminence, assuring them that the water would not rise higher than that point. They followed his advise, and built the ark, on the lower side of the Heart river, on a large scale, and a part of the nation was preserved in this building, while the remainder perished in the waves. In remembrance of the kind care

of the first man, they placed in each of their villages a miniature model of this ark, one of which still exists in the village of Mih-Tutta-Hang-Kush. The waters afterwards subsided, and they still celebrate the festival of Okippe in honor of this ark, of which we shall have to speak in the sequel.²⁵

"Before the first great deluge, the Numangkake lived below ground, but a band of them (the same of which we have been speaking) took up their abode above ground at an earlier period. They believe that there are four stories below ground and as many above, and they now inhabit the fourth from below. The band which first came from above ground is called by them Histoppa (those of the tattooed countenance), and these for the most part, perished in the great deluge. Those who lived under ground one day perceived a light over their heads, which made them desire to ascertain what was above. They accordingly sent up a mouse, which looked about, returned, and reported that the land above was similar as that which they inhabited. Then sent up a certain animal, called by them, Nahsi, about the size of a pole cat, and distinguished by black stripes on its face and legs, Perhaps this was the racoon, which is not now to be found in this part of the country. This animal, when he came back, said that it was much more pleasant above than below. They, therefore, ordered the badger to dig a larger opening, as the present issue was too small. After the badger had performed his task, the black-tailed deer was ordered to go and enlarge the opening by means of his horns. He ran about the whole day, ate service berries, and returned in the evening. His tail was at that time white, but as this deer returned at sunset, and the sun went down at the very moment when his tail only was above ground, that was ever afterwards black."

It will be noted in the following paragraph, that the coming up "above ground" occurred near "the sea shore," and that those who came up "went on" and reached the Missouri at the mouth of White river—being that river in South Dakota; that they then "proceeded up the Missouri to Moreau's river;" that they then had "no enemies," and that the first attack was by Cheyennes. It is worthy of notice in this connection that the Cheyennes probably reached the Missouri river in the neighborhood of the beginning of the eighteenth century. It is still more

significant, in connection with the question of the former habitat of the Mandans, that this definite statement that they came up the Missouri to the Moreau river, shows that their traditions clearly placed them at one time as residents on the Missouri at least sixty miles south of the North Dakota line.

Climb the Grapevine. "The Numangkake now resolved to go up. The great chief with his medicine and his schischikue in his hand, went first. They climbed up, one after another by the aid of a branch of a vine; and when exactly half their number had ascended, and a corpulent woman was half way up the vine, it broke, and the remainder of the nation fell to the ground. This happened in the neighborhood of the sea shore. Those who had reached the surface went on till they came to the Missouri, which they reached at White Earth river.²⁸ They then proceeded up the Missouri to Moreau's river. At that time they knew nothing of enemies. Once, when a Mandan woman was scraping a hide, a Cheyenne Indian came and killed her. The Mandans followed the traces of this new enemy till they came to a certain river, where they all turned back with the exception of two, the husband and the brother of the woman who was killed. These two men went on till they discovered the enemy, killed one of them and took his scalp with them. Before they got back to their village they found some white clay which they had never seen before, and took a portion of it with them. When they came to their great chief, the first man who had climbed up the vine, and whose skull and schischikue they still preserve, as a relic, in the medicine bag of the nation, they gave him the white clay, with which he marked some lines on his schischikue. The name of this chief was, at first, Mihti-Pihka (the smoke of the village), but when he ascended to the surface of the earth he called himself the Mihti-Shi (the robe with the beautiful hair). When he had received the clay and the scalp, he commanded all his people to shoot buffalos, but only bulls, and to make shields of the thickest part of the hide, which they did. When this was done, they asked the chief what were his next commandments. To which he replied, 'Paint a drooping sunflower on this shield' (as a sort of medicine or amulet), on which the sister of the chief said, 'You are fools; paint a bean on it; for what is smoother than a bean to ward off the arrows.'

"The chief now introduced the establishment of the bands or unions, and founded first that of 'the foolish dogs.' He made four caps of crows' feathers, and commissioned the Mandans to make a number of similar ones. He then gave them the war pipe and song, and exhorted them to be always valiant and cheerful, and never to retreat before the point of the arrow. He also gave them the strips of red cloth which hang down behind, and added that, if they would follow his directions, they would always be esteemed as brave and worthy men. The chief then made two of the bent sticks covered with otter skins, and gave them the *kana-kara-kachka*, and then two others adorned with raven's feathers, which he also presented to them. The first represent the sunflower, and the latter the maize. 'These badges,' said he, 'you are to carry before you when you go against the enemy; plant them in the ground, and fight to the last man, that is to say, never abandon them.' He next founded the band of 'the little foolish dogs,' and assembled many young men, whom he ordered to paint their faces of a black color, and gave them a song of their own, with the war whoop at the end, and said he would call them the 'black-birds.' He afterwards went to war with his people against the Cheyennes. They reached the enemy and laid all their robes in a heap together. The chief wore a cap of lynx skin, and had his medicine pipe on his arm. He did not join in the action, but sat apart on the ground during the whole time that it lasted. They fought almost the whole day, drove the enemy into their village, and were then repulsed, which happened three or four times, and one of the Numangkake was killed. When the chief was informed of this, he ordered them to go to the river and bring a young poplar with large leaves, which he planted in the ground near to the enemy, and challenged the Cheyennes to attack him; but they answered, they would wait for his attack. As he would not commence the combat, the enemy shot at him, but their arrows only grazed his arm and robe. He then held up the poplar, which suddenly shot up to a colossal size, was thrown, by a violent storm which arose, among the enemies, crushed many of them, and obliged the Cheyennes to retreat across the Missouri."

The tradition of the "creation" now merges into something more modern, as it is seen that what next occurs in the narrative

pertains to the coming of the Minnetarees—supposedly from the Devil's Lake region.

“The Numangkake now went up the Missouri to beyond the Heart river, where a Mandan village had long stood. An old man of their tribe was fishing at this place, when four men appeared on the opposite bank. On his inquiring who they were, they told him their names, and put the same question to him, which he answered; and, having an ear of maize with him, he fastened it to an arrow and shot it over to the strangers. Finding the maize very agreeable to the taste, they called to him, and said that within four nights, a great many men would come, for whom he would do well to prepare plenty of food. They then returned to their camp, and gave their countrymen an account of the maize. They had likewise tasted the pomme blanche, and several other vegetables, but considered the maize as the best of all. The camp was accordingly broken up, and they proceeded slowly onwards. The Numangkake expected the strangers for four nights; they cooked and made everything ready for their reception, but, as their visitors did not make their appearance at the end of the fourth night, they ate the provisions themselves. A year passed by and the strangers did not come; the second and the third year likewise; at length, in the spring of the fourth year, all the surrounding hills were covered with red men. Thus instead of four days four years had elapsed. The new comers crossed the river, and built a village near the Numangkake, and the name of Minnetarees was given, i. e., those who came over the waters.²⁷

“The principal chief of each nation met, and had a conference together. The Minnetaree chief asked the other whence they procured so much red maize? To which he replied, ‘When we fought with our enemies, and they killed our wives and children in the maize fields, the maize grew up, and for the most part red.’ To which the Minnetaree chief replied, ‘That he would assist them with his people against their enemies.’ Already on the following day many Cheyennes came and killed a number of women in the plantations; the united nations attacked them, killed many during the whole day, and drove them back to a small river which falls into the Missouri. The two allied nations now remained united, but, being so numerous that the country did not afford

them sufficient subsistence, the Mandans said to the Minnetarees, 'Remove higher up the Missouri; this whole country belongs to us. There are the rivers Little Missouri, Yellowstone and Knife river, on the banks of which you can settle, but do not go beyond the latter river, for it is only in this case that we shall remain good friends. If you go too far we shall have disputes, make peace and again disagree; but if you remain on this side there will be constant friendship between us.' The Minnetarees removed as proposed, but built one of their villages on the other side of Knife river, which frequently occasioned dissension between them, and it is only within these fourteen years that permanent peace and concord have existed between the two people.'

It thus appears that the Minnetarees were allies of the Mandans; and it next appears that not very many years before Maximilian was at the Mandan villages (1833-4) and when Dipauch "was a young man," the Rees and Cheyennes and not the Sioux who were too far away, were their enemies; also that when this alliance occurred the Mandans were scattered on both sides of the Missouri, and not (as Lewis and Clarke declare but which their detailed narrative disproves) mostly on the east side.

"At the time when our narrator was a young man, the Arikaras were near and dangerous enemies to the Mandans. They often fought with them as well as with the Sioux. When one of the two allied nations fought alone, it was almost always defeated, but when they were combined they generally triumphed. The preceding long narrative throws, as I have said, much light on the actual condition of this people, and of their prevalent superstitious customs.

"At the time of their first alliance with the Minnetarees, the Mandans are said to have inhabited eight or nine villages on the two banks of the Missouri on the Heart river, and higher upwards. Subsequently a great number of the Mandans were carried off by the smallpox, and their enemies, the Sioux, entirely destroyed their largest village, and massacred the inhabitants. The remaining population then collected in the two villages that still exist—Mih-Tutta-Hang-Kush and Ruhptare. Previously to the devastations of the smallpox, the Sioux were not very dangerous enemies to the Mandans, because they lived at too great a distance from them, but the Cheyennes and the Arikaras were

their natural adversaries. I shall now proceed to treat of the religious and superstitious practices which still prevail among them."

Religion—Guardian Spirit—Medicine-Pipes. "These Indians are full of prejudice and superstitions, and connect all the natural phenomena with the before mentioned silly creations of their own imaginations. They undertake nothing without first invoking their guardian spirit, or medicine, who mostly appears to them in a dream. When they wish to choose their medicine or guardian spirit, they fast for three or four days and even longer, retire to a solitary spot, do penance, and even sacrifice joints of their fingers; howl and cry to the lord of life, or to the first man, beseeching him to point out their guardian spirit. They continue in this excited state till they dream, and the first animal or other object which appears to them is chosen for their guardian spirit or medicine.

"Every man has his guardian spirit. There is, in the prairie, a large hill where they remain motionless many days, lamenting and fasting; not far from this hill is a cave, into which they creep at night. The choice and adoration of their medicine is said to have been taught them by the strange man or spirit who appeared in their villages many years ago, and has not since been seen, and of whom mention has already been made by the name of Ochkih-Hadda. He is said also to have taught them the art of tattooing, and to have instituted their medicine feasts. In all natural phenomena, which are not of daily occurrence, they see wonders, and indications of favorable or unfavorable events. If the falling stars are numerous, or in a certain direction, it is to them an indication of war, or of a great mortality in the human race. They were not willing to have their portraits painted, because they alleged that they should soon die if their portraits came into other hands; at least they endeavored to obtain the portrait of the painter as an antidote. One of their chiefs never smoked out of a stone pipe, but always used a wooden one. Mato-Tope never partook of other people's tobacco but always smoked by himself, with the doors shut. They do not willingly show their medicine or amulets, which are usually kept wrapped up in a bundle or bag, and never opened except on important occasions. They have particular medicine-pipes, or, as the English call them, medicine

stems, which are uncovered and used for smoking only on solemn occasions. Many make such pipes according to their own taste; such, for instance, was the pipe of Dipauch. The bowl was nearly in the form of a Turkish pipe, and it was made of brownish red clay; the tube, which was rather short and thick, represented the lord of life in human form, but which it required some stretch of imagination to discover. The nation preserves a celebrated pipe of this kind as a sacred relic, which no stranger is permitted to see. It has been in their possession since remote ages, and they offer to show it to me for the value of 100 dollars. The Indians cannot obtain such pipes but at a considerable expense; many of the necessary ornaments are not to be procured among them, such as the upper bill and the red crown of a species of woodpecker, a bird which is not found so high up the Missouri. For the head of one of these woodpeckers, which was brought from St. Louis, they gave a large handsome buffalo robe, worth six or eight dollars. If a man possesses such a pipe he sometimes conceives the idea of adopting a medicine son. The young man whom he is to choose appears to him in a dream; it is, however, requisite that he should be of a good family, or have performed some exploit. He acquaints him of his intention, and after having provided two similar medicine-pipes, he asks his newly adopted son, whether he is ready to undergo the ceremony of the pipes. The latter frequently answers in the affirmative, and the time for the ceremony is fixed; but if he has not yet made up his mind it is deferred. The adoptive father then chooses two young men, who practice the medicine dance together, with the two pipes in their hands. The father often dances, in the morning, on the roof of his hut, and instructs these two young men. When the time arrives and the adopted son is ready for the ceremony, the father, with all his relations, and the two young dancers, repairs to the hut of his newly-chosen son, and brings him a present of maize, cloth, blankets, kettles, and other valuable articles. The father takes his son by the hand and makes him sit down, after which the company dance around him, with the two pipes; they sing accompanied by the drum and schischikue, the two young dancers keeping time to the music with their pipes. When the ceremony is over, and the presents laid in one or two heaps, the relations of the medicine son bring horses, cloth, blankets, and other things of

value, which the two parties reciprocally divide between them. The father then again takes his son by the hand, makes him rise from his seat, and dresses him in new clothes from head to foot, and likewise paints his face according to his fancy. The dress and pipe are henceforth his property, and he is considered as a real son, who must support and defend his father. This custom exists among most of the nations on the Missouri, and even among the Esquimaux there is a somewhat similar usage. If the adopted son and father have not happened to meet for a long time, they make presents to each other; the father gives the son a new dress, and the latter presents him with a good horse. Among all the Indian nations of North America, there is a particular class of men, who are specially engaged in all the above mentioned ceremonies—and medicines. They are, also, the physicians, and are called, among the Mandans, Numak-Choppenih, (which signifies medicine-man).”

White Buffalo Skin. “The skin of a white buffalo cow is an important article and an eminent medicine in the opinion of the Mandans and Minnetarees. He who has never possessed one of them is not respected. Suppose two men to be disputing about their exploits, the one an old veteran warrior, who has slain many enemies, the other, a young lad without experience; the latter reproaches the other with never having possessed a white buffalo cow hide, on which the old man droops his head and covers his face for shame. He who possesses such a hide generally offers it to the lord of life, to whom he dedicates it, or which is equivalent to the sun, or to the first man. He collects, perhaps, in the course of a whole twelve month, various articles of value, and then hangs them up all together on a high pole in the open prairie, generally in the neighborhood of the burying place, or in the village before his hut. Distinguished men and chiefs of eminence are for the most part poor, because in order to gain reputation and influence, they give away every thing of value which they possess. A large number of relatives is one of the chief means of acquiring riches, for a young man who wishes to distinguish himself and to be liberal, does honor to the whole family, who assist him to the utmost of their power. When one of his relations has anything of value, the young man goes to the owner to demand it, and not infrequently takes it away without ceremony. Sometimes he

hangs his head in silence and then something of value is given him, a handsome dress, a horse, etc. If he wishes to gain reputation and a claim to distinction, it is necessary that he should make presents. All the people in the village notice very accurately what presents are made, and the donor has a right to display all such presents painted on his robes, and in this manner to hand down his reputation to posterity, as has been already related. This and military glory are, in the eyes of these men, the greatest virtues. They dare not draw a stroke too much on their robes for their horses, guns, etc., which they have given away, for the young men keep a most strict account against each other, and universal ridicule would be the immediate consequence of violating this rule. Among the distinctions of any man, the white buffalo hide is the greatest. He who has not been so fortunate as to kill a white buffalo himself, which is generally the case, as these animals are very rare, purchases a hide, often at a great distance from home, and other nations bring them thither, being well aware of the great value attached to them by the Mandans. The hide must be that of a young cow, not above two years old, and be taken off complete and tanned, with the horns, nose, hoofs and tail. The value of ten or fifteen horses is given for it. A certain Mandan gave ten horses, a gun, some kettles, and other articles for such a hide. The white hide of a bull or of an old cow is by no means so valuable. The white hide of a young cow suffices for all the daughters of a family. They do not wear it as a robe, like the Minnetarees, or, at the utmost, the wife, or one of the daughters of the family, wears it once at some great festival, but never a second time. The Mandans have particular ceremonies at the dedication of the hide. As soon as they have obtained it they engage an eminent medicine-man, who must throw it over him; he then walks around the village in the apparent direction of the sun's course, and sings a medicine song. When the owner, after collecting articles of value for three or four years, desires to offer his treasure to the lord of life, or to the first man, he rolls it up, after adding some wormwood or a head of maize, and the skin then remains suspended on a high pole till it rots away. At the time of my visit there was such an offering at Mih-Tutta-Hang-Kush, near the stages for the dead without the village. Sometimes, when the ceremony of dedication is finished, the hide

is cut into small strips, and the members of the family wear parts of it tied over the head, or across the forehead, when they are in full dress. If a Mandan kills a young white buffalo cow, it is accounted to him as more than an exploit, or having killed an enemy, he does not cut up the animal himself, but employs another man, to whom he gives a horse for his trouble. He alone who has killed such an animal is allowed to wear a narrow strip of the skin in his ears. The whole robe is not ornamented, being esteemed superior to any other dress, however fine. The traders have sometimes sold such hides to the Indians, who gave them as many as sixty other robes in exchange. Buffalo skins with white spots are likewise highly valued by the Mandans; but there is a race of these animals with very soft silky hair, which has a beautiful gold luster when in the sunshine; these are likewise, highly prized, and sold for ten or fifteen dollars, and sometimes for the value of a horse. Besides the white buffalo skins which are offered in sacrifice and hung on poles, there are, in the vicinity of the villages of the Mandans and Minnetarees, other strange figures on high poles. These figures are composed of skin, grass, and twigs, which, it seems, represent the sun and moon, perhaps also, the lord of life, and the first man. The Indians resort to them when they wish to petition for anything, and sometimes howl and lament for days and weeks together."

Medicine Festivals—The Ark. "The Mandans have several medicine festivals, of which the Okippe, or the penitential ceremony of the ark, is by far the most remarkable. It is celebrated in the spring or summer, and I regret to say that I cannot describe it as an eye witness. I am, however, enabled to give a circumstantial description of it, word for word, as it was communicated to me by men initiated in the mysteries of the nation.²⁸

"Numank-Machana, the first man, ordered the Numangkake to celebrate this medicine feast every year.²⁹ When the village has fixed the time for this festivity, they choose a man of distinction, in whom confidence can be placed, who must put himself at the head, and direct the solemnities. In the year 1834 Mato-Tope was chosen. He is called Kani-Sachka. This man then causes the medicine-lodge to be prepared and cleaned before the appointed time, and wood and other necessities to be provided.

"First day of the Okippe: At sunset the Kani-Sachka goes

into the lodge, and begins the fast, which continues four days. With him are six men, who are to strike what is called the tortoise, a vessel or sack made of parchment, and filled with water. Three of the men must strike in the direction of the river downwards, and three in the direction upwards. They strike the tortoise during the whole night. Before sun-rise a man representing the Numank-Machana, or the first man, arrives. He dresses himself in the medicine-lodge in the following manner: 'Round his body he fastens a wolf's skin, on his head, raven's feathers, in his arms he carries the medicine-pipe, and in his robe a portion of pemmican. His face is painted red, and on the small of the back he binds a piece of wood, to which the tail of a buffalo cow is fastened. Dressed in this manner, he goes early in the morning of the first day of the festival, and sings on the open space in the center. All kinds of valuable articles, such as guns, robes, blankets, etc., are thrown towards him, of which he afterwards takes possession, while on his part he distributes pemmican among the people. He then returns to the medicine-lodge, but is not at that time permitted to speak a word. The most eminent men of the nation now come to the lodge, address the first man as their uncle, and say, 'Well, uncle, how did you fare in the villages? How did you find them? Were you well received?' To which he replies, 'Very well nephew. I have not once lowered my pipe to the ground.' By which he means to say that he has received ample presents, and offerings of all kinds have been hung upon his pipe. He then says, 'I have seen a great many buffalos feeding in the prairie and drinking at the river; they are very abundant everywhere.' These were the horses; but he means to intimate that, by the medicine of this day, the buffalos will be attracted in great numbers. All those who intend to submit their bodies to a penance of certain tortures, in order to render themselves acceptable to the lord of life and the first man, come to the medicine-lodge early in the morning. Their number is, of course, uncertain; sometimes many present themselves, at other times only a few. They are smeared all over with white clay, with no other covering besides their robes, with the hair side outwards, and drawn over their heads, so that the head is covered, and they are quite wrapped up in them. In the medicine-lodge they lay aside their robes. On the first day of the feast they go

four times, wrapped up as before described, and dance around the ark, which stands in the center of the open space. The Kani-Sachka remains during all this time moaning and leaning against the ark. All this is done in the forenoon. In the afternoon all is silent, and neither dance nor procession takes place.

“Second day of the Okippe: On the second day, early in the morning, eight men appear, who represent buffalo bulls. They are naked, wearing only an apron of blue and white striped woolen cloth. Their body is painted black in front, with two red perpendicular stripes like the facings of a military uniform, and with several white transverse stripes looking like lace or bands. The forearm and ankles are alternately striped white and red. In their hands they carry a fan of green willow twigs, and on their back a buffalo robe, the head of which, with the long hair on the forehead hangs over the face. To the middle of the robe a single buffalo horn is fastened, while at the head and loins green willow branches are appended. The eight buffalo bulls put on this fantastic dress in the lodge, and, when this is done, march out two abreast in an inclined posture, and extending their robes with outspread hands, and holding the willow fans upright. In this manner they dance up to the ark, where they divide, four going to the left and four to the right 'round the space. They again join opposite the medicine-lodge, and then return as before to the ark, where they continue to dance. When they are opposite to each other they stand upright and imitate the roaring of the buffalo. As soon as this dance begins, the six tortoise strikers bring their instrument from the center of the lodge, and place it near the ark in an easterly direction, striking it, and singing a certain song which is said to be a prayer. The Kani-Sachka stands, with his head bowed, leaning on the ark, directly opposite the tortoise, and moans without ceasing. He is quite naked except an apron of buffalo skin. His whole body is bedaubed with yellow, and on his forehead he has a wreath of bleached buffalo hair or wool hanging over his eyes. The eight buffalo bulls form a ring and dance around him, covering him with their robes: they dance in like manner to the tortoise, and next go to the door of the medicine-lodge, where they make a kind of covered way with their robes, beneath which the tortoise is conveyed into the lodge. The whole ceremony is repeated eight times on this

day, four times in the morning and four times in the afternoon.³⁰

"Third day of the Okippe: The same masks as yesterday dance on this day twelve times, and are prohibited from either eating or drinking. A number of other masks join them. 1. Two men, dressed like women, who dance in this costume, keeping by the side of the eight buffalo bulls. They wear clothes of bighorn leather, women's leggins (mitasses), the robes having the hair outwards. Their cheeks are painted red, their chins tattooed, and their heads adorned with glass beads, as is the custom among the women. 2. Two other men represent a couple of swans; they are naked, carry a swan's tail in their hand, are painted all over white, only the nose, mouth (representing the bill), and the lower part of the legs and feet, black. 3. A couple of rattlesnakes; the back is painted with black transverse stripes, in imitation of those animals, the front of the body yellowish; a black line is drawn from each eye down the cheeks and in each hand they carry a bunch of wormwood. 4. One man represents the evil spirit; he is conducted by two men of the village to the river, where he is dressed and painted; his entire body is painted black, and, as soon as this is done, he is not permitted to speak a word. They put on his head a cap, with a black cock's comb; he likewise wears a mask, with white woolen rings left for the opening 'round the eyes. They then make for him large teeth of cotton yarn, paint the sun upon his stomach, the crescent upon his back, and on each joint of the arms and legs, a white circle; they then put on a buffalo's tail, and place a small stick in his hand, with a ball, made of skin, at the end, to which a scalp, painted red on the under side, is fastened. The ball represents the head of an enemy. When this monster is completed, they let him loose, and he runs, like one possessed, about the prairie, comes into the village, gets upon the huts, one after the other, and prys into every corner, while the inhabitants throw out to him all kinds of valuable articles as presents. As soon as he perceives this he turns towards the sun, and intimates to it, by signs, how well he is treated, and that it is foolish of it, (the sun) to keep at so great a distance. The Indians are very much afraid of the devil, for which reason this part cannot be assigned to anybody; but he who wishes to perform it must offer himself. My informant added that this medicine feast was once celebrated on the banks of Heart river,

where the Mandans then resided, and the man who had undertaken this part was conducted into the river. When his clothes were taken off, in order to paint and dress him, he appeared very uneasy, and required to be let loose; and when this was done he seemed as one possessed by the evil spirit, and ran, with the velocity of an arrow, on the hills and about the plain. His two attendants were alarmed, and pursued him to the village, but the new demon darted past them, leaped over the high fence of the village, jumped down into the huts, and again made his egress, and then ran to the river; this now convinced them that he was possessed. It cost the inhabitants much trouble to catch and wash him, but he trembled like an aspen leaf, wrapped himself in his robe, and continued in this condition for the remainder of his life without ever speaking a word.³¹ While the devil is walking about, the other masks continue dancing, and act in conformity with their parts, endeavoring to imitate the natural attitudes of the animals they represent. 5. Two men, representing white-headed eagles, are painted of a dark brown color; the head, neck, forearm and hands, and the lower part of the legs, are white; they carry a stick in their hands, and their business is to pursue the antelopes. 6. Are two beavers; they wear the robe with the hairy side outwards, have a piece of parchment resembling a beaver's tail, fastened to their girdle, and are painted brown. 7. Are two birds of prey; their shoulders are blue, the breast yellowish and spotted; they have feathers on their heads, and the feet of birds of prey in their hands. 8. Are two or four bears (mato), wrapped in bear's skins, with the head and claws, which cover the head and their whole body; they generally walk in a stooping attitude about the dancers, and growl like those animals. 9. Two men represent the dried meat which is cut in small strips. They wear a cap of white hare skin; their body is painted with zig-zag stripes; round the waist they have a girdle of green boughs, and they dance with the others. 10. Forty or fifty Indians of different ages perform the part of antelopes; they are painted red on the backs, the rest of the body and limbs are white, the nose and mouth black; they carry small sticks, and run about very swiftly. 11. Two men personate the night; they are naked, painted quite black, with white stars; on their backs they have the setting moon, and on their breast the rising sun;

they are not allowed to sit, during the whole day, till the sun has set; they then sit down and must not rise till the next morning. 12. Are one or two wolves; they are painted white, wear a wolf's skin, and pursue the antelopes, which fly before them; if they catch one the bears come and take it from them and devour it. All these animals imitate the originals to the best of their power. 13. Two prairie wolves; the tops of their heads are painted white, their faces yellowish-brown; they wear dry herbs in their hair, and carry in their hands a stick, painted with reddish-brown stripes, and run in the prairie before the other animals when they leave the village. Almost all these animals are said to have different songs, with words, which the uninitiated do not understand; they sometimes practice these songs for a whole summer, and are frequently obliged to pay a high price for instruction. Originally there were only ten masks at this festival. The white-headed eagles, the beavers, and the prairie wolves, are a modern addition, and no part of the true ancient observance of it. When all these animals come together they fight with each other, and perform all sorts of antics. Every animal acts according to its natural character; the beavers strike with their tails, making a loud clapping noise; the buffalos roll and wallow in the sand; the bears strike with their paws, etc.

"During all of these masquerade dances, the penitents have remained three entire days in the medicine-lodge, where they have fasted and thirsted, sitting perfectly still and quiet. On the afternoon of that day, the persons of the ten masks also meet in the medicine-lodge, and all together then leave the place. The penitents lie down on their bellies, in a circle 'round the ark, at some distance from it; the masks dance among them and over them, to the sound of the schischikue. Some already begin to suffer the tortures; they give a gun, a blanket, or some other article of value, to an eminent person, to inflict the tortures on them. During this time the Kani-Sachka has been moaning, and leaning on the ark. The tortures of the penitents now begin. In many of them strips of skin and flesh are cut from the breast, or the arms and on the back, but in such a manner that they remain fast at both ends. A strap is then passed under them, and the sufferers are thrown over the declivity of the bank, where they remain suspended in the air; others have a strap drawn

through the wound, to which the head of a buffalo is fastened, and they are obliged to drag this heavy weight about; others have themselves suspended by the muscles of the back; others have joints of their fingers cut off; others again, are lifted up by the flesh, which is cut across the stomach, or have some heavy body suspended to the muscles, which have been cut and loosened, and other similar tortures. Those who have been tortured on this day return directly to their huts; but those who can bear to fast longer do not submit themselves to the torture till the fourth day.

"Fourth day of the Okippe: All those who have endured fasting for four days are now assembled in the medicine-lodge. Such as feel themselves faint beg that the dancing may begin early. Accordingly the masquerade, and the dances performed yesterday, begin at day-break. They dance on this day sixteen times—eight times in the morning, and eight times in the afternoon. The candidates for the torture are out about two o'clock in the afternoon; and when they have suffered to the utmost of their power, a large circle is formed; two men who have no part in the festival, take one of the penitents between them, hold him by the hand, and the whole circle moves around with the greatest rapidity. The Kani-Sachka is likewise treated in this manner. The famished and tortured penitents, for the most part, soon fall down, and many faint away, but no regard is paid to this; they are dragged and pulled about as long as they can possibly bear it; they are then let loose, and remain stretched on the ground as if dead. The eight buffalo bulls now come forward to execute their last dance. Meantime, Numank-Machiana (the first man) stands on one side of the place, and invites the inhabitants to assemble. The men come on foot and on horseback, with their bows and arrows; the arrows are adorned with green leaves at the wooden points; and when the eight buffalos have approached, dancing, the first man, and been repulsed by him, they are shot at from all sides, fall, roll on the ground, and then lie still as if dead. The first man then invites the inhabitants to take the flesh of the buffalos. The latter whose robes have already fallen off, rise, and retire into the medicine-lodge. Then the dancers divide into two parties, extend their arms and legs, strike themselves on the stomach, exclaiming that they feel themselves strong; some that

they will kill enemies; others that they will slay many buffalos, etc. They then retire, take food, and rest themselves, and the festival is concluded.

"The wounds that have been inflicted on this occasion are now healed, but they remain visible during the whole life, like thick swollen weals. This is to be observed in a much higher degree among the Minnetarees than among the Mandans; the former seem to submit to much more severe tortures. The buffalo skulls, which these Indians have dragged about with much pain, are preserved in their huts, where they are everywhere to be seen, to be handed down from the father to the children. Many such heads are looked upon by them as medicine; they are kept in the huts, and sometimes the Indians stroke them over the nose, and set food before them. In general, the buffalo is a medicine animal, and more or less saered."

Buffalo Festival. "Another very remarkable medicine festival is that for attracting the heads of buffalos, which is usually celebrated in the autumn or winter. I shall describe this festival, as an eye witness among the Minnetarees, where it is observed precisely in the same manner as among the Mandans. At this festival they leave their wives to the older men, and individual Indians do the same on certain occasions, when they desire to ask good wishes for the attainment of some object they have in view. A man in this case, goes, with his pipe, and accompanied by his wife, who wears no clothes except her buffalo robe, to another hut. The wife carries a dish of boiled maize, which she sets down before a third person, and the man does the same with his pipe. The woman then passes the palm of her hand down the whole arm of the person favored in this manner, takes him by the hand, and he must follow her to a retired spot, generally to the forest surrounding the huts in the winter time; after which she returns and repeats the same process, often with eight or ten men. As soon as the man so favored has resumed his seat, the person who asks his good wishes presents his pipe to him that he may smoke; whereupon he expresses his best wishes for the success of the undertaking or project in hand. By way of returning thanks his arm is again stroked."

In connection with the "Corn Dance" next described by Maximilian, the idea of symbolizing corn as representative of the

fruits of the earth, in the simile of the immortal old woman, is borne out by the tradition of today as seen in the Mandan accounts given to the writer, wherein the term "Corn Mother" is used—as shown in a later stage of this paper.

Corn Dance. "A third medicine feast is that described by Say, by name of the corn dance of the Minnetarees. He is pretty correct in his account of it, and it is used as well among the Mandans as the Minnetarees. It is a consecration of the grain to be sown, and is called the corn dance feast of the women. The old woman who never dies sends in the spring, the water-fowl, swans, geese, and ducks, as symbols of the kinds of grain cultivated by the Indians. The wild goose signifies maize; the swan, the gourd; and the duck, beans. It is the old woman that causes these plants to grow, and, therefore she sends these birds as her signs and representatives. It is very seldom that eleven wild geese are found together in the spring; but, if it happens, this is a sign that the crop of maize will be remarkably fine. The Indians keep a large quantity of dried flesh in readiness for the time in the spring when the birds arrive, that they may immediately celebrate the corn feast of the women. They hang the meat before the village, on long stages made of poles, three or four rows, one above another, and this with various articles of value, is considered as an offering to the old women. The elderly females, as representatives of the old woman who never dies, assemble on a certain day about the stages, carrying a stick in their hands, to one end of which a head of maize is fastened. Sitting down in a circle, they plant their sticks in the ground before them, and then dance 'round the stages. Some old men beat the drum, and rattle the *schischisikue*. The maize is not wetted or sprinkled, as many believe, but, on the contrary, it is supposed that such a practice would be injurious. While the old women are performing these ceremonies, the younger ones come and put some dry pulverized meat into their mouths, for which each of them received in return, a grain of the consecrated maize; which she eats. Three or four grains are put into their dishes, and are afterwards carefully mixed with the seed to be sown, in order to make it thrive and yield an abundant crop. The dried flesh on the stages is the perquisite of the aged females, as the representative of the old woman who never dies. During the ceremony,

it is not unusual for some men of the band of the dogs to come and pull a large piece of flesh from the poles and carry it off. As members of this band, and being men of distinction, no opposition can be offered.

"A similar corn feast is repeated in the autumn, but at that season it is held for the purpose of attracting the herds of buffaloes, and of obtaining a large supply of meat. Each woman then has not a stick with a head of maize, as in the former instance, but a whole plant of that grain, pulled up by the roots. They designate the maize as well as the birds, which are the symbols of the fruits of the earth, by the name of the old woman who never dies, and call upon them in the autumn, saying, 'Mother, have pity on us; do not send the severe cold too soon, so that we may have a sufficient supply of meat; do not permit all the game to go away, so that we may have something for the winter.'

"In autumn when the birds emigrate to the south, or as the Indians express it, return to the old woman, they believe that they take with them the presents—especially the dried flesh—that were hung up at the entrance of the village, for the giver and protectress of the crop. They further imagine that the old woman partakes of the flesh. Some poor females among these Indians, who are not able to offer flesh or any valuable gift, take a piece of parchment, in which they wrap the foot of a buffalo, and suspend it to one of the poles as their offering. The birds on their return, go to the old woman, each bringing something from the Indians; but towards the end, one approaches, and says, 'I have very little to give you, for I have received only a very mean gift.' To this, the old woman, on receiving the buffalo's foot from the poor women, or widows, says, 'This is just what I love; this poor offering is more dear to me than all the other presents, however costly.' Upon this she boils a piece of the foot with some maize, and eats it with much satisfaction. The old woman who never dies has very extensive plantations of maize, the keepers of which are the great stag and the white-tailed stag. She has likewise, many blackbirds, which help to guard her property. When she intends to feed these keepers, she summons them, and they fall with avidity upon the maize fields. As these plantations are very large, she requires many

laborers, and the mouse, the mole, and the before-mentioned stags, perform the work. The birds which fly from the sea shore in the spring, represent the old woman, who then travels to the north to visit 'the old man who never dies,' and who always resides in that quarter. She does not, however, stop there long, but generally returns in three or four days. In former times the old woman's hut was near the Little Missouri, where the Indians often went to visit her. One day twelve Minnetarces came to her, and she set before them a pot of maize, which was so small, that it was not sufficient to satisfy even one; but she invited them to eat, as soon as the pot was empty it was instantly refilled, and all the twelve men had enough. This occurred several times while the old woman resided on that spot."

Medicine Serpents. "Serpents, especially the rattlesnake, are in a greater or less degree, 'medicine' for these people, who kill them, and cut off the rattles, which they regard as an effectual remedy in many diseases. They chew one of the joints, and wet various parts of the body of the patient with the saliva. They likewise believe in the existence of a colossal medicine serpent, which lives in a lake three or four days' journey from this place, and to which they make offerings. The following is their tradition of this monster: Two young men were strolling along the bank of the river, and observed a cavern, through which curiosity led them to go. On reaching the further end, they were surprised at beholding a picturesque country, wholly unknown to them, where numerous herds of buffalo were grazing. Suddenly, however, an immense giant stood before them, who demanded, 'Who are you, you little people? I am afraid if I were to lay hold of you I should crush you.' He then lifted them in his hands very carefully, and carried them into the village, which was inhabited by giants like himself. Accompanied by the two Mandans they went out to hunt buffalos. The giants killed the buffalo by throwing stones, but the Mandans destroyed many with their arrows, which greatly delighted the giants. At that time the giants were at war with the eagles, which were very numerous, and which they slew by flinging stones. The Mandans, however, shot them with arrows, so that they speedily procured a large quantity of eagles' feathers. They then took leave of the giants, and were permitted to depart with all their valuable feathers.

On their return they found the cave blocked by a colossal serpent. First they were at a loss how to make a passage, but they soon collected a large pile of wood and burnt the monster. One of them tasted the roasted flesh of the serpent, and, finding it palatable, partook of more. They proceeded on their way, when the head of the Mandan who had tasted the serpent's flesh began to swell prodigiously, and an intolerable itching came to his face. He begged his friend not to leave him, but to take him home. On the second day he continued to swell, increased in length, felt an irritation all over, and was soon afterwards transformed into a serpent, upon which he begged his companion to take him to the Missouri, which the latter accomplished in three days. As soon as the serpent reached the water, he dived, but speedily rose to the surface, and said, 'There are many like me below, but they hate me, therefore carry me to the long water, three days' journey from the Missouri.' This, too, was done, but the serpent not liking his new abode, his comrade was obliged to carry him to a second lake, called Histoppa-Numangka (the place of the tattooed countenance), when the serpent was satisfied, and resolved to remain. He commissioned the young man to bring him four things, viz: A white wolf, a polecat, some pounded maize, and eagles' tails; after this he was to go to war four times, and kill an enemy in each combat. All this accordingly took place. The serpent then added that he would always remain in this lake, never die, be medicine, and, when the Mandans desired anything, they might come hither, do penance, or make offerings, that is to say, hang robes, eagles' tails, and other articles of value, on poles on the banks of the lake, which the Indians sometimes do even to this day."

Medicine Stone. "Another curiosity of a similar nature is the Medicine Stone, which is mentioned by Lewis and Clarke, and which the Minnetarees likewise reverence. This stone is between two and three days' journey from the villages on Cannonball river, and about 100 paces from its banks. I was assured that it was on a tolerably high hill, and in the form of a flat slab, probably of sandstone. The stone is described as being marked with impressions of the footsteps of men, and animals of various descriptions, also sledges with dogs. The Indians use this stone as an oracle, and make offerings of value to it, such as kettles,

blankets, cloth, guns, knives, hatchets, medicine-pipes, etc., which are found deposited close to it. The war parties of both nations, when they take the field, generally go to this place, and consult the oracle as to the issue of their enterprise. Lamenting and howling, they approach the hill, smoke their medicine-pipes, and pass the night near the spot. On the following morning they copy the figures on the stone upon a piece of parchment or skin, which they take to the village, where the old men give the interpretation. New figures are undoubtedly drawn from time to time on this stone, near to which the celebrated ark, in which part of the nation was saved in the great deluge, formerly stood."

Other Medicine. "The Mandans have many other medicine establishments in the vicinity of their villages, all of which are dedicated to the superior powers. Mr. Bodmer has made very accurate drawings of those near Mih-Tutta-Hang-Kush, one of which consists of four poles placed in the form of a square; the two foremost have a heap of earth and green turf thrown up around them, and four buffalo skulls laid in a line between them, while twenty-six human skulls are placed in a row from one of the stakes at the back to the other; some of these skulls are painted with a red stripe. Behind the whole a couple of knives are stuck into the ground, and a bundle of twigs is fastened at the top of the poles with a kind of comb, or the teeth of a rake painted red. The Indians repair to such places when they desire to make offerings, or put up petitions; they howl, lament, and make loud entreaties, often for many days together, to the lord of life, which the French Canadians call weeping, though no tears are shed. A similar medicine establishment is represented, where a couple of human figures, very clumsily made of skins, were fixed upon poles, representing as we are told, the sun and moon, probably the lord of life and the old woman who never dies. Wormwood, of which they generally fasten a bunch to the poles, is a sacred medicine herb, to which they ascribe various effects.

"Dreams, as I have before said, afford the usual motives for such actions, and for the penances which they impose upon themselves, and they believe all that appears in their dreams to be true. They were not yet acquainted with firearms, when one of the Indians dreamed of a weapon with which they could kill their enemies at a great distance, and soon afterwards the white

men brought them the first gun. In the same manner they dreamed of horses before they obtained any. Even the whites who live among them are infected with this belief in dreams, and other superstitions. They frequently promise, on undertaking anything, the joint of a finger, which they cut off at once, and keep in a handful of wormwood; this I myself saw among the Blackfeet, where, at that time, it was a sign of mourning. It is also done at the time of the Okippe in May and June. Almost all the Mandans and Minnetarees have lost one or two joints of the fingers and several of them more. There are numerous superstitious ideas and prejudices among these Indians. Thus they believe that a person to whom they wish ill must die, if they make a figure of wood or clay, substituting for the heart, a needle, an awl, or a porcupine quill, and bury the image at the foot of one of their medicine poles. When a child is born, the father must not bridle a horse, that is to say, he is not to fasten the halter to the lower jaw, otherwise the child will die in convulsions. Many consider it a bad omen when a woman, while several Mandans are smoking together, passes between them. If a woman is lying on the ground between the men who are smoking, a piece of wood is laid across her, to serve as a communication between the men. The strongest man now living among the Mandans, who has been the victor in several wrestling matches with the whites, always takes hold of his pipe by the head, for, were he to touch it in another part, the blood would suddenly rush from his nostrils. As soon as he bleeds in this manner, he instantly empties his pipe, and throws the contents into the fire, where it explodes like gunpowder, and the bleeding immediately stops. Nobody, they say, can touch this man's face, without at once bleeding at the nose and mouth. A certain Indian affirms that, whenever another offers him a pipe to smoke, out of civility, he immediately has his mouth full of worms, handfuls of which he throws into the fire. The medicine of another man consists in making a snow-ball, which he rolls a long time between his hands, so that it at length becomes hard, and is converted into a white stone, which, when struck, emits fire. Many persons, even whites, pretend they had seen this, and it is utterly useless to attempt convincing them to the contrary. The same man pretends that, during a dance, he plucked white feathers from a certain small bird, which he rolled

between his hands, and formed of them, in a short time, a similar white stone. Sometimes an Indian takes it into his head to make his gun medicine, or to consecrate it, which he does not dare afterwards to part with. With this view he generally makes a yearly feast in the spring. The crier (kettle-tender, or marminton) must invite a certain number of guests, and receive an equal number of small sticks, which he delivers to them, as a sign of their being invited; nay, now, European playing cards are actually sent around for this purpose. The guests appear, lay their guns aside, and take their places, on which the drum and schishikue go 'round, and every guest sings, and plays the drum and rattle. While this music is going on, they eat the food which has been dressed, nor are they allowed to leave any of it. The host then takes his gun, cuts a piece of flesh, and with it rubs the barrel, and flings the meat into the fire; this is repeated thrice. He then takes up some of the water in which the meat was boiled, rubs the whole length of the barrel with it, pours the rest of the broth into the fire; and, lastly, takes fat, with which he rubs the whole gun, and then throws the remainder into the fire.

"A great many Mandans and Minnetarees believe that they have wild animals in their body; one for instance, affirmed he had a buffalo calf, the kicking of which he often felt; others said they had tortoises, frogs, lizards, birds, and so forth.***

"The people consider owls as medicine birds, and pretend to hold conversations with them, and understand their attitudes and voices; often, indeed, they keep these animals alive in their huts, and look upon them as soothsayers. I shall, subsequently, have occasion to speak of the manner in which they catch all kinds of birds of prey, which feed on the flesh of dead animals, particularly eagles, which they sometimes preserve alive. They frequently look upon them as medicine.

"Many instruments used by the whites, especially mathematical are a great medicine, or charm, in their eyes, because they do not comprehend the use of them. Thus the Indian women are frequently embarrassed when we look at them through a telescope, because they believed that we had the power to penetrate their inmost thoughts, and of discovering their past and future actions."

Time—Months. "The divison of time, especially that of the

year into months, is pretty conformable to nature; they count the years by winters, and say so many winters have passed since such an event. They are able to reckon the winters by numbers, or on their fingers, for their numerals are very complete.

"1. The month of the seven cold days, answering to our January.

"2. The pairing month—February.

"3. The month of weak eyes—March.

"4. The month of game. Some call it the month of wild geese. It is likewise often called the month of the breaking up of the ice.

"5. The month in which maize is sown, or the month of flowers—May.

"6. The month of ripe service berries.

"7. The month of ripe cherries.

"8. The month of ripe plums.

"9. The month of ripe maize.

"10. The month of the falling leaves.

"11. The month in which the rivers freeze.

"12. The month of slight frost.³²

"Here and there other names are given to the months, but the above are the most common."

Buffalo Hunts. "The chief occupations of the Indians, besides adorning and painting their persons, looking in the glass, smoking, eating, and sleeping, are the chase and war, and these fill up a great part of their time. The principal beast of chase is the buffalo, or, rather, the buffalo cow. The men generally go hunting in a body, on horseback, in order to be the more secure against the superior force of their enemies. The equipments of their horses are much like those of the Blackfeet, and their saddles resemble the Hungarian; though, now, they sometimes obtain saddles from the whites, which they line and ornament with red and blue cloth. In riding, they never leave hold of their whip, the handle of which is made of wood, and not of elk's horn, as among the more western nations. They never wear spurs. In the summer time, if the herds of buffalos are dispersed to great distance in the prairie, the chase, of course, requires more time and exertion; but in the winter, when they approach the Missouri, and seek shelter in the woods, a great number are often

killed in a short time. On these hunting excursions the Indians often spend eight or ten days; generally they return on foot, while the horses are laden with the spoils. The buffalos are usually shot with arrows, the hunters riding within ten or twelve paces of them. If it is very cold, and the buffalos keep at a distance in the prairie (which happened in the winter of 1833-34), they hunt but little, and would rather suffer hunger, or live only on maize and beans, than use any exertion; and when towards spring, many drowned buffalos float down the river with the ice, the Indians swim or leap with great dexterity over the flakes of ice, draw the animals to land, and eat the half putrid flesh without manifesting any signs of disgust. It is remarkable how instantly their famished dogs know and take advantage of the hunting excursions of their masters. When the horses return laden with the spoils of the chase, the children in the village utter a cry of joy, of which the dogs seem perfectly to understand the import, for they simultaneously set up a loud howl, run towards the prairie, the scene of the chase, and partake with their relations, the wolves, of what the hunters have left behind. When a hunter has killed an animal, he generally eats the liver, the kidneys, and the marrow of the large thigh bones, raw. If an Indian has procured some game he usually shares it with others. The entrails and skin always belong to the person who shot the animal. If an eminent man, who has performed some exploit, comes up when the animal has been just killed, and demands the tongue, or some other good part, it cannot be refused him. Dogs are not employed in hunting by the Mandans and Minnetarees. They shoot deer and elks in the forests, antelopes and bighorns in the prairies, the Black Hills, and the neighboring mountains. They make parks, as they are called, to catch antelopes, but not buffalos."

Antelope Hunt. "Brackenridge says, that the Indians drive the antelopes into the water and kill them with clubs, but this can only have happened in isolated places when some accident gave them the opportunity. The Minnetarees make these cabri parks more frequently than the Mandans. They choose a valley, between two hills, which ends in a steep declivity. On the summit of the hills, two converging lines, one or two miles in length, are marked out with brushwood. Below the declivity they erect

a kind of fence fifteen or twenty paces in length, composed of poles, covered and filled up with hay and brushwood. A number of horsemen then drive the cabris between the ends of the lines marked out by the brushwood, which are very distant from each other, and ride rapidly towards them. The terrified animals hasten down the hollow, and at length leap into the enclosure, where they are killed with clubs or taken alive. There are not many bears in this country; and the Indians are not fond of hunting them, because it is often dangerous, and the flesh, when roasted, is not very good.

“Brackenridge is mistaken when he says, that these Indians always shout before they enter the forest, in order to frighten the bears. If they did so they would, at the same time, frighten all other kinds of animals, and we see at once, from this statement, that that traveler was no sportsman.”

Wolf, Fox and Eagle Traps. “The wolf and the fox are sometimes shot with a gun, as well as the white hare, in the winter time, or they are caught in traps. They set for the wolves very strong traps. The prairie wolf is not easily caught, being very cautious. Foxes are caught in small traps, which are covered with brushwood and buffalos skulls, to conceal them. Many such traps are seen everywhere in the prairies, which are surrounded with small stakes, that the animals may not enter them sideways. Beavers are now caught, in great numbers, in iron traps, which they procure from the whites. Small animals, such as the ermine, are caught with horse-hair springs, set before their burrows. The manner in which birds of prey are caught is said to be very remarkable. The bird-catcher lies down at full length in a narrow pit made on purpose, and exactly large enough to hold him. As soon as he has lain down, the pit is covered with brushwood and hay, pieces of meat are laid upon it, and a crow or some such bird, fastened to it. The eagle, or other bird of prey, is said to descend, and to sit down, in order to eat, on which the bird-catcher seizes it by the legs. I would not believe this had not men worthy of credit given me their word for it. In this manner they catch the eagle, called, by the English, the war-eagle, and the golden eagle, the Quiliou, or oiseau de medicine, of the Canadians, which I was not so fortunate as to meet with, and which they highly value, as I have already stated.”²³³

School of War—The Chiefs. "Next to the chase, war is the chief employment of the Indians, and military glory the highest object of their ambition. It is well known that Indian bravery is very different from that of the whites; for wilfully to expose themselves to the enemy's fire would, in their eyes, not be bravery, but folly. Cunning and stratagem give them the advantage over the enemy; their strength lies in concealing their march, and surprises at daybreak. He who kills many enemies without sustaining any loss is the best warrior.

"When a young man desires to establish his reputation in the field, he fasts for four or seven days, as long as his strength permits him, goes alone to the hills, complains and cries to the lord of life, calls incessantly to the higher powers for their aid, and only goes home, sometimes in the evening, to sleep. A dream suggests his medicine to him. If the lord of life makes him dream of a piece of cherry tree wood, or of an animal, it is a good omen. The young men who take the field with him have then confidence in his medicine. If he can perform an exploit his reputation is established. But whatever exploits he may perform, he acquires no respect if he does not make valuable presents; and they say of him, 'He has indeed performed many exploits, but yet he is as much to be pitied as those whom he has killed.' A man may have performed many exploits, and yet not be allowed to wear tufts of hair on his clothes, unless he carries a medicine pipe, and has been the leader of a war party. When a young man who has never performed an exploit, is the first to kill an enemy on a war-like expedition, he paints a spiral line 'round his arm, of whatever color he pleases, and he may then wear a whole wolf's tail at the ankle or heel of one foot. If he has first killed and touched the enemy he paints a line running obliquely 'round the arms and another crossing it in the opposite direction, with three transverse stripes. On killing the second enemy he paints his left leg (that is the leggin) of a reddish-brown. If he kills the second enemy before another is killed by his comrades, he may wear two entire wolves' tails at his heels. On his third exploit he paints two longitudinal stripes on his arms and three transverse stripes. This is the exploit that is esteemed the highest; after the third exploit no more marks are made. If he kills an enemy after others of the party have done the same, he may wear on this heel.

one wolf's tail, the tip of which is cut off. In every numerous war party there are four leaders (partisans, karokkanakah), sometimes seven, but only four are reckoned as the real partisans; the others are called bad partisans (karokkanakah-chakohosch, literally, partisans galeux). All partisans carry on their backs a medicine-pipe in a case, which other warriors dare not have. To become a chief (Numakaschi) a man must have been a partisan and then kill an enemy when he is not a partisan. If he follows another partisan for the second time, he must have first discovered the enemy, have killed one, and then possessed the hide of a white buffalo cow complete, with the horns, to pretend to the title of chief (Numakschi). Dipauch, who related these particulars, had himself done all these, and was an eminent man among his people, but had never assumed that title. He had given five horses for his white buffalo hide. All the warriors wear small war pipes 'round their necks, which are often very elegantly ornamented with porcupine quills.

"As soon as they advance to attack the enemy every one sounds his pipe, and all together utter the war whoop, a shrill cry, which they render tremendous by repeatedly and suddenly striking the mouth with the hand. Those who fast and dream, in order to perform an exploit, are entitled to wear a wolf's skin. A warrior has a right to wear as many eagles' feathers as he has performed exploits. All Indians, on their military expeditions, erect, in the evening, a sort of fort, in which they are, in some measure, secure against a sudden attack. In Major Long's expedition to the Rocky mountains, it is stated, that they often make caches (hiding places) in these forts; but we did not observe any such on the Missouri. The Indians, on their expeditions, always set a watch by night as soon as they are near the enemy, and often send out scouts to considerable distances. At such a post the Indians are very vigilant and active; after an engagement they do not bury the dead, but, if they have not time to carry them away, leave them on the spot where they fell. The scalps, called by the Canadians, *les chevelures*, are often preserved for a long time stretched upon small hoops, and the hair is afterwards used as an ornament to the dress of the men. The skin of the scalp is generally painted red. The Mandans, Minnetarees, and Crows, never torture their prisoners like the Pawnees, and the eastern nations. When a

prisoner has arrived at the village, and eaten maize, he is considered as one of their own nation, and no person ever thinks of molesting him. Often, however, the women hasten out to meet the prisoners ere they reach the village, and kill them; this is especially an act of revenge for their husbands or sons who may have fallen in the battle.

“When a young man desires to become a leader, or partisan, he first gains, by gifts, the favor of the other young men, and then dedicates a medicine pipe, which is a plain unornamented tube. This ceremony is accomplished by a four days’ fast; and supplications for assistance to the lord of life, the first man, etc., and other supernatural beings. He then addresses the young men, and calls upon them to give him their support in his undertakings. If a sufficient number testify their readiness to accompany him in a warlike expedition, and such an expedition be determined upon, they dance and feast in the medicine-lodge for several successive nights, from whence, too, they generally march off by night. The women never accompany these expeditions. On setting out the men are badly clothed, and not painted. They do not depart in a body, but, for the most part, singly, or in small detached parties. At a certain distance from the village they halt upon an isolated hill, open their medicine bags, and, after the men have sat down in a circle, the partisan produces his medicine-pipe, which all present smoke; the person who smokes last, then spreads his medicines on the ground, or hangs them up, and from them foretells the fate of the expedition. The Indians manifest much gravity and decorum on solemn occasions like these.”

Scalp Dance. “When the warriors return from their expedition, the scalps are carried on in advance, on high poles; if they have performed any exploits, they paint their faces black; very frequently the whole body is thus disfigured. The women and children go out to meet them and they enter the village performing the scalp dance. This dance is then repeated four successive nights in the medicine-lodge, and is subsequently danced in the open space, in the center of the village. If the campaign took place in the spring, it is danced, at intervals till the fall of the leaf in autumn: if in the autumn, it is danced till spring, but should any of the nation be killed in the interim all festivities immediately cease. In the scalp dance the Indians paint them-

selves in various ways, form a semi-circle, advance, and retreat amid the din of singing, the beating of the drum and schischikue. The wives of those men who have obtained the scalps carry them on long rods.

"All the distinguished deeds performed by a war party are placed to the account of the partisan. All the scalps that are taken belong to him, and also the horses that they have captured. He who has killed an enemy is a brave man, and reckons one exploit; but the partisan rises the highest on that account, even though he has not seen any of the enemies who have been slain. When he returns home, the old men and women meet, and sing the scalp song, on which he must make them all presents of value. He gives away all the captured horses, and valuable articles; and is afterwards a poor man, but his reputation is great. Successful partisans afterwards become chiefs, and are highly respected by their nation. The Indian youths go to war when they are only fourteen or fifteen years of age. Sometimes they make excursions on horseback in the winter." (p. 389.)

It is not unworthy of comment that in recording the tradition of wars between the Mandans and the Chippeways "to the country of Pembina," Maximilian conduces to the support of the theory that the Mandans went into the Winnipeg Basin, with their allies the Minnetarees (the latter of whom were supposed to have once lived in that direction), **from their base on the Missouri river**, thus furnishing, inferentially at least, proof inconsistent with the idea that the contests between the Mandans and Crees, Chippeways, etc., were occasioned in a process of driving the Mandans from a supposed original habitat in those regions. See below:

Mandan Wars. "The Mandans and Minnetarees make excursions as far as the Rocky mountains, against their enemies, the Blackfeet, and against the Chippeways, to the country of Pembina. Their other enemies are the Sioux, the Arikkaras, the Assiniboines, and the Cheyennes (spelt by the English Shiennes). They are at peace with the Crows."

Mandan Weapons. "The weapons of the Mandans and Minnetarees are, first, the bow and arrow. The bows are made of elm or ash, there being no other suitable kinds of wood in their country. In form and size they resemble those of the other nations;

the string is made of the sinews of animals twisted. They are frequently ornamented. A piece of red cloth, four or five inches long, is wound around each end of the bow, and adorned with glass beads, dyed porcupine quills, and strips of white ermine. A tuft of horse hair, dyed yellow, is usually fastened to one end of the bow. Pehriska-Ruhpa has such a weapon in his hand. The quiver, to which the bow-case is fastened, is made of panther or buffalo skin; in the first case, with the hair outwards the long tail hanging down, and, as among the Blackfeet, lined with red cloth, and embroidered in various figures with white beads. Their handsome quivers are made of otter skin, which are much esteemed. A very beautifully ornamented one, belonging to the Crows, is represented. Narrow strips of skin hang down at both ends of the quiver. The arrows of the Mandans and the Minnetarees are neatly made; the best wood is said to be that of the service berry (*amelanchier sanguinea*). The arrows of all the Missouri nations are much alike,²⁴ with long, triangular, very sharp, iron heads, which they themselves make out of old iron; it is but slightly glued to the shaft of the arrow, which is rather short, and generally remains in the body of the wounded animal. They know nothing of poisoning their arrows. The arrow-heads were formerly made of sharp stones; when Charbonneau first came to the Missouri, some made of flint were in use, and in the villages they are still met with, and in all those parts of the United States where the expelled or extirpated aborigines formerly dwelt. We are told that, in the prairie, near the Minnetaree villages, there is a sand hill, where the wind has uncovered a great number of such stone arrow-heads. Almost all the Mandans and Minnetarees now have guns, which they ornament with bits of red cloth, on the brass rings of the ramrod, and at the butt-end with brass-nails. Besides the ramrod belonging to the gun, the Indians always carry another long ramrod in their hands, which they generally use. The pouch is made of leather, or cloth, often beautifully ornamented with beads, or porcupine quills, and is hung on the back by a piece of skin, or a broad strip of cloth of some lively color. Their clubs and tomahawks are of various kinds. Many have a thick egg-shaped stone fastened to a handle, covered with leather, or without leather. Others have small iron tomahawks, but not tomahawks with pipes

fixed to them. The large club with the broad iron point is called *manha-okatanha*, or *mauna-schicha*. A simple, knotty, wooden club is called *mauna-panischa*."

Lance and Shield—Knife. "Many Mandans likewise carry lances, and I was told that they had a remarkably handsome one, of which, however, I did not obtain a sight. These Indians have shields, which do not differ from those of the tribes already mentioned. They all wear in their girdles, behind, a large knife, which is indispensable to them in hunting and in war. Some use, for the handle of the knife, the lower jaw of a bear, with the hair and teeth remaining. The bow and arrows, are, even now, much esteemed by all the nations living on the Missouri, while those that have been entirely driven from that river (the Osages) greatly prefer the gun; the former, therefore, are capital archers, which cannot be affirmed of the Osages. The Mandans and Minnetarees are said to fight well in their manner, and there have been frequent instances of individual bravery. One of their most distinguished warriors, at this time, is Mato-Tope, of whom we shall often have to speak in the sequel. He has killed more than five chiefs of other nations. The father of Mato-Tope, whose name was Suck-Schih (the handsome child), behaved exactly in the same manner as the Minnetaree chief, Kokoahkis, mentioned by Say. He went, one evening, wrapped up in his robe, into a hut of the hostile Arikkaras, as the young men of the village often do, ate with his face covered, so that he was taken for a young Arikkara; then laid himself down by the side of a woman, and afterwards cut off a lock of her hair, with which he retired. He might have killed the woman, as Kokoahkis did, but refrained from doing so."

In connection with what follows below concerning healing by Indians, the writer can not withhold mention of a very serious case of a shotgun wound caused by discharge of the gun's contents through the hand of Edward Narcelle a few years ago, which tore away nearly half of the hand between the base of the thumb and the forefingers while he held the end of the gun in his hand; and which was entirely cured by a "medicine-man" of the Sioux on the Cheyenne river, so that the use of all the members of the hand was restored. The patient would not go to Pierre to have the wound dressed, but remained under the treat-

ment of the Indian physician. What seemed remarkable to the writer (who saw the wound a few days after the accident) was the fact that, although the hand itself was in a frightful condition of laceration, yet the wrist was not at all swollen, nor did the patient suffer considerable pain. All that the "treatment" consisted of was an assortment of a few herbs and their extracts, in connection with which certain incantations involving the mystery of Indian "medicine" were gone through with. This instance of a really remarkable cure went far to disabuse the writer's mind of a previous strong tendency to disbelieve in the efficacy of Indian "medicine."

Healing of Wounds—Steam Baths. "Wounds appear to be healed with remarkable ease. In cases of arrow wounds, they like to force the arrow quite through, that the iron head may not remain in a wound. Men and women are often scalped, in battle, who afterwards came to themselves, and are cured. Such a large wound on the head is rubbed with fat; the medicine-man fumigates it, singing at the same time. Disorders are not uncommon among the Indians. The Mandans and Minnetarees often suffer from diseases in the eyes; many are one-eyed, or have a tunicle over one eye. In inflammation of the eye they have a custom of scratching the inner eye with the leaf of a kind of grass, resembling a saw, which caused them to bleed very much, and this may often occasion the loss of the eye. Rheumatism, coughs, and the like, are frequent, because they go half naked in the severest cold, and plunge into ice cold water. Much benefit is often derived from their steam baths, in a well closed hut, where a thick steam is produced by pouring water on hot stones. They then immediately go into the cold, roll themselves in the snow, or plunge into a river covered with drifting ice, but do not return to a warm hut as the Russians do. Many Indians are said to have died on the spot by trying this remedy. Some suffer from gout; but all who survive these violent remedies are stronger and more hardy. Another remedy is trampling on the whole body, especially the stomach, as is practiced also among the Brazilians. This operation is performed with such violence, as often to occasion hard swellings in the intestines, or ulcers, especially in the liver. The steam bath is used as a remedy in all kinds of disorders. Vaccination, the application of which met with no

difficulties among several nations on the great lakes, especially the Chippeways, is not yet practiced among the Mandans and Minnetarees. Spitting blood is said to be frequent, but not pulmonary consumption. Gonorrhoea is very common; they affirm that all venereal disorders came to them from the Crows beyond the Rocky mountains. For such disorders they often seat themselves over a heated pot, but very frequently burn themselves. They cut open buboes, lengthwise, with a knife, and then run for a couple of miles as fast as they can. The jaundice is said not to occur among them. It appears that they are not acquainted with emetics, but, if they feel anything wrong in the stomach, they thrust a feather down the throat. Their purgatives are obtained from the vegetable kingdom. The poison vine often produces swellings, especially in children.

"As rattlesnakes are rare in the vicinity of the villages, it is, of course, seldom that any one is bitten by them; these Indians are said, however, to have very good remedies against the bite. Frozen limbs are rubbed with snow. When blindness arises from the dazzling brightness of the snow, which it very frequently does in March, they bathe the eyes with a solution of gun powder and water. They often have recourse to bleeding, which they perform with a sharp flint or a knife. They often apply to the whites for medicine, and willingly follow their prescriptions. These Indians have also various remedies for their horses; thus when a horse has the strangury, they give it a piece of wasp's nest."

Mandan Burials. "When a Mandan or a Minnetaree dies, they do not let the corpse remain long in the village, but convey it to the distance of 200 paces, and lay it on a narrow stage, about six feet long, resting on four stakes about ten feet high, the body being first laced up in buffalo robes and a blanket. The face, painted red, is turned towards the east. A number of such stages are seen about their villages, and, although they themselves say that this custom is injurious to the health of the villages, they do not renounce it. On many of these stages there are small boxes, containing the bodies of children, wrapped in cloth or skins. Ravens are usually seen sitting on these stages, and the Indians dislike that bird, because it feeds on the flesh of their relations. If you ask a Mandan why they do not deposit their dead in the ground, he answers, 'The lord of life has, indeed, told

us that we came from the ground, and should return to it again; yet we have lately begun to lay the bodies of the dead on stages, because we love them, and would weep at the sight of them.' They believe that every person has several spirits dwelling in him; one of these spirits is black, another brown, and another light-colored, the latter of which alone returns to the lord of life. They think that after death they go to the south, to several villages which are often visited by the gods; that the brave and most eminent go to the village of the good, but the wicked into a different one; that they there live in the same manner as they do here, carry on occupations, eat the same food, have wives, and enjoy the pleasures of the chase and war. Those who are kind-hearted are supposed to make many presents and do good, find everything in abundance, and their existence there is dependent on their course of life while in the world. Some of the inhabitants of the Mandan villages are said not to believe all these particulars, and suppose that after death they will live in the sun or in a certain star."

Mourning. "They mourn for the dead a whole year; cut off their hair, cover their body and head with white or grey clay, and after with a knife or sharp flint, make incisions in their arms and legs in parallel lines, in their whole length, so that they are covered with blood. For some days after the death the relations make a loud lament and bewailing. Often a relative, or some other friend, covers the dead, as they express it; he brings one or two woolen cloths, of a red, blue, white or green color, and, as soon as the body is laid upon the stage, mounts upon the scaffolding, and conceals the body beneath the covering. A friend who will do this is, in token of respect, presented, by the family of the deceased, with a horse. If it is known beforehand that a person intends doing this honor to the dead, a horse is at once tied near the stage, and the friend, having performed this last office, unties the animal and leads it away. If a Mandan or a Minnetaree falls in battle, and the news of his death reaches the family, who are unable to recover the body, a buffalo skin is rolled up and carried to the village. All those who desire to lament the deceased assemble, and many articles of value are distributed among them. The mourners cut off their hair, wound themselves with knives, and make loud lamentations. Joints of the fingers are not cut

off here, as among the Blackfeet, as a token of mourning, but as a sign of penance and offering to the lord of life and the first man."

Mandan Language—Dialects. "The English and French find the pronunciation of the Mandan language extremely difficult; while to a German, or to a Dutchman, it is considerably easier because it contains very many gutturals, like ach, oeh, uen, in German. The nasal sounds, on the contrary, are few, but they frequently speak in a very indistinct way, having the mouth scarcely opened. The vowels are often softened, and much depends on the way in which the accent falls. The vowels a and u are often only half pronounced, but occur very frequently. I collected many words, as specimens of the language, and wrote down phrases, and made an attempt to compile a grammar of the Mandan language, but the completion of it was, unfortunately, hindered by unfavorable circumstances. Several old persons assured me that they perfectly remembered that, in their youth, many resemblances between the Mandan and Minnetaree languages did not then exist, which have since gradually crept in; the two languages being then quite different, which, indeed, they are still, in the main."

"As nations and allies, however, they have reciprocally adopted many words and expressions, and hence there is a better understanding among them now than heretofore, and their intercourse is greatly facilitated. Time will, undoubtedly, produce a still closer approximation. It is a remarkable fact, and proves how easily the separation of single tribes, and even villages, of one and the same nation, leads to changes in the language, and transitions into other dialects. An example of this kind was presented in the two Mandan villages, where many diversities of language had already taken place. I collected many specimens of this kind, and, to me, it was highly interesting. The Mandans are more apt in learning foreign languages than many other nations. Thus the majority of them speak the Minnetaree language, whereas but few of the latter understand the Mandan language. Most of the American nations, at least, those on the Missouri, are said to have no maledictory words or terms of abuse; the Mandans have nothing of the kind but the expression—'bad people.' The article is wanting in the Mandan language, and there is no distinction of

CONTENTS
ORIGINAL ARTICLES
The Problem of the Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States

ORIGINAL ARTICLES
The Problem of the Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States

ORIGINAL ARTICLES
The Problem of the Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States

ORIGINAL ARTICLES
The Problem of the Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States

ORIGINAL ARTICLES
The Problem of the Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States

ORIGINAL ARTICLES
The Problem of the Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States

ORIGINAL ARTICLES
The Problem of the Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States

ORIGINAL ARTICLES
The Problem of the Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States

ORIGINAL ARTICLES
The Problem of the Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States

ORIGINAL ARTICLES
The Problem of the Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States

ORIGINAL ARTICLES
The Problem of the Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States
The Medical Student in the United States

gender, except in addressing a man or woman. For my observation on the Mandan language, I am chiefly indebted to the kindness and patience of Mr. Kipp, who has lived eleven years among that people, had married an Indian wife, and had attained a perfect knowledge of the language. The Mandan names always have a signification, and are often equivalent to the whole sentences; all surrounding objects are made use of in giving names. I subjoin a few singular specimens: 'The bear which is a spirit'; 'The bull which is a spirit,' 'I hear somebody coming'; 'There are seven of them married to the old woman,' etc."

As seen from Maximilian's concluding words on the Mandans, he failed to find that the Mandans spoke the Gaelic language. But what he affirms in opposition to the claim that their complexion was fairer than that of other Indians in general seems in some contrast to his opening observations relative to their complexion. He thus concludes:

"In conclusion, I would say, that some have affirmed that they have found, in North America, Indians who spoke the Gaelic language; this has been said of the Mandans; but it has been long ascertained that this notion is unfounded, as well as the assertion that the Mandans had a fairer complexion than the other Indians."

Dr. Matthews' Views. "From a work entitled "Ethnography and Philology of the Hidatsa Indians," prepared by Dr. Washington Matthews, assistant surgeon United States army, published by the federal government in connection with and as a part of Hayden's Survey (1877), we quote the following extracts from the elaborate and authoritative observations of Dr. Matthews found therein; he having been stationed near the Fort Berthold village of the confederated tribes in the sixties and seventies of the last century, and for several years while there made close study of the Mandan, Ariccaree and Hidatsa (or Minnetaree) Indians and of their language, particularly as to the Hidatsa language. His entire work in that behalf was published, composed of "Ethnography of the Hidatsa Indians," his "Hidatsa Grammar," his "Hidatsa Dictionary," and his "English-Hidatsa Vocabulary," in one volume. The entire work is of a very high order of excellence, and is in fact one of the leading authorities of its kind in existence. All that appears below is from his "Ethnography."

The Mandans and Ariccaras come in for some separate treatment, but most of what is extracted herein is said by him as pertaining to the "Three Tribes" at Fort Berthold, above mentioned. Those extracts now follow:

Location of Confederated Village of Mandans, Etc. "An arid prairie-terrace, some four miles wide, stretching southward to the Missouri from the base of bluffs which form the edge of a higher plain, becomes gradually narrower as it approaches the river, and terminates in a steep bluff of soft rock and lignite which overhangs the river. On the southern extremity of this terrace, near the brow of the bluff, stand the Indian village, and what remains, since a recent fire, of the old trading post of Fort Berthold. This is on the left bank of the Missouri, in latitude 47 degrees, 34 minutes north, and longitude 101 degrees, 48 minutes west nearly. About five years ago, a large reservation was declared for them in Dakota and Montana, along the Missouri and Yellowstone rivers. Fort Berthold is in the northeast corner of this reservation."

See, for further description of this site and surroundings, Part I of this paper, Vol. 3, S. D. Hist. Coll., pp. 574-7.

Matthews' reference to the lodge-groupings in that village is as follows:

Dwellings. "The village consists of a number of houses built very closely together, without any attempt at regularity of position. The doors face in every possible direction; and there is great uniformity in the appearance of the lodges; so it is a very difficult matter to find one's way among them."

And of the type of lodges as originally constructed, he gives the following description, with some features not noted by the earlier visitors:

Old-Style Lodges of Mandans, Etc. "Most of the houses of the village were in 1865 peculiar, large, earth-covered lodges, such as were built by various tribes of Indians of the plains, in the valley of the Missouri, and so often, with varying accuracy, described by travelers. Each one of these lodges consists of a wooden frame, covered with willows, hay, and earth. A hole in the top, which lets in the light and lets out the smoke, and a doorway on one side, are the only apertures in the building. The door is made of rawhide stretched on a frame, or of puncheons.

and it is protected by a narrow shed or entry from six to ten feet long. Over the smoke-holes of many of the lodges are placed frames of wicker-work, on which skins are spread to the windward in stormy weather to keep the lodges from getting smoky. Sometimes bull-boats are used for this purpose. On the site of a proposed lodge, they often dig down a foot or more, in order to find earth compact enough to form a good floor; so, in some lodges, the floors are lower than the general surfaces of the ground on which the village stands. The floor is of earth, and has in its center a circular depression, for a fire-place, about a foot deep, and three or four feet wide, with a edging of flat rocks. These dwellings, being from thirty to forty feet in diameter, from ten to fifteen feet high in the center, and from five to seven feet high at the eaves, are quite commodious."

Women Construct Them. "The labor of constructing them is performed mostly by the women; but in lifting and setting the heavier beams, the men assist. If, with the aid of steel axes obtained from the whites, the task of building such a house is no easy one at this day, how difficult it must have been a century ago, when the stone axe was their best implement, and when the larger logs had to be burned through in order that pieces of suitable length might be obtained."

Frame of Lodge. "The frame of the lodge is thus made: A number of stout posts, from ten to fifteen, according to the size of the lodge, and raising to the height of about five feet above the surface of the earth, are set about ten feet apart in a circle. On the tops of these posts, solid beams are laid, extending from one to another. Then, towards the center of the lodge, four posts are erected, of much greater diameter than the outer posts, and rising to the height of ten or more feet about the ground. These four posts stand in the corners of a square about fifteen feet, and their tops are connected with four heavy logs or beams laid horizontally. From the four center beams to the smaller external beams, long poles, or rafters, are stretched at an angle of about 30 degrees with the horizon; and from the outer beams to the earth a number of shorter poles are laid at an angle of about 45 degrees. Finally, a number of saplings or rails are laid horizontally to cover the space between the four central beams, leaving only a hole for the combined skylight and chimney. This frame

is then covered with willows, hay and earth, as before mentioned; the covering being of equal depth over all parts of the frame.

"Earlier writers speak of the supporting-posts of the lodge as being forked. Nowadays, they seldom take the trouble to obtain forked sticks for this purpose."

Catlin's Incorrect Representations. "From the above description, it will be seen that the outline of a vertical section, or of the elevation of such a lodge, is necessarily an irregular hexagon, while that of its ground plan is polygonal, the angles being equal in number to the shorter uprights. Prince Maximilian's artist usually sketches the lodge very correctly; but Mr. Catlin invariably gives an incorrect representation of its exterior. Wherever he depicts a Mandan, Aricaree, or Minnetaree lodge, he makes it appear as an almost exact hemisphere, and always omits the entry. It would seem that, in filling in his sketches, he adopted the hemisphere as a convenient symbol for a lodge. The authors referred to by name in the foot-note on another page speak of the entry passage."

The winter quarters of the Mandans and their confederates are thus described by Matthews:

Winter Log-Houses. "Every winter, until 1866, the Indians left their permanent village, and, moving some distance up the Missouri valley, built temporary quarters, usually in the center of heavy forests and in the neighborhood of buffalo. The chief objects of this movement were that they might have fuel convenient, and not exhaust the supply of wood in the neighborhood of the permanent village. It was also advisable that, during a portion of the year at least, they should not harass the game near home. The houses of the winter village resembled much the log-cabins of our own western pioneers. They were neatly built, very warm, had regular fire-places and chimneys built of sticks and mud, and square holes in the roofs for the admission of light. Ten years ago, there were some cabins of this description in the permanent village at Fort Berthold; every year since they are becoming gradually more numerous and threaten to gradually supplant the original earth-covered lodges. By reference to the note on page 4, it will be seen that, in 1872, the former outnumbered the latter by about nineteen."

Of the caches or circular pits of the confederated village Mat-

thews speaks below. The writer found some of the remains of those caches on said site in 1905:

Caches, or Pits. "The numerous caches, or pits, for storing grain, are noteworthy objects in the village. In summer, when they are not in use, they are often left open, or are carelessly covered, and may entrap the unwary stroller. When these Indians have harvested their crops, and before they start on their winter's hunt, they dig their caches, or clear out those dug in previous years. A cache is a cellar, usually round, with a small opening above, barely large enough to allow a person to descend; when finished, it looks like an ordinary round cistern. Reserving a small portion of corn, dried squash, etc., for winter use, they deposit the remainder in these subterranean store houses, along with household utensils and other articles of value which they wish to leave behind. They then fill up the orifices with earth, which they trample down and rake over, thus obliterating every trace of excavation.

"Some caches are made under the floors of the houses, others outside, in various parts of the village grounds; in each case, the distance and direction from some door, post, bedstead, fire-place, or other object is noted, so that the stores may be found on the return of the owners in the spring. Should an enemy enter the village while it is temporarily deserted, the goods are safe from fire and theft. This method of secreting property has long been used among many tribes, has been adopted by whites living on the plains, and is referred to in the works of many travelers."

It is seen from the following account of the "medicine-lodge" of the Mandans, as observed by Matthews, that he ascribes to it a religious character, as did Catlin and others:

Mandan and Aricara "Medicine-Lodges." "There are, in the village, two open spaces, which, although of irregular shape, may be called squares; one of these is in the Mandan, the other in the Aricaree quarter. Besides each square stands a large round 'medicine-lodge,' or temple, built as described in the second paragraph of section three, which is used for purposes that, in a general way, are called religious."

The Ark—Ceremony of Okepa. "In the center of the Mandan square is a small circular palisade, about six feet high and four feet in diameter, made of neatly hewn puncheons set closely to-

gether. It has somewhat the appearance of a large barrel, and is emblematic of the ark in which, according to Mandan mythology, the sole survivor of the deluge was saved. The square, the medicine-lodge, with its four poles in front, surmounted by sacrificial effigies, and the ark, as they may be seen at Fort Berthold today, seem to be the almost exact counterparts of those which were seen in the old Mandan village at Fort Clarke, in 1832 and 1833, by George Catlin and the Prince of New-Wied, if we are to judge by the drawings they have given us. Within the temple and around the ark, the Mandans still perform the ceremony of the Okeepa, which Catlin so accurately describes. The awful severities of the rites have, however, been somewhat mitigated since his day."

Aricaree Medicine-Lodge. "The medicine-lodges of the Aricarees is larger than that of the Mandans, and is used for a greater variety of ceremonies. Some of these performances, consisting of ingenious tricks of jugglery and dances, representative of various hunts, we might be inclined to call theatrical rather than religious. Probably these Indians consider them both worshipful and entertaining.

"It is often hard to tell how much of a religious ceremony is intended to propitiate the unknown powers, and how much to please the spectators."

Fortifications—Stockades. "Many travelers have described their towns as being fortified, sometimes with walls, but usually with ditches and stockades, or with stockades alone. The latter system of defense was in use at the village of Fort Berthold until the winter of 1865, when they cut down the palisades for firewood; and they have never since restored them. The presence of United States troops in their neighborhood, and the growing weakness of the Dakotas, were probably the causes which led them to discontinue their fortifications."

Matthews virtually bears out Catlin concerning the mythical veneration of the Mandans for the corn symbol:

Agriculturalists—"Corn Mother." "The Aricarees and Mandans have doubtlessly tilled the soil for many centuries. Their accounts of the origin of corn are mingled with their earliest myths and traditions. There are some reasons for believing that the Aricarees represent an older race of farmers than the Man-

dans; for their religious ceremonies connected with planting are the more numerous, and they honor the corn with a species of worship. In every Aricaree lodge, there is a large ear of corn, which has lasted for generations, sticking out of the mouth of a medicine-bag. At their feasts, they make offerings to the corn by rubbing a piece of meat on it, while they pray to it for plentiful harvests, and address it by the name of 'mother.' The Hidatsas claim to have had no knowledge of corn until they first ate it from the trenchers of the Mandans; and they have no important ceremonies connected with the harvesting, yet they cultivated it long before the advent of the white man." (p. 12.)

"Three Tribes" at Berthold—From South Dakota. "When Lewis and Clarke ascended the Missouri, in 1804, they found four tribes of agricultural Indians, numerous and prosperous, inhabiting the upper Missouri valley, west of the Dakota nation. They had eight permanently inhabited towns, others which they lived in only temporarily, and a number more which they had abandoned and allowed to go to ruin. They are spoken of in Lewis and Clarke's journal as the 'Ricaras,' 'Mandans,' 'Minnetarees,' and 'Ahnahaways.' All that are left of the four tribes are now gathered together in this one village, at Fort Berthold, which does not probably number 2,500 souls. The remains, now nearly obliterated, of their old towns, may be traced on nearly every prairie terrace adjacent to the Missouri, along six hundred miles of its course, from the mouth of the Lower White-Earth to the mouth of the Little Missouri. The Indians at Fort Berthold are, however, now generally referred to as the 'three tribes'; for one of the nations spoken of by Captain Lewis—that which he calls Ahnahaways—is no longer an organized tribe, but has been merged into the Minnetarees." (p. 12.)

"Mandan"—Previous History. "The Mandans, about a hundred years ago, lived in several villages near the mouth of Heart river. From this neighborhood, they moved up the Missouri, stopping and building villages at different localities. In 1804, they were found dwelling in two towns about four miles below the mouth of Knife river. One of these towns was named Metutahanke, Metutahankish, or, as Maximilian writes it, 'Mih-Tutta-Hang-Kusch,' meaning lower village. The other was called Ruptari or Nuptadi. They were almost exterminated by the

smallpox in 1837, after which, for a time, they occupied only one village. In 1845, when the Hidatsa moved away from Knife river, some of the Mandans went with them, and others followed at different times afterwards. For a short time, it appears that a few Mandan families occupied the old Amahami village. We have an account of some moving up to the village at Fort Berthold as late as 1858, and of others still remaining at the mouth of Knife river at the same time.

"The word Mandan seems to be a corruption of the Dakota name Matani or Mawatani. Previous to 1837, they called themselves simply Numakaki, i. e., People, Men. They sometimes spoke of themselves and the Minnetarees together as Nuweta, **Ourselves**. A large band of their tribe was called Siposka-Numakaki, **Prairie-Hen People**, or Grouse Men. This name, Mr. Catlin, in his first work, renders, 'People of the Pheasants,' and in his last work, presents in the shape of 'Nu-mah-ka-kee (pheasants),' and then, from this translation, leaves us to draw the 'important inference' that the Mandans once lived in the Ohio valley. They now often call themselves Metutahanke, after their old village below Knife river." (p. 13-14.)

Matthews, in mentioning the earlier visitors of the Mandans, speaks in high commendation of the accounts of Maximilian:

Tribute to Maximilian. "Captains Lewis and Clarke, Mr. Catline, the Prince of Neuwied, and Dr. Hayden have written very full accounts of this tribe, and all but the first named explorers present vocabularies of their language. The work of Prince Maximilian contains the most accurate and extensive information regarding their customs and manners. Notwithstanding the great changes in the tribe since 1834, the majority of his notes might be used without alteration in describing the Mandans of today. In a few cases, however, I believe that the deductions which he drew from his observations were incorrect." (p. 14-15.)

Population—Official Reports—Errors. "The population of the village is not known. It is said that the inhabitants of some of the old villages allowed a census to be taken immediately before the epidemic which proved so fatal to them. They believed that their calamity resulted from the census, and have since resisted all efforts to ascertain their numbers. Many ingenious plans have been devised for counting them without their knowledge, but

they have suspected and thwarted them all. In the reports of the commissioners of Indian affairs, various estimates of their strength may be found, but they are all conjectural. In the report of 1862, it is stated that the Gros Ventres and Mandans, in that year, numbered 1,120, and the Aricarees (then in a separate but neighboring village) 1,000, total 2,120. In the report of 1866 are the following 'approximate numbers': Aricarees, 1,500; Mandans, 400; Gros Ventres, 400; total 2,300. In the report of 1871, the population is thus given: Aricarees, 1,500; Mandans, 400; Gros Ventres, 400; total, 'about' 2,300. In these estimates, which vary greatly, the first gives the population of the Gros Ventres and Mandans together as more than the Rees; while, in the second and third estimates, the Rees are represented as about twice as numerous as the other two tribes together. In this respect, believe the first quoted estimate to be nearest the truth; for the houses occupied by the Gros Ventres and Mandans number more than those occupied by the Rees. In the estimate of 1866, it will be seen that the Gros Ventres and Mandans are represented as equal to one another. I have many reasons for believing this representation to be incorrect. The conjecture of the writer, based upon all ascertainable data, is that, within the past ten years, the proper population of the village has never been more than 2,500, and that, at present, it is much less. It is pretty certain, too, that of the three tribes, the Aricarees stand first in numerical strength, the Hidatsa second, and the Mandans third.

"However, if a perfect census of the village was taken any day, when no hunting parties were out, it would not show the strength of these tribes; for the scouts who are enlisted at distant posts, their families, and the Minnetarees, who, of late years, have gone to live with the Crows, constituting in all a large proportion of this people, could not be included." (p. 16-17.)

We quote the following valuable extract from Mathews' regarding various languages of the Fort Berthold confederates:

Conversation—Distinct Languages. "To the philologist, it is an interesting fact that this trio of savage clans, although now living in the same village, and having been next door neighbors to each other for more than a hundred years, on terms of peace and intimacy, and to a great extent intermarried, speak, nevertheless, totally distinct languages, which show no perceptible in-

clination to coalesce. The Mandan and Gros Ventre (or Minnetaree) languages are somewhat alike, and probably of a very distinct common origin; but no resemblance has yet been discovered between either of these and the Aricaree ('Ricaras'). Almost every member of each tribe understands the languages of the other tribes, yet he speaks his own most fluently; so it is not an uncommon thing to hear a dialogue carried on in two languages, one person, for instance, questioning in Mandan, and the other answering back in Gros Ventre, and vice versa.

"Many of them understand the Dakota tongue, and use it as a means of intercommunication, and all understand the sign language. So, after all, they have no trouble in making themselves understood by one another. These Indians must have excellent memories and 'good capacity for study;' for it is not uncommon to find persons among them, some even under twenty years of age, who can speak fluently four or five different languages." (p. 17-18.)

As showing the aptness of the Rees and Mandans in working in glass or obsidian, Matthews says:

Glass-Work—Beads. "The articles of glass spoken of above are chiefly of two kinds. First, large, globular, or ellipsoidal beads; and, second, flat, irregularly triangular plates or pendants, which are glazed only on one side, and have a hole at the apex. The art of making these deserves more than a mere mention, since it is commonly believed that the aboriginal Americans, even the more civilized races, knew nothing of the manufacture of glass at the time of the Columbian discovery. The very earliest ethnographical account we have of the Aricarees and Mandans shows that they knew how to make glass beads; and there is no doubt that the process employed in 1804 was essentially the same as that employed today." (Here follows the account given by Lewis and Clarke, already set forth herein and quoted by Matthews; after which he resumes:)

Not Glass Product. "This art is now only occasionally practiced in the village, and is mostly confined to the making of the flat triangular pendants. I have heard the process described in much the same way as in the above quotation. From this quotation, however, which is in part ambiguous, the inference might be drawn that the ornaments, when completed consist entirely of

glass. Such is not the case in those I have seen; on the contrary, they consist of a core of baked earth covered with a thin shell of glass; and they have the appearance of having been perforated before heat was applied. But in the matter of making the holes, the process may have been changed, or there may have been two ways of doing it." (p. 20-21.)

Rees and Mandans—Glazed Ornaments? "The art of making these ornaments would appear to be old; yet the process as it existed in 1804 was evidently in part recent, since the Indians obtained the glass which they used from the whites. I have been informed by the Indians that in old days the art flourished among the Aricarees as well as among the Mandans; and certainly at the present day the Aricaree women understand it. I had two of the triangular pendants made to order in 1870, by an Aricaree woman, to whom I furnished the blue glass necessary. When I gave instructions to have the articles made, I was invited to witness the process, but circumstances prevented me from doing so. One of these pendants was sent to the Smithsonian Institution. It is strange, if true, that these Indians should have obtained their knowledge of this art from the Snake Indians, a ruder and equally remote tribe. It is also strange, and undoubtedly true, that in 1804, as well as now, they did not make their glass, but obtained it ready-made, and merely fused it for their purposes, obtaining it, doubtlessly, from the whites. It is strange that within a few years after glass beads of European manufacture were first introduced among them, and when such beads must have commanded a high price, they should pulverize them and use the powder in making ruder and more unsightly articles after their own design. But it is not probable that they should have learned such an art from civilized people prior to 1804, when they had as yet seen but few whites, and when the whites they had seen were mostly rude Canadian frontiersmen, among whom it is not reasonable to suppose there were any persons versed in glass-making. I have heard Indians say, with uncertainty, that in former times they found glass in the hills, and pounded it for their beads; meaning perhaps that they used natural glass, which may be found where lignite beds have taken fire, and elsewhere on the upper Missouri. In view of all these facts, I have conjectured that they had the art of making glazed earthen ornaments before

the whites came among them; and that when they saw the brilliantly colored beads of the traders, they conceived the idea of improving their art by using these beads. If they ever possessed the art of making glass *de novo*, there is no record, tradition, or other evidence of it, that I have been able to find."

Was It Ancient Art. "One of many reasons, though perhaps an insufficient reason, for believing the art to be of no recent origin among them, is that they used the triangular pendants, not as ornaments only, but as evidences of betrothal, as long ago as the oldest men can remember. When a girl was promised in marriage in her infancy by her parents, as was not infrequently done, one of these pendants was tied to her forelock so as to hang down over her forehead. When the promise was fulfilled, the husband removed the pendant and threw it away." (p. 22-23.)

Inter-Tribal Trade. "With the nomadic tribes around, they exchanged their agricultural produce for horses, and, recently, for robes. When the Dakotas saw a certain flower (*Liatris punctata*) blooming on the prairie, they knew that the corn was ripe, and went to the villages of the farming Indians to trade. From the time they came in sight of the village to the time they disappeared there was a truce. When they had passed beyond the bluffs, they might steal an unguarded pony or lift a scalp, and were in turn liable to be attacked." (p. 27.)

Trade With Pacific Coast—Shells. "It appears probable that they once carried on trade indirectly with the tribes of the Pacific coast, for they had *Dentalium* shells similar to those obtained on the Pacific and they prized them so highly that the white traders found it advisable to obtain them for the trade. As late as 1866, ten of these shells, of inferior size, costing the traders only a cent a piece, would buy a superior buffalo robe, and formerly only two or three of the same quality were paid for a robe. Modern traders, with whom the writer had conversed, obtained their shells from eastern importers, and know nothing of the original source of supply. They supposed them to come from the Atlantic coast or the Great Lakes, and called them 'Iroquois shells,' which is probably their corruption of the Chinook 'hyakwa;' but it is possible the reverse is the case.

"They also used, and still use, as ornaments, fragments of the **Abalone** shells (one or more species of *Haliotis*) of the Pacific.

These are now supplied to the trade under the name of California shells. Ten years ago, one of these shells, unpolished, sold for a good robe. There is little doubt that they used Abalone, Dentalium, and other sea shells before the traders brought them. Old traders and old Indians say so. Even as late as 1833, it would seem that they had not yet become a regular part of a trader's outfit; for Maximilian says of the Mandans: "They do not disfigure the bodies; only they make some apertures in the outer rim of the ear, in which they hang strings of beads, brass, or iron rings of different sizes, or shells, the last of which they obtain from other Indian tribes. If they are questioned respecting these shells, they answer that they were brought from the sea." (p. 23.)

Matthews quotes the following expressions from D. D. Mitchell, found in Schoolcraft's work, concerning visitors to the Mandans in the eighteenth century:

McIntosh's Early Visit. "In a letter published in Schoolcraft's **Information Respecting the Indian Tribes**, the writer, D. D. Mitchell, says, speaking of the Mandans: "The early portion of their history I gather from the narration of Mr. McIntosh, who, it seems, belonged to, or was in some way connected with, the French trading company as far back as 1772. According to his narration, he set out from Montreal in the summer of 1773, crossing over the country to the Missouri river, and arrived at one of the Mandan villages on Christmas day." I have never seen McIntosh's account, nor have I seen any more extensive notice of it than the one given by Mr. Mitchell; and from this, it does not appear that McIntosh visited any of these agricultural Indians except the Mandans." (p. 29.)

And Matthews expresses the view that British and French traders and interpreters were among the Mandans prior to 1804, all of which appears in evidence hereinbefore submitted. He believes the earliest Europeans to reach them were from Hudson Bay territory, but he was, as he admits (p. 29), unaware of Verendrye's expedition referred to by Catlin, who is criticised by Matthews for failing to "tell us where the account of the expedition of 1738 is to be found," adding: "No other mention of the journey has ever been seen by me."

Matthews thus refers to the peaceable relations nearly always existing between the Mandans and Rees and the Americans:

Peaceable With Americans—Government Neglect. "During a short period of their history, the Aricarees were at war with the Americans; but for many years they have strictly maintained peace, and have fought with us and against our enemies. The Mandans and Minnetarees claim never to have shed a white man's blood, although some of their number have been killed by whites. For their fidelity they have been repaid in starvation and neglect. Many of these friendly Indians, particularly among the Aricarees, have during the past ten years, died of actual hunger or the diseases incident to a state of famine. Within the past three years there seem to be some evidences of increased legislative interest in them, but the benefits arising therefrom are by no means equal to their needs or their deserts." (p. 31-32.)

Complexion—Hidatsa and Mandan. "The majority of the Hidatsa have the ordinary dusky Indian complexion, which is, however, not of a uniform shade, as far as I have seen in any tribe. There are none of this nation that would be considered dark for Indians. Among various tribes of western Indians may be found individuals, claiming pure aboriginal blood, who possess complexions much fairer than the average Indian, with light-colored hair and eyes. Such individuals are more common among the Mandans and Minnetarees than they are among most of the neighboring tribes. A natural or inherited clearness of complexion, too, is more easily discernable among members of the village tribes than among members of roving bands who are more exposed to the weather. The presence of pale Indians in these tribes was noted by travelers in early days, before intermarriages with whites were common enough to have accounted for it."

Mandans' Fair Skin. "Lewis and Clarke and Gass notice this fairness when speaking of the Mandans only, but their remarks are general. Catlin speaks of the fairness of the Mandans only, and supposes this peculiarity to arise from some pre-Columbian infusion of European blood. The Prince of Neuwied, who visited these tribes but one year later than Mr. Catlin, denies that the Mandans are of fairer complexion than their neighbors, while he asserts, at the same time, that, 'after a thorough ablution, the skin of some of them appears almost white.' I have heard old Mandans say that when the Minnetarees, including the Crows, first came among them, the strangers were a fairer race than they.

"Of the Crows, who, as before shown, once formed one nation with the Hidatsa, Colonel Reynolds, in his Report of the Exploration of the Yellowstone (1859), p. 48, says: 'The Crows are fairer than the Sioux, many of the mountain band being sallow and hardly a shade darker than whites who undergo similar exposure. This fact was so marked that the first seen were supposed to be half breeds, but we were assured that they were of pure Indian descent.'"

European Blood Not Essential. "It is not necessary to suppose that an intermixture of European blood in order to account for lightness of color in an Indian. There is no reason why marked varieties of color should not arise in the red race as it has done in other races of men, and as it has so often done, under cultivation, within specific limits in the lower animals. I have seen full-blooded Indians who were whiter than some half-breeds and whiter than the darkest representatives of the Aryan race. An increase of hairiness is a more reliable sign of Caucasian blood in an Indian than a diminution of color in the skin; and I never could discover that those fair Indians, claiming pure blood, were more hairy than others. The fairness of which I speak is not albinism, for the eyesight of the fair Indians is as perfect as that of the dark; they have no unusual appearance of the pupil, and exposure to sunlight darkens their skins. I have never seen an Albino Indian."

Gray Hair—Minnetarees and Mandans. "Among various western tribes, individuals may be found who are characterized, even in childhood, by having coarse gray hair. From all I could see and learn, I should think that such persons are more numerous among the Minnetarees and Mandans than in any other tribe; and they are perhaps the most numerous among the Mandans." (pp. 43 and 44.)

Language Sonants—Mandans Different. "If a party of Indians should be seated in an adjoining room, or at a short distance from the listener, conversing, where the voices can be heard, but not a syllable distinguished, the accustomed ear has little difficulty in discerning which one of the many languages of the plains the Indians are speaking. Each language has its own peculiar sonant character. It is more difficult to distinguish by this character the Hidatsa from the Crow than from the Dakota

or Mandan, and more difficult to distinguish it from the latter than from the former of these two. The tones of these four languages belonging to the Dakota group are somewhat alike; so much alike that a person possessing but limited acquaintance with them might mistake one for another, hearing it at a distance as I have described. But the contrast in tone between these tongues and the neighboring, but alien, Aricaree is well marked, and any quick-eared person might learn at once to distinguish it from them."

Matthews declares that the tendency to coalescence in the languages of the tribes confederated at Ft. Berthold has been slight since they were known to the whites. He says:

Changes in Course of Time. Coalescence Slight. "I have said that the three languages spoken in the village at Fort Berthold show no perceptible inclination to coalesce (Ethnography, Sec. 13.) I have said this, well knowing that the statement was somewhat at variance with the opinions of earlier observers. The few Mandan and Minnetaree words given by Lewis and Clarke in proper names show, as far as they go, that the languages have not materially changed since 1804. There are now, and doubtless there were in 1804, many points of correspondence between the Mandan and Hidatsa languages; but there are none which may not be more easily explained by supposing the two languages to have sprung from a common source than by supposing them to have been reciprocally changed by contact. I never could discover that the Hidatsa and Mandan spoken by the rising generation resembled one another more than did those languages spoken by the old men. I do not claim that the long and intimate intercourse which has existed between these two tribes has produced no approximation or coalescence of their languages. It is but reasonable to suppose that the contrary is the case; but I could never get an Indian to point out to me, nor could I ever otherwise discover, a satisfactory instance of such coalescence." (p. 84-85.)

He further claims that the Mandan and Aricaree languages are totally different:

Mandan and Ree Languages—No Resemblance. "Throughout the past hundred years, the Mandans have had as much intercourse with the Aricarees as with the Minnetarees; yet I never

could trace any resemblance between the modern Mandan and Aricaree tongues. As far as I have observed them, there is not a single word alike in both. It is not likely that intercourse has produced a noteworthy approximation of languages in one case and none whatever in the other. There is no doubt that the Hidatsa language has changed in the course of time; but the change has resulted chiefly from causes other than the influence of the Mandan tongue. Some of the old men occasionally converse among themselves in terms which younger members of the tribe do not understand, and, when asked what they mean, they say they are trying to speak the old language." (p. 84.)

Rev. Stephen R. Riggs, D. D., LL. D., who was for so long a missionary of the Congregational church among the Dakota and other Indians, and who is author of the "Dakota Grammar and Dictionary" and "Gospel Among the Dakotas," has, in his book entitled "Mary and I. Forty Years With the Sioux" (W. C. Holmes, Chicago, 1880), given some account of the Mandans, whom he visited at Fort Berthold in 1874. We quote from said work, pages 271, et seq., the following:

Riggs' Observations On Mandans. "Here (at Fort Berthold, N. D.) were gathered the remnant of the Mandans, only a few hundred persons, and the Rees, or Aricarees, a part of the Pawnee tribe, and the Gros Ventres, or Minnetaree, properly the Hidatsa. Altogether they numbered about two thousand souls. We had before this entertained the desire that we might be able to establish a mission among these people, and this thought or hope gave interest to my visit. The Mandan and the Hidatsa languages were both pretty closely connected with the Dakota; but what seemed to bring these nearer to us was the fact that many of all these people could understand and talk the Dakota, that forming a kind of common language for them.

"Howard Mandan, or 'The-man-with-a-sacred-face,' as his Indian name is interpreted, was the son of Red Cow, the principal chief of the Mandans, and had been taken down by Gen. C. H. Howard, a year before, and placed in A. L. Riggs' school at Santee. Howard had returned home before my visit, and also Henry Eaton, a Hidatsa young man, who had been east a good many years and talked English well.

"George Catlin had, many years ago, interested us in the Man-

dans, by his effort to prove, from their **red hair** in some cases—perhaps only **redded hair**—and, in some instances, blue eyes, and the resemblances which he claims to have found in their languages—that they were the descendants of a Welsh colony that had dropped out of history a thousand years ago. And Dr. Washington Matthews, of the United States army, had created in us a desire to do something for the spiritual enlightenment of the Hidatsa, by his admirable grammar and dictionary of their language. In his introduction to this book he gives us much valuable information about the people.”

“Minnetaree.” “Hidatsa, he tells us, is the name by which they call themselves. They are better known to us by the names Minnetaree and Gros Ventre. This last is a name given them by the Canadian French, and without any special reason. It is a fact that Indians can eat large quantities of food, but it is very rarely indeed that you will find one whose appearance would justify the epithet Gros Ventre. The other term, Minnetaree, is the name given them by the Mandans, and means **to cross the water**. The story is, that when the Hidatsa people came to the Missouri river from the northeast, the Mandan village was on the west side of the river. They called over, and the Mandans answered back in their own language, ‘Who are you?’ The Hidatsa not understanding it, supposed they had asked, ‘What do you want?’ And so replied, ‘Minnetaree, **to cross over the water.**’”

The “Underground” Myths. “Whence came the Hidatsa? Their legend says they originally lived **under** a great body of water which lies far to the northeast of where they now live. From this under-water residence some persons found their way out, and discovering a country much better than the one in which they lived, returned and gave to their people such glowing accounts of their discoveries that the whole nation determined to come out. But owing to the breaking of a tree on which they were climbing out of the lake, a great part of the tribe had to remain behind in the water, and they are there yet.

“This is very much like the myth of another tribe, who lived under the ground by a lake. A large grape-vine sent its tap root through the crust of the earth, and by that they commenced to climb out. But a very fat woman taking hold of the vine, it

broke, and the remainder were doomed to stay where they were. Do such legends contain any reference to the great deluge?

"After the Hidatsa came up they commenced a series of wanderings over the prairie. During their migrations they were often ready to die of hunger, but were always rescued by the interference of their deity. It was not manna rained down around their camp, but the stones of the prairie were miraculously changed into buffalo, which they killed and ate. After some time they sent couriers to the south, who came back with the news that they had found a great river and a fertile valley, wherein dwelt a people who lived in houses and tilled the ground. They brought back corn and other products of the country. To this beautiful and good land the tribe now directed their march, and, guided by their messengers, they reached the Mandan villages on the Missouri river. With them they camped and learned their peaceful arts.

"Dr. Matthews says they have a tradition that, during these years of wandering, the Genius of the Sun took up one of the Hidatsa maidens, and their offspring came back, and, under the name of Grand-Child, was the great prophet and teacher of his mother's people. Can that have any reference to the 'Son of Man?'"

Confederates' Languages. "These Indians, the Mandans, the Hidatsa, and the Rees, live in one village at Berthold, in all numbering over two thousand; and they have lived together, as we know, more than a hundred years, and yet the languages are kept perfectly distinct and separate. Many of them learn each other's language; and many of them talk Dakota also. 'Many years ago they were considered ripe for the experiments of civilization; they stand today just as fit subjects as ever for the experiment, which never has been, and possibly never will be, tried.' This is Dr. Matthews' statement. Let us hope that the latter part may not be prophetic."

Brower's Views. "Hon. Jacob V. Brower, a deep student and investigator into the Indians of the Missouri valley as well as of the archeology and other phases of that region, published, at St. Paul, Minn., in 1897, one of his works entitled, 'The Missouri River and Its Utmost Sources.' Indian ethnology is treated of therein, and of the Mandans and their recent allies he speaks, as

shown in part by extracts found below. He claims to have found in the upper Missouri regions and near the sources of the Mississippi, evidences of prehistoric Mound Builders' work. The Yellowstone Park region is also referred to in connection with the theory concerning alleged evidences there of prehistoric implements of obsidian materials, etc. Mr. Brower investigated southerly as far as the Indian Territory, into the archeology of the Pawnees, and declared that he had traced the Aricarees from the upper Missouri to that region through finding the pink chert arrowheads, etc., which were discovered throughout the entire length of that valley; some of his statements being found herein in connection with his correspondence with Mr. Steinbreuck, of Mandan, N. D. The extracts follow:

The Mound Builders On Upper Mississippi and Missouri. "Now comes the necessity of briefly referring to the prehistoric Mound Builders, for their remnants, remains, tumuli, pottery, stone and copper implements, arrow points, spears, village sites and effigies are everywhere found in the upper portion of the basin of the Mississippi, and far up toward the mountain sources of the Missouri and its branches."

Crossed Continental Divide. "They were a courageous people, industrious, possessed of ability, were geographers of no limited ideas, penetrating to the utmost limits of the central and western portions of the United States and across the continental divide into Canadian territory, maintained mines in the copper regions of Superior, and discovered portages leading to and from all the principal water courses in the territory occupied."

Unsolved Mystery—Controversy Vindictive. "No individual member of the present generation of the Anglo-Saxon race can truthfully state who the Mound Builders were, where they came from, or whence they departed. There seems to be an unfathomable mystery surrounding their former existence, and it is not probable that it will ever be solved satisfactorily. Opinions differ, and the controversy, which has continued for nearly a century in contemporaneous archaeological history, has been so unfortunate and vindictive that misleading and deceptive assertions, based only upon set opinions that may be entirely erroneous, have been forced upon unwilling readers, who are cheerfully searching for accurate information, until the point has been reached where

the record made is almost draped in the folds of acrimony and distortion.

"Standing aside from these acrimonious controversies, which deteriorate the value and reliability of conclusions drawn and opinions formulated, the unbiased course is left open for all these who seek for the most reliable information concerning an extinct race of men, of whom we know so little. Builders of mounds have existed from time to time for many centuries, in various parts of the world, but none more systematic and uniquely interesting than prehistoric man in the upper basin of the Mississippi."

Minnesota Effigies. "In 1894 in company with Dr. Shanafelt and Rev. S. Hall Young, the editor of these notes had the pleasure of exploring the remarkable Tascodiae effigies, situated in northern Minnesota at the most northerly course of the Mississippi, approximately, latitude 47 degrees, 30 minutes; longitude 94 degrees, 45 minutes, west of Greenwich."

Prehistoric Mound Near Bismarck—Not Mandan? "On the west bank of Apple creek, at the Sibley rifle-pits, near Bismarck, N. D., in July, 1895, a genuine prehistoric mound was discovered by the writer, upon section 27, township 138, range 80, west of the fifth principal meridian. The attention of Mr. Walter F. Cushing, secretary of the State Historical Society at Bismarck, was called toward this discovery. On the 12th of September last Mr. Cushing caused this mound to be excavated and explored, and the evidences were sufficient to determine that the mound was not of Mandan origin but prehistoric in all its surroundings, 1,436 miles above the mouth of the Missouri. This class of mounds are found in many parts of the two Dakota states, but systematic exploration has not yet been extended sufficiently toward the upper branches of the Missouri to certainly ascertain how far up those streams the Mound Builders extended their occupancy previous to the advent of the North American Indian."

At Head-Waters of Mississippi Branches. "It is now known as a certainty that they penetrated northward to Itasca lake and every branch of the Mississippi in its upper or head-water basin. As the Yellowstone National Park is situated immediately east of the most remote branch of the Missouri, numerous explorations near the Obsidian quarries of that wonderful locality are perti-

nent, and Capt. Hiram M. Chittenden, United States army, has considerably furnished for these pages the following condensed account of the researches of Colonel Norris, formerly superintendent of the park, and who divided the honor of the discovery of the Obsidian cliff with Mr. W. H. Holmes."

(Here Brower quotes sundry statements and conclusions from Col. Norris' reports as superintendent of the Yellowstone National Park, in which the latter refers to alleged steatite vessels, and which he believed differed from other specimens east or west, found by him in that park, and then quotes from Chittenden as follows in part:)

Norris' Conclusions Criticized. "In attempting to draw conclusions from evidence like the foregoing, it is necessary to take into consideration the personal characteristics of its author. Colonel Norris had a large admixture of quixotism in his nature, and the park was just the place to draw it all out. He saw everything there through a magnifying glass; and, like Don Quixote, beheld in what he saw the embodiment of all his overwrought fancy had led him to expect. It was an impossibility for him to talk or write of that region without exaggeration—not intentional, but the natural overflow of his exuberant imagination. All his distances, descriptions of scenery, personal achievements, are grossly overstated."

Further on Chittenden's observations furnished to Brower he says:

Vessels Not by Civilized Races. "It is wholly impossible to accept Norris' discoveries as affording the least support to the conclusions which he draws from them. Even admitting that he did find remnants of hand-wrought vessels, it is to be observed that they were found in the valleys of the Madison or the Yellowstone and its principal eastern tributary—in both cases along routes of travel. They were evidently dropped by migrating parties and were brought from points outside the park. Considering the nature of the park climate, which can hardly be supposed to have been less rigid than now since the advent of man upon earth, it is clearly impossible that this region could ever have been occupied by races pursuing the arts of civilized life."

And Chittenden concludes that those implements were furnished by older generations of the Indians:

Indians' Ancestors Worked Obsidian. "But while there is nothing on which to base a conclusion that a more civilized race once dwelt in the park, there is conclusive evidence that the ancestors of the present Indian races resorted to that region for the manufacture of implements or war and of the chase. Since the time when Obsidias discovered the volcanic glass which now bears his name, that material has been wrought into innumerable devices for ornament and use. Obsidian is an opaque, black, glassy substance, breaking with a conchoidal fracture and yielding sharp-edged fragments which have long been used in the manufacture of primitive weapons of destruction. Perhaps no better or more abundant quarry for this material is to be found in the world, than in the now celebrated Obsidian cliffs in the Yellowstone National Park."

And after referring to Prof. W. H. Holmes' report in the Hayden report of 1883, in which the former expresses the belief that these implements were made by visiting Indians from "neighboring valleys," and who refers to certain trails passing that vicinity—Chittenden quotes from Norris' vivid description of the famous Obsidian cliffs in the Yellowstone Park, and concludes:

"The facts set forth in these extracts have since been abundantly verified. Arrow and spear heads and similar instruments, generally composed of obsidian, have been found throughout the park in considerable numbers. Their discovery does not in any way establish an early occupancy of this region by Indians. Being generally found on the lines of trails, they may have been, and probably were for the most part, dropped by wandering bands who were crossing the park or visiting this quarry."

We will quote at some length from Hon. Olin D. Wheeler's interesting and valuable work, "The Trail of Lewis and Clarke" (Putman's Sons, 1904), wherein he publishes his views upon various characteristics of the Mandans; and concerning the visits of early explorers; extracts from which publication we are, through the courtesy and deep interest of that able and attractive writer, permitted to make in this paper, and for which this society wishes to express its appreciations:

Wheeler's Observations. "The first mention made of the Mandans was by Verendrye, the father, who, with two of his sons saw them in the Missouri in 1738. The sons again saw them in

1742, on what is now assumed to have been the first expedition to attempt to explore the Rocky mountains." (Wheeler.)

Stationary—Agriculturists. "The Mandans were not like the other plains' Indians—hostile, nomadic, improvident, etc. It has been their boast—I am not sure how true it may be—that, like the Flatheads, the blood of the white man has never been spilled by them. They lived, as our story reveals, in stockaded villages of earthen huts, made war on other tribes defensively only, cultivated the ground, raising corn, pumpkins, squashes, beans, etc., and were, all in all, deserving in most ways of the high opinions formed of them by Lewis and Clarke. In a rough way these Mandans were, probably, more nearly comparable to the peaceful, town-living Pueblos of the southwest than any other tribes." (p. 211.)

Verendrye's Visits. "In pursuance of his plan to discover the Western Sea, Verendrye the elder, with his two sons, some Frenchmen, and Indians, thirty-four persons in all, left Fort la Reine—now Portage la Prairie—in Manitoba, in the fall of 1738, and reached the Mandans after a trip of much toil and hardship. Here he purposed remaining during the winter, but his interpreter deserted him and, after prevailing upon two Frenchmen to remain and learn the Mandan language, Verendrye, utterly disgusted and broken-hearted, returned with the rest to Fort la Reine, reaching there February 11, 1739. The state of his feelings may be discerned from his cry that, 'death alone can deliver us from such miseries.'

"Going to Montreal, in 1739, Verendrye returned to Fort la Reine in 1741, and found that his eldest son, the Chevalier, had just reached there from another trip to the Mandans, where he had obtained a cotton blanket said to have come from white men (Spaniards?) near the Western Sea.

"Another expedition was planned and, led by the Chevalier Verendrye and his brother, it left Fort la Reine April 29, 1742, and arrived at the Mandan towns on May 18th. There they remained until late in July waiting for the 'Gens des Chevaux'—People of the Horses—Indians who were to act as their guides. But these not appearing, they obtained two Mandan guides and started for the Western Sea." (p. 213.)

Wheeler thus criticises the accounts which ascribe to Mandan

lodges a circular form; and Catlin's alleged failure to truly depict those habitations as to appearance, etc.:

"Mrs. Baker, a daughter of Two Chiefs, an old Mandan who has seen seventy-two snows, and a graduate of the Indian school at Santee, Neb., and who converses and writes well in English, stated that there were not more than five or six earth lodges to be found on the reservation today.

"The word 'circular' used by the writers quoted in describing these huts must be taken in its larger, general meaning. The huts were really irregularly polygonal in shape. Those I saw were forty feet in diameter, perhaps, and the first had nine sides and second eleven. In one case one of the sides was double the length of the others."

Catlin Criticised. "Catlin's pictorial representations of these huts are not true to nature. The lodges were of a much more squatty appearance than he depicts them and without any such high arched, dome-like, hemispherical roof as he places upon them. He evidently adopted a conventional and largely imaginary figure for his huts, and pushed artistic license to the extreme. At a little distance the general effect was sufficiently that of a 'circular' structure to justify the use of the word when not used in a restrictive sense.

"When at Fort Berthold, I was informed that the very aged Mandan chief, Rushing Eagle, or more commonly, Bad Gun, descended from the great chief Four Bears, whom, I regret, I was not able to see, had kept standing until recently a very old lodge in which he kept some ancient relics, and that among these were some of the identical articles that Catlin had painted into his pictures in 1832. I was not able to verify this. The lodge had but lately been destroyed because of its age and decaying condition." (p. 221.)

Of the Mandan lodges Wheeler observes:

Lodges. "In my visit to the reservation in the fall of 1902 I saw two of these lodges and obtained photographs of them. If there were any differences between these and those of one hundred years ago, except the substitution of wooden for skin doors, they were so slight as not to be noticeable off-hand.

"At one of them, the owner being absent, I was unable to enter it, but through a wide crack in the door I obtained a good view

of the interior and it fitted well with the descriptions here given of the old lodges. It was evidently used at the present time for a storage house, at least to some extent, and was not a regular residence, for the log cabin home of the owner stood along side of it.

"At the other hut, across the Missouri river and several miles distant from the first one, the owner refused me permission to invade it, stating that it was used for ceremonial purposes." (p. 220.)

Prototype of Sod Houses. "After my inspection of the two earthen houses mentioned, I could not but be impressed with the fact that these old Mandan and Aricaree lodges were practically the prototypes of the settler's sod house of the prairies of recent time. The sides and roofs of these huts were covered with sod chunks of regular shapes and sizes, just such as we would cut out of the prairie for the same purpose. The porch, covered entrance, or passage-way mentioned was and is a characteristic, standing feature of these earthen lodges, and one which Catlin persistently ignored both in his paintings and text. Maximilian brought out this peculiarity of the Mandan hut in his work."

Ancient Ladder. "In one of the illustrations of an earth hut there can be seen a notched pole leaning against a scaffold, the latter used now, as in old days, for drying corn, etc. This pole is one of the primitive ladders anciently used by these Indians, and, evidently, not yet entirely discarded."

Says Wheeler relative to the causes of migration of the Mandans on the upper Missouri:

Mandan Deserted Villages—Migrations. "The monuments of these tribes, in the shape of abandoned and ruined huts and towns, are to be found, as has been stated, on the banks of the upper Missouri from about Heart or Cannon-Ball river, below Mandan and Bismarek, to Knife river or beyond. The Indians seem, notwithstanding the great labor involved in so doing, to have moved quite frequently, not necessarily, however, for long distances. As the Sioux harrassed them continually, these removals were due in part to a desire to protect themselves more effectually, and another reason was the scarcity of fuel and timber which in time was felt in each neighborhood. In making these removals, it was quite common, as Lewis and Clarke mention,

for two small villages to combine in one at the new location. Owing to the immense difficulty of cutting timbers with their crude stone axes, in making these changes of residence they undoubtedly carried with them the timbers of the abandoned huts and used them in rebuilding, wherever possible. The Indians left Knife river because of the scarcity of timber and the attacks of the Sioux. When the trading post of Fort Berthold—so called in honor of Bartholomew Berthold, a fur trader of St. Louis—was established, about 1844 or 1845, the Indians 'drew the logs (of which it was built) with lariats of rawhide over their shoulders.' " (p. 223.)

Lodge Ruins. "The dirt mounds, ruins of their former homes, have often been mistaken for the ancient burial grounds of these tribes, which is not surprising unless one has studied the history of this interesting people. About ten miles above Bismarek one of the best of these collections of mounds is found, on a bluff overlooking one of the most beautiful stretches of the Missouri, just below Square Butte. There are eighteen or twenty of the mounds, most of them well-defined, and generally more or less circular in their form. They form a semi-circle arc, with the river as a chord, and are now more or less merged together into an irregular ridge. These mounds have been dug over and over, yet I was able to find among them many shards and arrow-points and knives when I visted them." (pp. 5-6.)

Lower Village. "The Mandans call themselves Metutahanke, the Lower Village, as Dr. Matthews gives it, or Miti-Untanhanke, the Village on the East, as it was given to, and partially written for me by Mrs. Baker, both referring to the same village, the one called Ma-too-ton-ha by Lewis and Clarke. Maximilian calls this village Mih-Tutta-Hang-Kush, and these different readings of the same word well indicate the difficulties experienced in obtaining correct Indian vocabularies."

Farmers. "These people have always been farmers, and both men and women have for years, now, shared the labors of the field. In early days they raised corn, tobacco, squashes, beans, the wild sunflower, etc., and now they grow, in addition, potatoes, turnips, and various vegetables. The Aricaree seem to be the best farmers. Each tribe now raises cattle and horses, but they do not seem to grasp the idea that cattle raising, if attended to

properly, will enrich them, a scrub lean steer being as valuable in their eyes as a fat, blooded one. These Indians are virtually self-supporting, as they receive very little from the government." (Wheeler, p. 224.)

Wheeler here notes the reason why the upper of the two Mandan villages proper near Knife river, which stood on the northeast bank of the Missouri in 1804, was found on the southwest bank in 1833:

Apparently Crossed River. "The five villages mentioned by Lewis and Clarke in 1804, were still in existence in 1833, when Maximilian visited these Indians. One important change had, he states, occurred. The Missouri river had characteristically changed its channel and in Maximilian's day flowed on the eastern side of Ropptahee, or Ruhptare, the second Mandan town of our narrative, so that both the Mandan villages were then on the western south bank."

Mandans and Hidatsas. "The tradition relating to the origin of the Mandans given by Lewis and Clarke, according to Dr. Matthews, relates, not only to the Mandans, but to the Hidatsa as well. This tradition, I find, is current at the present day and the lake from which the tribe emerged is said to be Minnewakan, or Devil's Lake in North Dakota, the Hidatsa name for this lake—Midi-hopá—meaning sacred or mysterious water. Dr. Matthews thinks that 'one nation borrowed its legend from the other,' so that both have a common source." (Wheeler, p. 228.)

Polytheism. "These people had a belief in a 'Great Spirit,' or 'Old Man Immortal,' or 'Great Mystery,' and Dr. Matthews discusses it quite fully in his paper. Their ancient belief appears to have been, on the whole, a species of Polytheism. Religious missionary work on the Fort Berthold reservation began in 1876, and since then there has been a marked change in their religious ideas. The leaven acted but slowly at first, but when its results were apparent it seemed to work with cumulative effect. 'Only a small minority of the people now hold to the wreck of their old paganism.' Carlisle, Santee, and other schools have had their influence in producing this uplift. The younger generations see things with a new and broader vision and their moral and religious notions are cast in a new mold." (Wheeler, p. 229.)

Wheeler quotes as follows from Rev. C. L. Hall, the Congrega-

tional Indian missionary who has been among the Mandans at Fort Berthold for some thirty years:

The Missionaries. "Mr. Hall, the missionary among these people, in discussing their general condition, past and present, says:

"Twenty-five years ago the old Indian community was like Sodom; now the Indians live decently on the allotments, with their wives, and none of them have more than one. There is vice to fight, but only as in every white community. Religiously the phenomena of growth are seen here as elsewhere. Form and ritual are in sight, and are adopted before the inner power is felt. The old beliefs have largely passed away from the younger generation. The Christian teaching answering to all that was of higher aspiration and better living in the old religion, has saved them from infidelity and won their intellectual faith. The church is more a social centre to them than a spiritual."

"Both the Congregationalists and Catholics now have religious organizations on the reservation. The former have three churches, and the latter a church and school combined, but this was unused at the time of the writer's visit. One of the Congregational chapels is largely the work of the Aricaree Indians. It cost nine hundred dollars, and of this the Indians contributed more than one-third. They hewed the logs and hauled the stone and lumber, the latter from a distance of sixty miles. There are also a few Episcopalians among these people." (p. 229.)

Says Wheeler of the allowances to be made in judging of the morals of the Mandans:

Morals. "In considering the moral excellencies and delinquencies of the old Mandans and allied tribes, we must necessarily, I take it, consider in connection therewith their ideas of entertainment and hospitality. And we must remember that we are reviewing the ethical acts and beliefs of an uncivilized, uncultivated people, touched with the frost of savagery and barbarism, and a hundred years removed, as well, from the canons of moral conduct at present taught them." (p. 230.)

Welsh Theory—Indian Supervision. "In the early days the Mandans were noted for their long light hair and fair complexions. This caused Catlin to exploit a notion that these people were descended from a colony of Welshmen who were supposed to have landed on the Florida coast or thereabouts in very early

days and then mysteriously to have disappeared. The hair of the men often trailed on the ground, and Henry, Catlin, and others refer to this in much detail. Now they wear their hair cut short, of their own volition, and in my brief visit I noticed no peculiarities of complexion or in color or hair. All of them, Mandans, Aricarees, and Minnetarees, seem to be a sturdy, manly set of fellows, with frank and intelligent countenances. I am inclined to think they have not had the best of supervision in the past, nor been treated with sufficient liberality and consideration by the government."

Noted Chiefs—Patriarchs. "Catlin was effusive in his praise of these Indians, and both he and Maximilian appear to have found some individuals who savored strongly of the Chingachgook type of Indian, and whose memories and virtues are venerated today. Such a man, for one, was the old Mah-to-toh-papa, or Four Bears, of Catlin, the Meto-Tope of Maximilian. and I can easily believe that Lean, or Poor Wolf, a Gros Ventre of today, now blind and infirm with the weight of his eighty-three years, has been a man that one could trust and respect. De Smet says that Four Bears was 'the most civil and affable Indian' that he ever met on the Missouri. Two-Chiefs, and Leggings, Mandans, and now old like Poor Wolf, a Gros Ventre, or Hidatsa, must also have been men of dignity and character." (Wheeler, p. 240.)

Race Declining. "As a pure race 'the polite and friendly Mandans,' as they were known to the traders, are slowly but surely declining, and it will not be long before the last one will have departed for the happy hunting grounds. The reservation rolls call for two hundred and fifty Mandans. In talking with Two-Chiefs, I asked him how many full-blood, pure Mandans he thought still remained. The old man, seventy-two years of age, stood in deep thought for several moments, and then replied, 'Not more than ten families; all the others are mixed blood.' Numerically, the tribe as a whole seems to be holding its own." (Wheeler, p. 242.)

Fort Mandan. "Not a vestige of Fort Mandan remains. On the return of the expedition in 1806, under date of August 17th, the Lewis and Clarke itinerary says: 'In reaching Fort Mandan we found a few pickets standing on the riverside, but all the houses except one, had been burnt by an accidental fire.'

"What the 'accidental fire' left, the remorseless river took long ago. The character of the Missouri along here for the rapid cutting of its banks has been abundantly shown. A century has given ample opportunity for that one hut and those few pickets to have been insidiously undermined and carried away by the stream, and we know from Maximilian that this had been done in 1833." (Wheeler, p. 271.)

Wheeler thus expresses his profound impressions upon looking up and down the Missouri from the location of Fort Mandan:

Knife River and "Coal Bluff." "As I stood on the high bluffs of the river at this point in 1899, and overlooked the scene, I was profoundly impressed. To the north the distant valley of Knife river, deep green with heavy foliage, leads down to the Missouri; to the south the rough, bluffy ground near me grows rougher and bluffer as it reaches a big bend, and the irregular, grayish, ash-colored cut bank seems like that of a prodigious railway cut; the great river, in a wide, swollen flood, rolls on as it did a hundred years ago, and in broad, massive curve sweeps around a low point on the opposite shore, when, in a mood of inconstancy, it whirls back again in the other direction, and, at the beginning of the curve, is that 'bluff of coal' mentioned by the explorers, standing out strong and plain as a guide to us. Those were the limits—the 'bluff of coal' to the south, the Knife river to the north, and between them were the old Mandan villages, now gone forever.

"There extends for one and one-half or two miles a flat, heavily timbered bottom—Elm Point it is now called, and down near the lower end of it was where old Fort Mandan stood, and with our glasses we can make out, on the opposite shore, all that is left of Fort Clarke, the trading post named after Captain Clarke, and of which but a trace remains." (p. 272.)

Wheeler thus refers to the ravages of the smallpox among the Mandans:

Smallpox. "The worst affliction of this sort was subsequent to the visits of Catlin and Maximilian, and it almost completely annihilated the Mandans, if the old accounts are fairly trustworthy.

"In 1837 the smallpox was carried among them from the Missouri river steamboat *St. Peter's*, owned by the American Fur Company, and out of 1600 Mandans, only about 31 or 32 families

were left; 500 Minnetarees out of 1000 fell victims to the pestilence, and 1500 of the 3000 Aricarees also died. The epidemic spread to the other tribes of the north, and Schoolcraft estimates that before its ravages had ceased it claimed at least 10,000 victims; Catlin and Maximilian make the number very much larger. Kenneth McKenzie, of the American Fur Company, in a letter to Catlin, written in June, 1839, states that there were 7,000 Crees and 15,000 Blackfeet wiped out by the disease. In some instances the losses were undoubtedly much exaggerated." (p. 226.)

Wheeler, quoting from Schoolcraft under this head, inserts the following:

"An eye-witness of this scene, writing from Fort Union on the 27th of November, 1837, says: 'Language, however forcible, can convey but a faint idea of the scene of desolation which the country now presents. In whatever direction you turn, nothing but sad wrecks of mortality meet the eye; lodges standing on every hill, but not a streak of smoke rising from them. Not a sound can be heard to break the awful stillness, save the ominous croak of ravens and the mournful howl of wolves fattening on the human carcasses that lie strewed around.'"

Another writer says:

"Many of the handsome Aricarees, who had recovered, seeing the disfiguration of their features, committed suicide; some by throwing themselves from rocks, others by stabbing and shooting. The prairie has become a grave-yard; its wild flowers bloom over the sepulchres of Indians."

Wheeler then resumes, thus:

"There can be no question, from all the reports, that this visitation was one of the most awful, wide-spread, decimating scourges that ever afflicted any people, not excepting the Egyptians who were made to suffer for Pharaoh's hardness of heart. In telling me about this scourge, Two-Chiefs, an old Mandan who shows marks of the disease, stated that the Gros Ventres ran away when the disease appeared—they didn't run fast enough nor far enough to escape it, however—and that when the pestilence had run its course the Aricarees moved into the Mandan villages and boldly appropriated the huts and all their belongings. The Mandans were gone, wiped out, and there were none to use the dwellings or to object to such forced occupancy. Some accounts state that

even the few surviving Mandans were driven from their own huts. Subsequently these tribes were again thus afflicted, and from one who was then stationed at Fort Clarke and an eye-witness of the fact, I am informed that suicide was committed by the victims throwing themselves over the bluffs of the river to the rocks below. De Smet states that both the smallpox and cholera created havoc among the northern Indians in 1851." (p. 227.)

The making of glass beads by the Mandans and Aricarees is alluded to by Wheeler, who says:

Glass Beads, Etc. "The Lewis and Clarke narrative for March 16th describes a process for making glass beads known to the Mandans.

"The Indians did not make the glass itself. This they obtained from the whites, but there is evidence that, prior to the appearance of the traders, they used obsidian, or natural glass, for this purpose. Dr. Matthews, as late as 1870, had flat triangular blue glass pendants made to order by an Aricaree woman, he furnishing the glass.

"These people also made unglazed pottery, mats, and baskets, ladles and spoons, from the horns of the Rocky mountain sheep (Ovis Montana) and the buffalo, and from the shoulder-blades of the bison they fashioned the hoes with which they hoed the ground in very early time. Since the whites came, the crude implements of the old days have been mostly supplanted by our household, garden, etc., utensils; but, in 1902, I purchased a fine sheep-horn ladle apparently in daily use still." (p. 228.)

Steinbreuck's Observations. Hon. E. R. Steinbreuck, field officer of the State Historical Society of North Dakota, makes the further statement to the writer, in a letter dated May 24th, 1908, concerning the Mandan deserted villages, and their former habitat, as follows:

Unsolved Problems. "I think it is a difficult and as yet unsolved problem, to write the history of the Mandans, as aborigines of South Dakota. We have the end of the trail, not so the beginning. We don't know for certain where the Mandans came from. The end is in North Dakota and that is also the beginning of the traditions of the present Mandans. Their entire knowledge of their origin is limited to the Heart river region in North Da-

kota. It is for us to find traces of the Mandans in South Dakota and farther southeast."

To further inquiries by the writer concerning the precise locations of various deserted Mandan and Aricaree villages explored by him, Mr. Steinbreuck responded with the following valuable details:

Mandan and Aricaree Village Sites. "I will answer your questions to the best of my knowledge. The seven villages are strung along the Missouri from about two miles below Apple creek on the east side to about three miles above Burnt creek on the same side. There are remains of Mandan villages on (SW 4, Sec. 14 T. 137 R. 80 NW 4, Sec. 2, T. 139, R. 81, NE 4, Sec. 21, T. 140, R. 81), on the east side, and on (Sec. 13, T. 138, R. 81, Sec. 35, T. 139, R. 81, Sec. 27, T. 139, R. 81, Sec. 33, T. 140, R. 81), on the west side.

"All those villages were found abandoned by Lewis and Clarke. Lewis and Clarke found the Mandans at the bend of the Missouri near Fort Clarke (built later during 1831-33, started by James Kipp and finished by Mitchell) a little above that fort in two villages (1804). Catlin found the Mandans there also. The Mandans and the Aricarees lived together. The smallpox epidemic was in 1837, after which the Indians moved to the Fort Berthold reservation, where the Hidatsa had gone several years prior. That is all I can tell you about the Mandans. The story goes that the Mandans and Aricarees lived together near Heart river before Lewis and Clarke's time, about twenty years before Lewis and Clarke. That is, some lived in separate villages, some lived with the Mandans. They had a quarrel and separated. Some went up the Missouri with the Mandans, to Fort Clarke, others moved down the river again to that region below the Cannon-Ball. Later, between 1804 and 1834 the balance of the Aricarees below the Cannon-Ball, became too weak, by wars and disease, to withstand the attacks of the Sioux, moved gradually up the Missouri to join their former allies, the Mandans and their own countrymen with the Mandans. This point was near Fort Clarke. There are many Aricaree villages along the Missouri, more in number, than all the Mandan village sites together. All show short time of occupation. This information is obtained by my own investigation and compared with the reports of early travelers, and especially by the study of specimens found at the differ-

ent villages, and it is no illusion to call one village a Mandan, and the other an Aricaree village of old.

"Such particulars have slipped the observation of early travelers, as they were looking more for the very goods, the Indians and for their places of habitation, and have overlooked abandoned places. Lewis and Clarke also do not mention any such abandoned village as there is the site on Sec. 30 and 31, 143, 81.

"As far as I have got in the location of villages, camps and cemeteries I have forty-five in number marked on the map, a few more to be added."

*(A map which he is preparing for the State Historical Society of North Dakota, see L.)

Under date of March 19th, 1907, Mr. Steinbreuck further states:

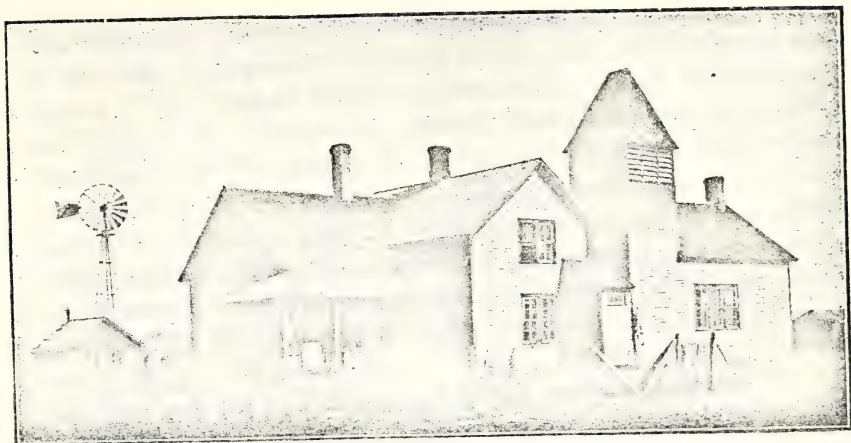
"I do not believe the Aricarees moved down the Missouri very far, since their quarrel with the Mandans. They put one river between them and the Mandans, the Cannon-Ball. Lewis and Clarke found them above Grand river. Some of the Aricarees stayed with their allies, the Mandans, and moved up stream with them from their villages near the Heart. The larger part moved up later between 1804 and 1833. I have found now forty-three villages from five miles below. Standing Rock agency, up to above Knife river, including three Hidatsa villages. Some of the villages are later than 1804, and are determinedly of Aricaree origin. Further no mention is made of those later villages by Lewis and Clarke."

Writer's Visit to Fort Berthold and Mandans. "On September 5th-7th, 1905, he who presents this paper went to Old Fort Berthold and beyond, to Elbowoods, N. D., for the purpose of gaining, if possible, some further impressions of the Mandans and of interviewing some of the leading men of the tribe on the reservation within whose limits they were living. An account of that trip, as regards the Aricarees—who were also the objective of the visit—is found in Vol. III, of the South Dakota History Collections, pages 572-583.

"Rev. C. L. Hall, who had been for about thirty years and still is Missionary of the Congregational Missionary Society among the Indians at that reservation, very kindly entertained and materially assisted the writer while there. That point, some twenty

miles west of the site of Old Fort Berthold, is yet known as the Fort Berthold Indian agency, and all of the instrumentalities of the agency, including an Indian school, were centered there, although the agency had been officially discontinued June 30, 1904. But, as stated in Part I of this paper in the account of the Aricarees, the Indians themselves were so completely separated from each other as forming tribal communities as to have erased all semblance of their former tribal relations, and had in fact taken lands in severalty and become citizens. The writer was able to interview but two Mandans in the brief time covered by his visit to that quarter, and was obliged to cross the Missouri and seek them on the southwesterly side of that stream at a point some seven miles below the mouth of the Little Missouri. Through the solicitude of Rev. Hall, and of Hon. Anzi W. Thomas, late Indian agent, an interpreter, who was assistant farmer at the agency, was furnished the writer in connection with the interviews of the Indians Bear's Ghost and Little Owl—two Mandans who were pointed out by Rev. Hall and others as likely to be able to impart information concerning the traditions of their tribe, though neither was an old man; nor was it possible to find an aged member of the tribe near the agency headquarters. Furthermore, there seemed to be no very old member of the former band or tribe within the reservation who was conspicuous as the possessor of the tribal history and traditions in an eminent degree. However, those who were interviewed were evidently equipped to intelligently communicate the seemingly common story of the creation, the flood, etc., as it was understood by the Mandans.

"It will be seen that these Indians had no definite information in the nature of tradition as to their origin; but there runs through the narrative an unmistakable thread of marine experience in passing from somewhere beyond the sea or the Mississippi into the interior; as found in the account of the boat 'without the oars'—(indicating, it is believed, sailing vessels)—the 'other Mandans' who came from 'down under the earth,' the first or 'lone man' who while wandering met the 'Coyote' from the south and together they fashioned the whole landscape, made the inhabitants of earth and air; while the 'Corn Mother' who was revered as the symbol of germination and growth, the buffalos representing the four seasons, the ducks which brought earth from under



MISSION HOUSE, ELBOWOODS, N. D.



MANDAN WOMAN SCRAPING HIDE.

the water, etc., these and kindred phases of the mythology which is the sole back-ground of their tribal past, make up the substance of the strange narratives unfolded, through the moderate abilities of the interpreter, Joseph Paekineau, son of Charles Pactineaude or Pattineaux of the fur-trading days, to the writer.

"While there was nothing specially marked about the appearance of Little Owl, we can not refrain from remarking that Bear's Ghost made a distinct impression by his bearing and the manner of his speech. He was one of the most perfect specimens of the commanding physical man we ever observed. His figure was tall and lithe, his eye exceptionally bright, intelligent and winning, his voice soft yet animating; his speech was accompanied by such grace of attitude and fitting gestures as to captivate the listener. His complexion was much lighter than that of the Sioux Indian of the Dakotas, yet not as fair as to relieve his countenance from the general impress of Indian lineage. There was, however, less than usual of the more salient Indian features in high or prominent cheek-bones and roughness of contour. He appeared, in a word, the perfect gentleman and master of expression, and it was difficult to realize that an Indian was discoursing or narrating. His entire attitude was that of intelligent handling of his subject and of utter absence of any sense of inferiority. Sincerity, and a desire to emphasize the point that what he said was truth itself—these elements gave character to his narrative. And while much that he recounted seemed trivial and fantastic, yet the air in which it was told gave his story the cast of respect if not of persuasion. We here repeat what has been said before in this paper—that it is believed it is not improbable that the reference to the vine and the under-world was derived from the tradition of the Gros Ventres or Minnetarees who probably came to the Missouri from the Devil's Lake region.

"Little Owl's account will be first given, as it was obtained first. It is seen that if his narrative and that of Bear's Ghost is given credence the Mandans came up the Missouri and from the lower Mississippi."

Little Owl's Account—The Creation, Etc. "The five villages below the Knife river. Bear-on-the-Water, and he is the oldest man, he says they came from the—where the Mississippi empties in the sea; after that I can't give you an account of it. They

had a long boat and they didn't have any oars, and the only thing they did was to get in and told the boat to go—they named it 'The Go.' The boat carried any number except seven; they wouldn't let seven ride, because the boat didn't go right, and gets wicked. They could go across the sea without the oars, they just told the boat to go. That is when they lived at the mouth of the river and the boat was in the sea. The boat would go anywhere on the water, up-stream or anywhere. There was some Indians on the other side of the sea, when the Mandans—and they go with the boat there and bring the sea shells from the other side of the sea, and the Mandans were there and part of them on this side. This boat travels without oars. So that one day Bad Boy went along and the boat was standing there on the river bank, and Bad Boy told the boat to go, and the boat went and they have never seen the boat since. Then they moved up this way; of course they called the Mississippi the Big River, and this is called the Missouri river; and they came along and in villages that you see at places, at the Mandans, from the mouth of the sea up here. The Rees have villages too; they had villages down by the Cannon-Ball and maybe further. These Mandans came all the way up to Heart river. They came up the Mississippi and up the Missouri to Heart river. Back of the Heart river they called it the Middle Hole, that is where they came from, the other Mandans. They was down in the earth and the Mandans were there; and one young man, he goes by the name of Magpie, he is a spirit, and he finds the light upon the hill up there, and he saw where the vine went up clear up to this earth here, top of the earth, so he climbed up there till he came out this way, and he see the country and the timbers and springs and grass and the games (game), and he killed some game and he took the sinews and some meat and some other part of the hide of the animal and took them down below where the others were and showed them what a nice country there was up here, and they would all go up there; and then he says 'All right, that is the place to go,' and this man took him and showed him, and then the chief says 'All right, we'll go;' and he sent all the Holy Spirit, they got the Holy Spirit, they sent them up first, and they took it up by following this vine, and each friend goes up—climbs up by himself. they go up there night and day right along, till they were about

half of them went up, and then the woman came along, she was big, and the people forbid her, and said she better come last, and the woman says 'No, I have a right to go just as well as anybody,' and she got hold of the vine and get up a little ways towards the top and broke the vine, so they—part of them are down in the earth yet; and it is a good many is here, and some of them we grow; some of my father's ancestors away back came from the earth. The vine was below here, at the Middle Hole."

The First Man. "There is a man—when this earth was no grass, no wood, nothing at all on top, just bare earth—and a man was walking along, and when he walked along and after a while he woke up, and he says 'I wonder where I come from,' all at once; then he turned around and looked at his track, the track was a buffalo track; so the man thought he must know where he come from and he followed his trail back, and then the grass was grown up and had some large white flowers on them, then another nice little fly was sitting on the flower, and the man thought this must be 'I come from here,' his tracks come from where that grass and flower is, and he looked around and he couldn't see any tracks, and the grass spoke and says 'I am the person that sent you up, the Lone Man,' that is the name they gave him, Lone Man. The little fly says to him 'We are the ones that sent you.' At the time that this man went away he had a lance block and he had his pipe when this beginning, to fix the country with, and rules with those things in the country he makes, that is, his commandments. So the Lone Man went off traveling and he met Mr. Coyote Chief, and the Lone Man thought 'I wonder where this man come from. I thought I was the only man in this world in here,' and he met this man and shook hands with him and he says 'Where you come from?' and he told him where he come from, and he says 'Where you come from too?' and Lone Man says 'I am the oldest, you will be my brother but I am the oldest, I will be the one to rule the country,' and the Coyote says 'No, I am the oldest, I will be the one to rule this country. you follow me.' So he says 'We'll go'—Coyote says 'You fix the country, you fix the north and I'll fix the south.' So they went on to fix the coulies and springs and rivers and timber and everything, and the bad lands; Coyote he made the mountains, the narrow places and more bad lands and more springs and more coulies and every-

thing so the Indians could get their arrows, and short distance for shooting, and Lone Man he makes the north, makes so many lakes, there is no timber, a flat country, nothing but a prairie, and he couldn't be seen anywheres for long distances, and no guiding place and no nothing; and he made some springs in the country, and made timber up away back, and when he makes it timber he makes a big body of timber, and then he goes along the prairie again for miles and miles and makes timber the same way. Then he makes game, buffalo all colors, like tame cattle, with white horns. Then the Coyote he made these buffalos; and after they got through they counted the head (or meat); and he says, the first thing he asked—Coyote asked of the Lone Man 'What kind of buffalo you make?' he says 'I make some gray, some white, some red and black and white horns, and all colors and long tails.' Coyote says 'You make them long, what buffalo I make it is the kind of buffalo you won't make.' So Coyote says 'I made only one white buffalo, makes them once in a while, they'll be pretty hard to get,' so it would be of more value to the Indians for their robe. So he says—Lone Man says 'All right, I'll drive back what I made into the sea, and some of these days when the rule comes to an end when our buffalo are all gone, what I make people will live on it forever.' So this Lone Man afterwards, after he got through he knew the Mandans was in the Middle Hole and he knew those on the other side of the sea, and he knew those on this side of the mouth of the river that empties into the sea; and then he looked all over the tribes and he thought that the Mandans were the quietest and best characters, and he joined in with them and staid with them. So he advised everything that is good."

The Holy Man. "He was the Holy Man, sent on with the Holy Spirit, and a man, something like the whites that believe in Christ, he was a good character, and he didn't have anything to do with women or no wife of any kind; so the other Coyote and Rees—he makes a good country and good things, but on the other hand he was not as good as Lone Man; so they didn't take his advice but they took Lone Man's advice. He has a pipe, they got his pipe today, and they got his lance block, and they believe in him. So the Mandans they lived on Heart river. That name is by reason that right there where the Mandans is they called the

river the Heart river, that is in the middle, from where you go from there to the south to the sea, and east the same distance, and north and west the same distance—right in the middle there, and so they called it the Heart.”

The Middle Hole. “The first man (named above as being on the water), his ancestors came from the mouth of the river, and my ancestors and all other Mandans came from the Middle Hole.”

Went to Winnipeg. “My father was Hit-him-in-the-Back; I was born in Ft. Berthold; am forty years old. My father was born in the Five Villages away down the river. The Five Villages was about ninety years ago. They lived there right after the smallpox was there. The villages down the Missouri river through South Dakota and to the Mississippi, that had ditches around them, were Mandan villages. The Rees have villages down here this side (north) of the Cheyenne river, just about there. They had five villages too. I don't know how far south of the Cheyenne they had villages. The Mandans grow as a people, and there are so many people and each one has a head man and chief; and they have taken their places all over, and one of the villages has gone at that time to the north to Winnipeg, and during that time one of the villages has gone again—one of the villages which the chief controls has gone; and the chief is called Tattooed Face and he has great control over the people and the largest village; and no one could tell where he went to those people. So this Winnipeg went over there, and five brothers, four of them goes in this spirit in the buffalo bulls—they were buffalo, and the youngest brother, the fifth one was a magpie, and their mother was Corn. So they went away to the north here where the Winniwegs were, and in the large timber there, they had their village there. They started from her, this side of Bismarek; and so Magpie goes out and roams around the country, and he comes back, and all his brothers were sitting and eating and laughing and enjoying themselves and plenty to eat and everything, and he sat down and he says ‘My brothers, there's hard times coming;’ so the August Buffalo Bull and the Fall Bull and the March Bull and the June Bull—so the August Bull said ‘There's no hard times here’ before he asked any questions—each one of the chiefs represents three months—so he says ‘I call any of the buffalo, at the call buffalo they come in all the houses here, the children

have plenty to eat, when the fall comes the Fall Chief calls the buffalo, and when winter comes the Winter Bull calls them,' etc. He says 'Our mother Corn Woman will plant corn on the rocks and it will grow anywheres;' so the boy Magpie he showed up. Then Magpie he has power too, he says 'I want to move to the Missouri river, I don't want to stay here in the north.' Then he got the old crier out to say that those men were going to move and that these people must go; so he brings back about half of the people—half of a village. Then he came over here to Bird's Bill at Fort Rice. And then it came to the winter, and then the buffalos and the north wind laps them, blow and storm, and they are starving; and they sent Jack Rabbit over there to Magpie's village to see how he was getting along, and they gave him two sunflower seed, so he had some of them take it back. 'They aint starving,' he said, 'They are all right;' and they took their buffalo robes and painted it right and left to hang up, so it looks like flesh, and they were kind of starving too, so he deceived them; all these buffalo robes kept all the buffalos away from him, so he deceived him. So Jack Rabbit told them 'You had better burn up the old wooden pans, etc., and call Lone Man, you are in hard shape.' So he did hallo for Lone Man, and Lone Man didn't come but sent Chinook Wind and drove all the cold away, and it kept going to the north and they are all right. So about one year from that time a flood came there and wiped out all of the houses on the north to Winnipeg, and there was a great big lodge of four of the Bulls—his brother on top of the lodge—and he came in there and says 'You said there was no hard time.' the one that spoke before he spoke first again, he says 'Why, you must have your heart just like a bone, you never told us this.' and Magpie says 'I tried to tell you about the hard times but you never gave me any show, no person could explain it to you, all you depend on you call buffalo, you don't look to other things.' 'Where's my mother?' he says. 'Your mother is right down straight here in the ground, she can't come, but she will if you want her.' And she says 'My son, are you here?' 'Yes, mother, but wait a while till I call you.' Then he went to work and pulled the bull's hair up on the top of his head to make a string to tie them like a loup, and when he got through—'Now,' he says 'I am ready, now you come, mother.' And she came up on

the ear of yellow corn, she shot up like that—" (indicating)," and he got hold of her and put that string loup around her. When he comes up he got her around the neck and hung it down cross-ways, and they started to swim to the river. They had an awful long swim and got over here back half way to Winnipeg, and he drowned first, and the August Bull drowned and the Winter Bull he drowned, two of them. The second Bull says 'There will be plenty of buffalo here when I am gone.' So the Fall Buffalo drowned, the third. And the Spring Buffalo he landed in Bird's Bill, he was the strongest and saved his mother that he was carrying on his neck—and she was turned to be an ear of corn.

"My grandfather was Yellow Tail. He was born on the Heart river I suppose. My grandfather, they knew him in the Five Villages when he was a real old man.

"This story that I tell you came from my father and grandfather and the old people of my tribe. I am a full-blooded Mandan."

Below is the account of the Mandans given by Bear's Ghost:

Bear's Ghost's Narrative. "I am a full blooded Mandan. Age 47; born this side of Knife river, what they call Manhanen, on the Point. The village is there. My father was Foolish Chief. My grandfather's name was Ghost Heart. My father was born at the Five Villages, my grandfather was born at the same place.

"There is two ways that we came from the Mandan. It would take about four days to tell it all." (Here we indicated to the interpreter—after being told that the writer could not remain so many days—that he would narrate the main part of the tradition, etc.)

"Where the Mandans came from, there's two ways, and the generals talk and talk about it all the time. Those Mandans here, there is Rushing Eagle, Standing Bear, all the three lodges once here; they could tell the story. We are younger men and we don't know, but we hear them talk about it. I will tell you the best I can. The man that walks on the water, he always wants to remember where he came from. There was no earth, it was all water in this country when he walked on it. He went back, and they called the weeds Big Medicine, and the leaves were about so big (indicating); and he followed the trail back to the weeds called Big Medicine. So the leaves were about so big (indicat-

ing); and the flood came out of one of the leaves, on the edge of the stalk where the joints come to, and he thought 'This is my mother.' This weed says 'Yes, I am your mother, I sent you out and I want you to do something, make up your mind to have to do something.' This man was going around on top of the water, he was naked, he went on top of the water, and he walked along, and finally he run across a track, and he went on, and the other fellow—he didn't know who he was at this time—he crossed his track and hunted around for a time three or four times, and they came across one another's tracks, and finally they met one another; and he told him—Lone Man told the other fellow, where he arrived from and where he started. The other fellow says 'I don't know where I come from but I walked along this way,' and the other fellow his hair was kind of kinky, and he was short and heavy joints and muscles were quite large on him, and the other fellow was kind of small and his body was nice built and his nose was small and his hair was kinky, and he had yellow eyes—he was Man Chief. So they walked along together and they come onto two divers, ducks, and asked them 'What are you doing here?' 'We don't know where we came from, we're here'—no other birds but them. So they asked them 'What are you eating, how far do you go down there?' 'We go down to the bottom of the mud in the water, pretty hard.' He says 'Go down there and bring me some earth.' They dived down there and didn't come up for some time, and after a while they came back without it, and took a rest. They go down again and bring some up; and they hold their hands, each one on their right hand—hold their right hand out and the ducks put the mud in there. So they dried it and grind it. And they go and they named it west and north and east and south. And so he told them—Man Chief told Lone Man to go to work and make the land on the east and north side, and I'll make the south side, and we will make this river—this Missouri river. So they went on and worked on them quite a while, and they made everything come together again. And Lone Man, what earth he got he ground it so fine, make the country more prairie, and the other fellow didn't grind it so fine and makes more bad lands. They went to work, and they come together, and Man Chief asked Lone Man what kind of buffalo he made, he told him he made spotted

ones and all kinds, and he made the same, and he (meaning, probably, Lone Man) says 'You done wrong making those kind of buffalos;' and they had a dispute. He says 'I made the game so you could kill them or catch them,' he says 'You make the game, you can't catch them soon enough, they are pretty wild, some of these days your buffalo will be gone and mine will walk around amongst the people.' He told him he made the moose and all that kind of game, white bear and all kinds in the north; and birds blue and red and yellow and all color, east. Then the other fellow he made the eagles and hawks and the other kind of birds around west and south. That is the way they did. So they make the people, and they come into the Mandans, and started on the Mandans, the first language they made was the Mandan language, he made it himself."

First Men Meet at the Sea. "In the mouth of the sea, where this river empties into the sea, right below, there is where the two men met each other, and he make the earth. Then when they got through Lone Man staid with them, he staid right there; and the people moved to the west and he moved along with them—Lone Man did. Then down in the south here the Corn Man came up from under the earth and followed the vine up, and he killed the game and took the sinews and paunch and some other things, the fat, and took it down there, and he says 'What a fine country, and here's plenty to eat,' and so on; and they started to moving and coming up the vine, they caught hold of the vine and came from under the earth up, and about half way over, and this large woman came, and they all told her not to go, not to start. 'No,' she says, 'I'll go,' and she started up, and she broke the vine, and under the earth down there they cried; and they quit and halloed up and says to the people that was up (half of them were up)—they says 'You can go, it is all right.' Some of the grandfathers or mothers or fathers were down in the earth and some of them were up. So they traveled towards the Missouri, and this Lone Man traveled up to the west side of the river, and they met the Mandans and the other Mandans, and they came together.

"It is just the same as we—they started to meet her—this Corn Woman, and she married one of the Bulls, he took her over there to Winnipeg and started a village there; and this woman—and

they had five children, the Fall Bull, Winter Bull, Spring Bull, and Summer Bull, and Magpie." (The rest of his story on this head is, as the interpreter states, the same as that of Little Owl.)

"The people that came from below the earth and followed the vine met the tobacco—(here a sample of the upper Missouri tobacco is shown). The Magpie went over to where they were—the four Bulls sat up on top of the lodge, etc. (continuance of the story of the other Indian, Little Owl). They had a long swim, and one died over at Mouse river by Minot, and the other was half way down the Missouri and the fellow came down to Coal Harbor (in McLean Co., N. D.) and died, and the other fellow swam down to Bird's Bill (Fort Rice) and died."

Four Bull and the Flood. "You whites have a flood. This flood where the four Bulls swam down is the same flood. There was a general that they kept an account of the years until—they kept it at the time of the smallpox, I can't explain very well, but the villages down the river, but Lone Man says 'You must not go to some other country, follow this river all the time;' and the time that those corn people all came up under the earth to meet the Lone Man people, that is the time they plant corn, squash, tobacco, beans, etc., and they have been raising it ever since. And now our seeds are going amongst the whites and amongst the Sioux, and everywhere our seed is growing.

"I want you to put this down just as I tell it; and you people knew God and His making the world. Maybe it is the same, but we have seen, our people have seen with their naked eyes that they made the world too. We have the same flood, only we couldn't keep the date, we lost the track.

"I was three years old when I left the village to come up to Berthold." (Meaning when he came to the old Confederated Village.)

THE CLAIMS OF WELSH, OR MADOCIAN DISCOVERY OF AMERICA AND WERE THE MANDANS OF WELSH ORIGIN?

In this concluding phase of our treatment of the Mandans, the question indicated by the above headings assumes, in the judgment of the writer, a relevancy and an importance which warrant, if they do not demand, a descent to the proofs and some expression of views, if not of conclusions, based thereon; which warrant seems to be justified by a pre-consideration of the evidences within reach and which have been considered by the writer with a view to an attempt to determine whether their publication in this paper would be sufficiently germane to the subject of the Mandans to bring the latter, to use the lawyer's phrase, within "the case made" by those evidences. It is of course left for the reader and student to determine for himself how far the mass of narrative, discussion, and discrimination found in the voluminous extracts hereinafter set forth serve to establish that Prince Madoc, in A. D. 1170 or very soon thereafter, reached the shores of America and, with one or two, or all, if there were three of his expeditions, found a lodgment there, and if so, how far the Welsh mariners and colonists thus headed by him became amalgamated with the native Americans, and where, on this continent, or in Central America, or South America, they settled and evolved generations of descendants; and lastly, if they did so anywhere in those confines, whether the Mandans were part of that development. The subject itself is nothing less than profound, and we may perhaps add without probable violence to the truth, profoundly mysterious.

But having come to the conclusion that we can, by exhibiting the evidences at hand, justify the use of the space needed for that purpose in this paper, either as a means to an end of ethnology at large, or as pertinent to the pursuit of the origin of the Mandan Indians, or for both purposes, we shall proceed to bring forward the array of matter in hand, asking the indulgence of the public by way of excuse for the informal and all inadequate presentation of those materials in point of form and orderly treatment.

No attempt will be made to comment upon, criticise or otherwise deal in detail with the various narratives or with the views of the respective writers and informants who originally published or caused them to be published in the first instance—in the process of bringing them into this monograph. We may have occasion to indulge in some observations and expressions of views thereon after such presentation of material is made.

Before proceeding to present the evidential materials above referred to, however, we will refer briefly to some phases of the history of Wales immediately preceding the initial voyage of Madoc, in order to make clearer the internal troubles among the Welsh princes, and between them at large and the British government at that time; the immediate purpose being to show the motives which impelled Madoc to leave his native land, and why he, according to the chronicles, did so finally with the intention of never again returning thereto.

Welsh History in Madoc's Time. Henry II of England, having been carrying on military campaigns in Normandy in 1163, invaded South Wales where Rhys ap Gryffydd, one of the princes, still held out against him, the others having been already reduced; and after succeeding in overpowering that prince, the latter and the other princes and chieftans in Wales did homage to King Henry and his son. But in 1164 Rhys again revolted because of the outrages, weaknesses and partialities of the English king, and "having recovered the ancient demesnes of his family," he succeeded in reducing the province of Caerdigan and in making further incursions into the enemy's territory; all of which inspired a spirit of revolt among the other Welsh princes, which was assiduously fanned by their leader, he pointing out to them the prospects of asserting their freedom 'from the dissensions which had arisen in England between Henry and the Archbishop of Canterbury' and from the supposed probability of a war between England and France; in view of which prospects the Prince of North Wales, Owen Gwynedd, his sons and brother Cadwalader and others joined Rhys.

These circumstances we gather from the narrative of Rev. William Warrington in his "History of Wales" (Brecon: Printed and sold by W. Williams; 1823).

Says Warrington (p. 489): "At no period, had the Welsh na-

tion united into a confederacy like this; concentrating with so much energy and force, the various policies and interests, the different tempers and abilities of the Princes of Wales." David, the son of Owen Gwynedd, devastated Flintshire; but the Welsh forces were driven back by Henry, and after reinforcing his armies from France and elsewhere he marched into Powys, the chieftains of which were 'the usual adherents of his family;' but notwithstanding the formidable array of forces thus presented the Welsh princes, 'determined to rescue their country from a foreign domination, or to perish in the attempt, remained firm and intrepid.' Warrington thus states the various forces arrayed under the standard of the Welsh princes at this time:

Confederation of Welsh Princes. "The power of North Wales was collected under the command of Owen Gwynedd and his brother Cadwalader; the forces of South Wales were led by the gallant Rhys ap Gryffydd; those of Powys by Owen Cyveilioc and the sons of Madoc ap Meredydd. With these troops were joined the inhabitants of the country situated between the Wye and the Severn, under the leading of their chieftains, the two sons of Madoc ap Ednerth." (p. 492.)

English Reverses—Welsh Dissensions. "Henry, after a spirited contest, crossed the Cierniog river, and the two armies faced each other on the mountains of Berwyn; and being cut off from provisions and harried by the elements Henry was obliged to retire. His spirit was so wounded by this reverse that he cruelly put out the eyes of his hostages, among whom were the sons of several leading Welsh princes. Henry then prepared to attack the Welsh by sea, but after assembling his armaments he suddenly dismissed 'both his fleet and his army,' presumably because he feared attacks upon his foreign dominions. The Welshmen thereupon attacked several strongholds of the enemy, some of which were demolished. Here, instead of standing together against England, the Welsh princes began a series of incursions against some of their own chieftains, much distress and devastation ensuing. Warrington says: 'A spirit of dissension, inherent in their genius, contracting their views, and governing their conduct, precluded any system of general policy.' However, these acts were followed by more united action during which several strongholds on the English frontier were taken and demolished.

giving 'Owen Gwynedd the entire possession of the maritime of Flintshire.' But says Warrington:"

Welsh Embassy to France. "A concern of greater importance than the revolt of the Welsh, had of late employed the attention of Henry. He was at this time in Normandy, engaged in war with Lewis, King of France. The confederate Welsh princes, desirous of entangling the English monarch more deeply in foreign disputes, sent, in conjunction with William the Lion, King of Scotland, ambassadors to the French court, with an offer of aid to carry on the war against Henry. It does not appear that this proposal was accepted; though it was the first attempt we have seen of the kind, which marked the growing importance of the Welsh princes; and the influence of which, they were desirous of extending to the continent." (p. 500-501.)

Then came the event which precipitated the Welsh princes into deadly struggles and unnatural butcheries over the vital issue of the succession to the throne of North Wales. We again quote Warrington:

Welsh Succession—North Wales. "The rising prosperity of the Welsh was checked, on a sudden, by the death of Owen Gwynedd, the Prince of North Wales. He reigned thirty-two years, and was buried in the cathedral church of Bangor. This prince married, for his first wife, Gwladys, daughter to Llywarch ap Trahaearn lord of Pembroke; by whom he had only Iorwerth Drwynewn, or Edward of the broken nose; by his second wife Christian, daughter of Gronw the son of Owen ap Edwin lord of Englefield, he had David, Roderic lord of Anglesey, Cadwallon was abbot of Bardsey, and Angharad married to Gryffydd Maelor. He had likewise twelve other children by different women." (Note to Warrington): "Hist. Gwedir Family, p. 3. According to the Welsh Chron. p. 226, this prince had by his first wife, besides his eldest son, Iorwerth; Cynan, Maelgon, and Gwenllian; and by different women, Cyman, Meredydd, Rhun, Llewelyn, Edwal, Howel, Cadell, Madoc, Einion, Cynwric, Philip, Ririd." Southey, in his famed poem on Madoc, refers to many of these descendants of Owen Gwynedd. (pp. 501-502.)

Warring Contestants—David Gwynedd Succeeds. "So whimsical and indecisive was the mode of succession, that as many sons of the late prince laid claim to the crown, as were under the

influence of ambition, or of a fiery and turbulent spirit. Iorwerth his eldest son, was unanimously set aside on account of a blemish which he had in his face; and he appears to have resigned himself quietly to the public judgment. Howel, a natural son of the late prince, born of an Irish woman, being the first who started for the prize, gained for a time a precarious possession of the throne. David, the eldest son of Owen Gwynedd by his second wife, regarded his own right, in this contest, as indisputable; and disdaining to hold under the sovereignty of a brother, illegitimate and born of a foreign woman, raised an army, fought a battle with his rival, and slew him in the action. By this victory, David obtained the quiet possession of the throne of North Wales." (p. 502-505.)

Warrington then recounts the substance of the relation in the Welsh Chronicles of Prince Madoc's voyage to "the coast of America," the notes subjoined to which indicate the sources of the account in the Welsh Bards of the fifteenth century, as follows:

Madoc's Voyage to America. "Madoc, another son of the late prince, seeing the contention which agitated the fiery spirits of his brothers, with a courage equal to theirs, but far more liberally directed, gave himself up to the danger and uncertainty of seas, which had been hitherto unexplored. He is said to have embarked with a few ships; sailing to the west, and leaving Ireland to the north, he traversed the ocean, until he arrived by accident upon the coast of America. Pleased with its appearance, he left in that country a great part of his people; and returning for a fresh supply, was joined by many adventurers, both men and women; who encouraged by flattering descriptions of advantage, and sick of the disorders which reigned in their native kingdom,* were desirous of seeking an asylum in the wilds of America." (Humphrey Lhuyd. Welsh Chron. p. 228.)

"It seems, as if the death of the late Prince of North Wales, had suddenly dissolved the confederacy, and as if the motives for union no longer subsisted. Rhys ap Gryffydd, having lately reduced that part of Powys, which had been the territory of Owen Cyveilioc, gave King Henry the meeting; while he pursued his journey into Ireland. At this conference, he was received into the king's peace, and was confirmed in all the possessions, which

he, at that time enjoyed; and in consideration of which, he offered that monarch a considerable supply of oxen and horses towards the conquest he was meditating; and as a further pledge of his future fidelity, offered him likewise fourteen hostages." (p. 505-506.)

*(Warrington's note.) "We know nothing of the reality of this discovery, but what is gathered from the poems of Meredydd ap Rhys who flourished in the year 1470; of Gutwin Owen in 1480; and Cynfrig ap Gronw near the same period. These bards preceded the expedition of Columbus; and relate or allude to that of Madoe, as an event well known, and universally received, to have happened three hundred years before. See Jones' Musical Relics of the Welsh bards, p. 19.

"The supposed existence of Welsh Indians in America has, for many years, elicited much discussion; and various but ineffectual attempts have been made to discover them. A very intelligent gentleman informed me at New York, in the year 1819, that he corresponded on the subject with Mr. Evan Evans, who is well known to have gone over to America in search of them, and to have traversed that continent from the Atlantic to the Pacific ocean. His enterprising endeavors, however, were unavailing; he could find no trace whatever of any such people. Captains Lewis and Clarke, were strictly directed, by the American government, to similar inquiries, but they were equally unsuccessful. W. Williams."

The single chapter of those harrowing times in Wales which seems to constitute a temporary cessation of hostilities between the English king and the Welsh princes after the events just narrated occurred, is found in what is next hereinafter cited from Warrington, (and with which we conclude the process of quotations from his text); only to be followed by a resumption of the policy of cruelty and perfidy which seems to have characterized at least a considerable period in Henry's reign; and by ever recurring internal contests between the Welshmen themselves. The whole picture is one which portrays in colors too plain to be mistaken the lamentable condition into which the savage hostilities, the ambitions and vascillations of lords, princes and king had brought the land of Cambria. The seductive policy by which

Henry temporarily pacified the principal Welsh princes is seen below:

King Henry ejected Iorwerth, a lord in South Wales, who recovered in part his possessions; in Pembroke he extended the territory of Rhys, and delivered up to that prince his son, Howell, who had been held a hostage, and otherwise exercised his clemency. Says Warrington:

"The patriotism of the Welsh prince sunk under the influence of these mutual civilities. The gallant and independent spirit inherited from a long line of ancestors, and which had so eminently distinguished his own conduct; all that the terror of Henry's arms and a series of hostilities could not shake, was done away by a few acts of a well directed courtesy. Forsaking the dignity and importance of his character, except in a single instance, we shall see him in future only as a *satrap* to the English monarch. Mingling in the common mass, and losing forever the ancient honors of his family, neither this prince nor his descendants, from this period will retain any marks of sovereignty." Page 509. (Note by Warrington: From this period the heads of this family were only distinguished by the titles of *Arglwyddi*, or lords. Humphrey Llwyd's *Brev.* p. 73.)

Having presented the foregoing phases of Welsh history, we now bring forward the evidences, so far as gathered, bearing upon the Madocian theory and the reputed Welsh or White Indians in America, involving the Mandans, Pawnees, etc.

The most comprehensive, and perhaps the most important contribution to the literature involving the claims of a Welsh discovery of America, with which we have come in contact, is embraced in the somewhat celebrated work by John Williams, LL.D., entitled, "An Enquiry into the Truth of the Tradition, Concerning the Discovery of America, by Prince Madoc ab Owen Gwynedd, About the Year, 1170." (London. Printed by J. Brown, 1791.)

In that production the author brings in substantially full and complete quotations from many of the most prominent and convincing narratives, expressed views, and deductions taken from the great body of literature extant upon this intensely interesting and fateful theme. We are obliged, for want of space, to condense his text into summary form, presenting but few extended quotations. The material in question follows:

1. The first part of the document discusses the importance of maintaining accurate records of all transactions and activities. It emphasizes that this is essential for ensuring transparency and accountability in the organization's operations.

2. The second part outlines the various methods and tools used to collect and analyze data. It mentions the use of surveys, interviews, and focus groups to gather information from stakeholders. Additionally, it discusses the application of statistical software to process and interpret the collected data.

3. The third part describes the results of the research and the conclusions drawn from the analysis. It highlights the key findings and discusses their implications for the organization's strategy and decision-making processes.

4. The final part of the document provides recommendations for future research and actions. It suggests areas where further investigation is needed and offers practical advice on how to implement the findings in the organization's daily operations.

John Williams, on Welsh Discovery of America. "The first account that I can find of the discovery of America by the Britons is in a History of Wales, written by Caradoc of Llancarvan, Glamorganshire, in the British language, translated into English by Humphrey Llwyd, and published by Dr. David Powel, in the year 1584. It was reprinted in 1697, under the inspection of W. Wynne, A. M. Fellow, of Jesus College, Oxford. There was another edition lately published."

Madog. "This narrative bears the strongest semblance of truth, for it is plain, natural, and simple. It says, that on the death of Owen Gwynedd, prince of North Wales, about the year 1169, several of his children contended for his dominions; that Madog, one of his sons, perceiving his native country engaged, or on the eve of being engaged, in a civil war, thought it best to try his fortune in some foreign climes. Leaving North Wales in a very unsettled state, he sailed with a few ships which he had fitted up and manned for that purpose to the westward, leaving Ireland to the north. He came at length to an unknown country where most things appeared to him new and uncustomary, and the manners of the natives far different from what he had seen in Europe. Madog having viewed the fertility and pleasantness of the country, left the most part of those he had taken with him behind, (**Sir Thomas Herbert** says that the number he left behind was 120) and returned to North Wales. Upon his arrival he described to his friends what a fair and extensive land he had met with, void of any inhabitants, whilst they employed themselves, and all their skill to supplant one another, for only a ragged portion of rocks and mountains. Accordingly, having prevailed with considerable numbers to accompany him to that country, he sailed back with ten ships and bid adieu to his native land. (pp. 6-7.)

"It is very certain that this account of Madog's emigration was not written by Caradoc, for his history comes no lower than the year 1157; and he seems to have died about the time when this event took place. However, it is said by Humphrey Llwyd, the translator of Caradoc into English, that this part of the history was compiled from collections made from time to time, and kept in the Abbies of Conway in Carnarvonshire, North Wales, and Strat Flur, (Strata Florida, Cardiganshire, South Wales). The

most remarkable occurrences in the principality, being registered in these Abbies, were generally compared together every third year, when the Beirdd of Bards, belonging to these two Houses, went their ordinary visitations, which were called Clera. This custom prevailed 'till the year 1270, a little before the death of Llewelyn, the last Prince of Wales, and who was killed near Built in Brecknockshire."

The Welsh Bards. "The best copy of these registers was taken by Guttun Owen, a Bard, in the reign of Edward the Fourth. King of England, about the year 1480, before the first voyage of Columbus, but that the continuation, though not Caradoc's, is a true history, we have no just reason to question.

"Cynfrig ab Gronow, about the same time with Guttun Owen, mentioned this event. These Bards lived between two and three hundred years after Madog's emigration; and before them it is alluded to by Sir Meredyth ab Rhy's about the year 1477. Humphry Llwyd, the translator of Caradoc, flourished in the reign of Henry the Eighth. King of England, about fifty or sixty years after Guttun Owen, and Dr. Powel published Llwyd's translation, in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, about forty years after the death of Humphry Llwyd, whose death prevented its earlier publication.

"There can be little doubt, but that the writings of Guttun Owen, Cynfrig ab Gronow, and of Sir Meredyth ab Rhys, were extant in the days of Llwyd and Powel, and known to many persons who lived in the principality, as Powel did."

Hakluyt. "The next account I have met with of this event is in Hakluyt.

"After the death of Owen Gwynedd, his Sonnes fell at debate who should inherit after him, for the eldest Sonne born in matrimony, Edward, or Jorwerth Drwidion (Drwyndwn) was counted unmeet to govern because of the maime upon his face, and Howel that took upon him the rule, was a base Sonne, begotten upon an Irish woman. Therefore David, another Sonne, gathered all the power he could, and came against Howel, and fighting with him, slew him, and afterwards enjoyed quietly the whole land of North Wales, until his brother, Jorwerth's Sonne, came of age.

"Madoe, another of Owen Gwyneth's Sonnes, left the land in contentions betwixt his brethern, and prepared certain ships with men and ammunition and sought adventures by seas, sailing west

and leaving the coast of Ireland so farre north, that he came to a land unknown, where he saw many strange things.

"This land must needs be some parts of the countrey of which the Spanyards affirm themselves to be the first finders since Hauno's time, whereupon it is manifest that that countrey was by Britons discovered long before Columbus led any Spanyards thither.

"Of the voyage and return of this Madoc, there be many fables framed, as the common people do use in distance of place and length of time, rather to augment than to diminish, but sure it is, there he was. And after he had returned home, and declared the pleasant and fruitful countries that he had seen, without inhabitants; and upon the contrary for what barren and wild ground his brethern and nephews did murther one another, he prepared a number of ships, and got with him such men and women as were desirous to live in quietness, and taking leave of his friends, took his journey thitherwards again.

"Therefore, it is supposed that he and his people inhabited part of those countries; for it appeareth by Francis Lopez de Gormara that in Acuzamil, and other places, the people honored the Crofs. Whereby it may be gathered that Christians had been there before the coming of the Spanyards; but because this people were not many, they followed the manner of the land which they came to, and the language they found there.

"This Madoc arriving in that Western Countrey, unto the which he came in the year 1170, left most of his people there, and returning back for more of his own nation, acquaintance and friends to inhabit that fair and large countrey, went thither again with ten sailes, as I find noted by Guttun Owen. I am of opinion that the land whereunto he came was some part of the West Indies." (p. 12.) ***

Britons in America. "Another writer who alludes to Madog's voyage is the author of a book entitled 'A Brief Description of the Whole World.' Edit. 5th. London printed, for John Marriott, 1620."

Williams refers to Hornius in his "De Originibus Americanis. Hagae Comitatus, 1652." as presenting Madoc's adventures, as containing little more than "extracts from Llwyd, Hakluyt, and

Powel;" quotes Hornius as believing that Madoc "must have landed" on the American continent.

Hornius Adds. "The traditions prevailing among the natives strongly confirm me in this opinion; for the Virginians and Guahutemallians, from ancient times, worshipped one Madog as an hero."

Tuscoraras. Welsh? Williams refers to a narrative of Morgan Jones, of Newport, County of Monmouth, published in 1740 in Gentleman's Magazine, from Morgan's letter of 1685, "sent to Dr. Thomas Lloyd of Pennsylvania" and by him sent to Charles Llwyd, Esq., of Dolyfran in Montgomeryshire, thence to Dr. Robert Plott by Edward Lloyd, A. M. Keeper of the Ashmolean Museum in Oxford, in which Morgan declares that as chaplain to Maj. Gen. Bennet, he went from Virginia in 1660 in a ship to Port Royal, S. C., where they waited for a time, he sailing up the river to Oyster Point, where they remained months until nearly starved, when he "and five more traveled through the wilderness to the Tuscorara country," were taken prisoners "because we told them we were bound to Roanoke;" were shut up at night; a consultation resulted in their being told next day by the interpreter that they must prepare to die. "Whereupon being very much dejected and speaking to this effect in the British tongue, 'Have I escaped so many dangers, and must I now be knocked on the head like a dog'; then presently an Indian came to me, which afterwards appeared to be a war captain belonging to the Sachem of the Doegs, (whose Original I find must be from the Old Britons) and took me up by the middle, and told me in the British tongue, I should not die, and thereupon went to the Emperor of the Tuscoraras, and agreed for my ransom, and the men that were with me;" were entertained very civilly four months "during which time I had the opportunity of conversing with them familiarly in the British language, and did preach to them three times a week in the same language; and they would confer with me about any thing that was difficult therein;" supplied them with provisions on their departure, etc. Williams adds that Theophilus Evans, a Welsh clergyman, who communicated the Jones letter to Gentleman's Magazine and who was well acquainted with the history of the principality" of St. David's in Brecon, observes that circumstances establish the fact of Madoc's voyage.

Welsh Words Among Indians. "That several British words were used by the Mexicans when their country was discovered by the Spaniards; such as Pangwyn, 'White Head,' the name, not only of a bird, but also given to high and bare rocks. Groeso, 'wellcome.' Gwenddwr, 'white or limpid water.' Bara, 'bread. Tad, 'father.' Mam, 'mother.' Buch of buwch, 'cow.' Clug-Jar, 'a partridge, or heath cock.' (Clugar is now the American name of a partridge.) Llwynog, 'a fox.' Coch y dwr, 'a red water bird.' Many others are mentioned by sir **Thomas Herbert** in his travels." Williams observes concerning Madoc's having remained undiscovered:

Madoc Undiscovered, Why? "That so extraordinary an event should not excite either the English or the Welsh to attempt a discovery of their hardy countrymen, and their new settlement, can only be accounted for by the ignorance and poverty of the times. It is most natural to suppose that the English knew nothing of this expedition from a province which acknowledged not their authority, and with which they were almost continually at war, and whose inhabitants they would have been exceedingly glad to hear were all gone away; and the poverty of the Welsh, robbed of their inheritance by the usurping Saxons, Normans and Flemings, would effectually prevent their making any attempts." Williams then refers to Lloyd's letter:

Lloyd's Letter. "A letter written by Charles Lloyd, Esq., of Dol Y Fran, in Montgomeryshire, already mentioned, published in 1777, by the Revd. N. Owen, Junr. A. M. in a pamphlet entitled, 'British Remains,' strongly confirms Mr. Jones' narrative, and of consequence, the truth of Madog's voyages. Mr. Lloyd says * * that he had been informed by a friend, that one Stedman of Breconshire, about thirty years before the date of his letter, was on the coast of America in a Dutch Bottom, and being about to land for refreshment, the natives kept them off by force, till at last this Stedman told his fellow Dutch seamen that he understood what the natives spoke. The Dutch bade him speak to them, and they were thereupon very courteous; they supplied them with the best things they had, and told Stedman, that they came from a country called Gwynedd, (North Wales) in Prydam, (Prydain) fawr, Great Britain. It is supposed by Mr. Lloyd that this place was situated between Virginia and Florida. It is

further said by this gentleman, that one Oliver Humphreys, a merchant, who died, not long before the date of this letter, told him, that when he lived at Surinam, he spoke with an English privateer or pirate, who being near Florida a careening his vessel, had learnt, as he thought the Indian language, which his friend said was perfect Welsh." Williams proceeds:

"To these evidences (the foregoing and same we have omitted), must be added what the authors of the universal history, and Dr. Campbell, in his Naval History of Great Britain, have said."

Powell's Version. "That the Welsh contributed towards the peopling of America is intimated by some good authors, and ought to be considered as a notion supported by something more than bare conjectures."

The Welsh "LL." "In the British tongue, the double L (LL) hath a peculiar sound, different from any in other tongues. It hath been said that in the Spanish it has the same sound. But a gentleman who understands the Spanish language informed me that it is not like the Welsh double LL, though it hath a peculiar sound." Williams proceeds:

"**Dr. Campbell** ** agreed with the above writers, (Hakluyt, Martyr, etc.) in his general account, and concludes with these observations:"

Madoc Tradition Before Columbus. "It must be confessed that there is nothing which absolutely fixes this discovery of America, though it must likewise be owned that the course before set down might very possibly carry him thither. The great point is to know how far the fact may be depended upon, and in relation to this, I will venture to assert that there are **Authentic Records**, in the British tongue, as to this expedition of Madog's wherever he went, prior to the discovery of America by Columbus. and that many probable arguments may be offered in support of this notion."

"I now proceed (continues Williams) to modern travelers, who prove, that at present, there are tribes in North America descended from the ancient Britons."

American Indians Descendants of Welsh. "Mr. Charles Beatty, a missionary from New York, accompanied by a Mr. Duffield, visited some inland parts of North America in the year 1766. If I rightly understand the journal, he traveled about 400 or 500

horrid barbarity," he himself having by good fortune enlisted the sympathy of "what is called the Good Woman of the town, who was permitted to redeem me from the flames by giving as my ransom a horse;" being in bondage for two years, Stewart was redeemed (with one David) by a Frenchman visiting from Mexico "on discoveries;" went with the Frenchman 700 miles west of the Mississippi up Red river, finding "a nation of Indians remarkably white, and whose hair was of a reddish color, at least, mostly so; John Davey (David), the redeemed Welshman with them "informed me that he was determined to remain with them, that he understood their language, it being very little different from the Welsh; Stewart went with David "to the chief men of the town, who informed him (in language that I had no knowledge of, and which had no affinity to that of other Indian tongues that I ever heard), that their forefathers of this nation came from a foreign country, and landed on the east side of the Mississippi, describing particularly the country now called Florida, and that on the Spaniards taking possession of Mexico they fled to their then abode. And as proof of the truth of what he advanced, he brought forth rolls of parchment, which were carefully tied up in otters' skins, on which were large characters written with blue ink. The characters I did not understand, and the Welshman being unacquainted with letters, even, of his own language, I was not able to know the meaning of the writing."

Three Welsh Tribes. Williams observes that these informants, being uninterested "in propagating such a report among persons who were not Welsh," are entitled to confidence, etc.; and he concludes that these proofs seem to show three Welsh tribes, viz.: Tuscoraras south of Lake Erie between the Ohio and Mississippi; Delawares, "whom I take to be the same as with the Doegs, lower down the Ohio, and Delaware rivers;" "the other tribe west of the Mississippi." He contends also that the language used by the Indians in question was Welsh, and that the books referred to were Welsh Bibles, having been found with Indians speaking the language. That as Greek characters were used by the Welsh the scriptures, translated into Welsh, might be in Greek characters, though Roman characters were used in the 12th century. "Or, perhaps, the book was written in the ancient Greek characters, of the same form as those of the Alexandria manu-

script in the British museum. In that case, it is not at all surprising that neither the captain, nor the Welshman could read them." He adds: "Though the art of printing was not discovered in the days of Madog, yet there can be no doubt, but that the Britons had copies of the scriptures in their own language many centuries before that period.** Madog was of a princely family; it may therefore be reasonably thought that he and his companions had one or more copies among them." (p. 53.)

Superior to Columbus. Williams quotes Lord Lyttleton (who was skeptical regarding the Madocian theory), as stating "that if Madog did really discover any part of America, or any islands lying to the southwest of Ireland, in the Atlantic ocean, without the help of the compass, at a time when navigation was ill understood, and with mariners less expert than any other in Europe, he performed an achievement incomparably more extraordinary than Columbus."

Madoc's Alleged Return. Williams discusses the alleged return of Madoc's to Wales "and back to his colony" as not impossible, as "the space of time in which these voyages of Madog's were performed is no where mentioned. They might have taken up twenty years or more; "that he might have sailed "northward by the American coast, till he came to a situation where the light of the sun at noon was the same, at that season, as it was in his native country, and then sailing eastward (the Polar Star, long before observed would prevent his sailing on a wrong point) he might safely return to Britain."

That as to Robertson's special objections that America's discovery by the Welsh rests upon no stronger foundation "than the discovery of it by Behaim" because Powell's history was written centuries from the event—Williams cites as commonly believed, the works of Ossian and Fingal, "which were not known to the world till very lately."

Christian Customs. Williams refers to Christian customs, the cross, baptism, Lord's supper, thirty-five fast days, and the Trinity, and inclines to think these were of the Britons; that while, as Hornius observes, those customs may have been introduced by orientals, yet "as no nation in Europe, but the ancient Britons, hath ever pretended, or does pretend to have discovered America before the Spaniards," he inclines, etc.; and he con-

cludes on this head by observing that neither Lyttleton nor Robertson took notice of Jones' narrative or of Lloyd's letter.

Madoc Revered. Williams supposes Madoc to have acted in an amicable and affectionate manner towards the natives; "for his memory was held in high esteem by the Mexicans when Cortez arrived there. He was the hero whose praises they celebrated."

Welsh Tribes, Why Unknown? Williams assigns as reasons why the alleged Welsh Indians were not better known to Europeans—that they dwelt far west of the English provinces in America, where they may have been driven by more powerful tribes or by Europeans, and may be reduced to comparatively inconsiderable numbers by intestine quarrels or foreign enemies.

Other Welsh Authorities. Williams, as quoted below, refers to other Welsh Bards as authority for the Madocian accounts:

"Taliessyn, a Welsh Bard, who, as already observed, flourished about the middle of the sixth century, and who by way of eminence was called *Pan Beirdd y Gorllewin*, 'Head of the Western Bards;' some of whose works are come down to us; particularly, an Ode, in Welsh, translated into Latin sapphic verse, by David Jones, Vicar of Llanfair Duffryn Clwyd, Denbighshire, in 1580. Owen Cyfeiliog, and Gwalchmai, in the twelfth century; and many others, at different periods, of distinguished merit, have appeared in Wales. Some of whom have plainly alluded to Madog's adventures. For the names, times and the works of these Bards, I refer to Mr. Evan's specimens of the ancient Welsh Bards, 1764. To Sir Thomas Herbert's travels and to Mr. Warrington's History of Wales, p. 307. Edit. 1788." (p. 80.)

Only Two Voyages. Williams, in his "Book Appendix," discusses a passage from the "Universal History" assuming, upon the supposed authority of Hakluyt, that Madoc made three voyages; and after comparing the accounts of Hakluyt and Lloyd—both relating but two voyages—he concludes that the authors of Universal History misapprehended Hakluyt on that head.

Welsh Used Greek. Williams therein also—after citing Cesar as to the use of Greek characters by the Welsh at the Roman invasion—declares that the Welsh tongue bears strong resemblance "in words and letters to the Hebrew and Greek," and that the gutturals in the three languages "are sounded much alike."

Bowles' Account—Books. Williams refers to an interview by William Owen of Gen. Bowles, published in Gentleman's Maga-

zine, Mr. Bowles' statement being that he knew the Welsh Indians as "Padoucas, or White Indians" on account of their complexions; that they were in a country marked "Padoucas" on a map (shown him); those in the northern part of that country were "Black Padoucas," being a mixture of "White Padoucas and other Indians;" the White Padoucas having sandy, or red, or black hair; he had traveled their southern boundaries but not through their country; was of opinion they first came "to the Floridas, or about the mouths of the Mississippi;" he thought them Welsh because a Welshman who was "with me at home for some time, who had been a prisoner among the Spaniards ** and contrived to escape, ** made his way across the continent, and eventually passed through the midst of the Padoucas, and at once found himself with a people with whom he could converse, and he staid there some time;" that he told Bowles "that they had several books, which were most religiously preserved in skins, and were considered by them as mysterious. These they believed gave an account from whence they came;" they "told the Welshman that they had not seen a white man like themselves, who was a stranger, for a long time."

Here Williams refers to some criticisms on Gen. Bowles (who came to London as a Cherokee chief) in the Gentleman's Magazine for September, 1791—that he was an Irishman "and a relation of a respectable tradesman in London;" Williams averring that if Bowles was "in 'a humble station,'" it was to his credit that he had attained to distinguished rank.

Other Witnesses. Williams mentions a Mr. Price, another Cherokee chief "who was born among the Creeks," as having stated in London that his father, a Welshman, "had frequent interviews and conversed with the Padoucas, in his native language," and refers to John Filson in whose tract on Kentucky that writer declares "the western settlers have received frequent accounts of a nation at a great distance up the Missouri ** in manners and appearance resembling other Indians, but speaking Welsh, and retaining some ceremonies of the Christian worship;" which accounts were current "of late years," his tract having been published in 1784.

Welsh Language—Manuscript. Williams further quotes from Morgan Jones, who met in Pennsylvania in about 1750 a Welshman whom he had known in Wales and who had lived for years

in North Carolina; this friend was "very sure there were Welsh Indians," his house in North Carolina being "on the great Indian road to Charlestown, where he often lodged parties of them. In one of these parties, an Indian hearing the family speak Welsh began to jump and caper as if he had been out of his senses. Being asked what was the matter with him, he replied, 'I know an Indian nation who speak that language, and have learnt a little of it myself, by living among them;' and when examined he was found to have some knowledge of it;" that he said they lived 'a great way beyond the Mississippi.' Dr. Williams also refers to a statement by Edward Williams in the Gentleman's Magazine, concerning "a Mr. Binnon of County Coyty" in Glamorgan County who had been an Indian trader from Philadelphia for several years; that about 1750 he and other men went "much farther than usual to the westward of the Mississippi, and found a nation of Indians who spoke the Welsh tongue. They had iron among them, lived in stone built villages," etc.; ruined buildings were among them, one was "like an old Welsh castle," another "a ruined church, etc. They showed Mr. Binnon a book, in manuscript, which they carefully kept, believing it to contain the mysteries of religion;" they said that not long ago a man was among them who understood it, who told them that "a people would some time visit them and explain to them" the book; they conducted Binnon and his men to a place "they well knew," weeping when he left them, and entreating him to send them a person "who could interpret their book." Binnon told this in Philadelphia and was informed that the Welsh Track people had heard of them "and that some Welshmen had been among them." The gentleman who wrote of this account to Williams stated that Binnon declared "that these Indians worshipped their book as God, but could not read it. They also said that thirty or forty of them sometimes visited the ancient Britons settled on the Welsh Track in Penn. *** When Mr. Binnon said that he came from Wales, they replied, 'it was from thence that our ancestors came, but we do not know in what part of the world Wales is.'" He also says Edward Williams interviewed Richard Burnell who was in America before the revolution, near Philadelphia, and knew "many ancient Britons, who informed him that the Welsh Indians were well known" in Pennsylvania, and who knew "the Mr. Lewis who saw these Welsh Indians at a congress

among the Chickasaws;" that Burnell said a Mr. Willain who had a land grant in the Natches country and among his settlers were some Welshmen "who understand the Indians," that two Welshmen in his colony "perfectly understood the Indians and would converse with them for hours together," the Welshmen assuring him that "the Indians spoke" Welsh; that some were there, some west of the Mississippi, "some in very remote parts." Said Edward Williams also interviewed Sir John Caldwell, Bart., who was stationed east of the Mississippi during the revolution, who after long living among the Indians was adopted, and married a chief's daughter, "had a perfect knowledge" of the Indians' language; they informed him that some Welshmen in his company understood the language of the Panis or Pawnees, who were "considerably civilized, cultivated the ground, and built houses" and "will work," and so were not killed when captured but sold into slavery. One Rimington, an Englishman who "had long been among the Indians" was reported by Edward Williams as having been at the Forks of the Ohio with Jack Hughes, a Welshman, where he saw "some strange Indians" from "west of the Mississippi; Rimington could not interpret them, and upon reporting accordingly, a Welshman exclaimed, "Oh they are the Welsh Indians," and Hughes, who well understood them, interpreted for them. Rimington said they "are tolerably white in complexion, and their dress like that of the Europeans; a kind of trousers, coats with sleeves, hats or caps made of small and very beautiful feathers," they might be met "at the Indian Marts, on the Mississippi, at the Natches, Forks of the Ohio, Kaskaskia, etc." That Rimington knew there were "civilized Indians far west of the Mississippi" called by those on the eastern side "Ka Anjon, which, in their language signifies, **first of men, or first men,**" and was inclined to think them the "Welsh Indians." That "Panis, or Pawnees" means with Indians east of that river, "a slave." Dr. Williams mentions "Another Gentleman" who was stationed at the Illinois declared that "an Indian nation came down the Missouri," whose language "some Welshmen in his regiment" said was Welsh, "and that they had among them a **Manuscript Welsh Bible.** They never came down but when there were floods in the Missouri" and brought hides, furs, buffalo tongues, etc." He avers that Binnon seemed, to Edward Williams, "perfectly ignorant of Madog's emigration;" thought the Padou-

cas "original inhabitants of the spot where he found them. He said they showed him a stone on which there was an inscription, which they kept in memory of one Madog."

Variously Named. "Mr. Williams refers to several writers who say that there now is such a tribe, (more civilized, etc.) Cox's Description of Louisiana, p. 16 and 36. Charlevoix, vol. 2, p. 225. Bossu's account of Louisiana, vol. 1, p. 182. He adds that these Welsh Indians seem to go by various names; such as Panes, or Panis. The Padoucas, the Panis, and the Cansez, are intermixed with one another. Charlevoix, vol. 2, p. 224, says that the Panis tribe is very numerous and is divided into several Cantons, which have names very different from one another. Among them he reckons the Canez, and Mactotatas."

Gov. Dinwiddie Interested. "In the Gentleman's Magazine for June, 1791, there is a letter inserted from a Mr. Cochran, to the late Governor Dinwiddie, on this subject, stating that the French governor of Canada sent three young priests to some Indians settled at the back of New Spain, who found them to be Welsh, for they had Welsh Bibles among them. They had a great aversion to the French, because that when they first settled at the mouth of the Mississippi, they had been almost cut off by the French; a small remnant, however, escaped to the place where they now live, who are now become a numerous people. When the French governor heard this, he determined to send an army to destroy them; but the French being then in a state of war with nations nearer home, the project was laid aside. Mr. Cochran then says, that the man who furnished him with this account informed him, that the messengers who went to make this discovery, were gone sixteen months, before they returned to Canada, so that this people must live at a great distance from Canada, due west.

"We are also told that Governor Dinwiddie agreed with three or four of the back traders to go in quest of the Welsh Indians, and promised to give them £500 for that purpose, but that he was recalled before they could set out on that expedition. This letter is dated Winchester, August 24th, 1753."

Williams then refers to "Col. Cochran" having afterwards expressed disbelief in the story as being "founded in delusion;" that one Maurice Morgan, in whose hands a copy of that letter was placed by Dr. Morgan of the British Museum "for inspec-

tion by Lord Shelburne," had written to Williams that he (Morgan) had "thought its contents not deserving of regard" and had so told Shelburne; but that Morgan's reason for thinking "slightly" of this narrative was "that Welsh bibles were found among this people;" which objection Williams thinks devoid of weight, as "many Welsh people" who had gone into that country and, 'finding some people there who understood the Welsh language, might leave printed Welsh Bibles behind them;" that a tradition so general "as to obtain from Mexico to high northern latitudes, there must be some foundation for it;" and cites Gentleman's Magazine, May, 1791, p. 206, and for August, 1791, p. 693.

Peru—Madoc's Discovery? Williams here cites "Mr. John Williams" in "Natural History of the Mineral Kingdom," Vol. 2, as favoring the belief of Madoc's having discovered Peru, some of the "few fair and white persons found there by the Spaniards" being his colony's descendants, that Madoc first landed in the gulf of Mexico, and on his second voyage was shipwrecked at the Amazon, up which he went and on to Peru, etc.; that Manco Capac and Mamma Ocelle were "Madog and his wife;" that another reason assigned by said author for so thinking is that the Mexicans and Peruvians "were deeply impressed with the notion that a people from the east would visit them. Madog's promise of returning again was handed down from father to son," which tradition was dimmed by time, etc.; that Montezuma was the eleventh emperor since conquering the country, etc. But the "John Williams, LLD," from whose "Enquiry," etc., we have taken all the foregoing, expresses disbelief in the theory of Madoc's having discovered Peru, thinking it more likely that his descendants "dwelling on the sea coast, west of Mexico, might, when at sea, be overtaken by a storm, and carried to Peru, and not knowing how to return, settle there." That if twenty years be allowed each emperor, Montezuma as the eleventh in Mexico and Atabalipa the twelfth in Peru would account, as to time, for the erection of those two empires as coeval with Madoc, etc. He then refers to Drummond's theory:

Drummond's Theory. "Captain John Drummond, who resided in Mexico for many years, in a military capacity, as an engineer, geographer and naturalist, 'is fully persuaded and convinced, that Madog was one of the confederate chiefs who went

upon an expedition westward from Britain, about the year 1170; and that he hath heard of colonies, or tribes of Welsh people now existing, who he thinks are descendants of Madog's people.' And he is of opinion also that the emigrants were a mixture of Welsh, North Britons and Irish, and that Madog was the naval commander." **

Irish Accompanied Madoc. "It is said by Jean Brechsa, a Bard, who flourished about the year 1480, that Rhiryd, an illegitimate son of Owen Gwynedd, who, Dr. Powell says was Lord of Clochran in Ireland, 'accompanied Madog across the Atlantic (Morwerydd) to some lands they had found there, and there dwelt.' There can be no doubt, therefore, but that some Irish went with Madog to America. **

Warrior Celts of Mexico. "The captain observes, that Don Juan de Grijalva, a Spaniard, says that 'He found the Celts of Mexico, some having little or no arms, but clothed in hides; and that the fierceness of their manners, and their undaunted courage, resembled the old Britons, as described by Henry the Second, to the Emperor Emanuel Commens. He says also that there were others with short skirted vests, of different colors, with targets and short black spears, and that these new men in Mexico were adored by the natives, for their courage and dexterity, for that they had never seen ships 'till they came among them, from afar.'

"It is the opinion of the captain, that Madog and his company first landed at Vera Cruz, in the gulf of Mexico."

Montezuma's Forefathers. "The captain informed me, that he and his servant, who was a Highlander, paid a visit to the only descendant of Montezuma then living, who was a venerable old man, and who told him that his forefathers came from a distant country, which this gentleman thinks was Britain."

Scotch Mexicans. "The captain also said that on a journey through the country, he came to a hut of the Mexicans, where he heard a woman singing to her child. His servant, with great surprise, told his master that he understood what she said, for it was Erse, the language of the Highlanders in Scotland; whence it seems clear that Madog's company had Scots among them."

Celtic Discoveries. "By the same gentleman I have been informed that Sir George Mackenzie, in a letter to James the Fourth, Earl of Perth, his grandfather, on the subject of the Celtic, as some call them, as others, the British, Discoveries in Europe and

THE JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN MEDICAL ASSOCIATION is published weekly, except on Sundays and public holidays, at the office of the Association, 535 North Dearborn Street, Chicago, Ill. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents.

THE JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN MEDICAL ASSOCIATION is published weekly, except on Sundays and public holidays, at the office of the Association, 535 North Dearborn Street, Chicago, Ill. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents.

THE JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN MEDICAL ASSOCIATION is published weekly, except on Sundays and public holidays, at the office of the Association, 535 North Dearborn Street, Chicago, Ill. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents.

THE JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN MEDICAL ASSOCIATION is published weekly, except on Sundays and public holidays, at the office of the Association, 535 North Dearborn Street, Chicago, Ill. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents.

THE JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN MEDICAL ASSOCIATION is published weekly, except on Sundays and public holidays, at the office of the Association, 535 North Dearborn Street, Chicago, Ill. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents.

THE JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN MEDICAL ASSOCIATION is published weekly, except on Sundays and public holidays, at the office of the Association, 535 North Dearborn Street, Chicago, Ill. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents. The subscription price for the year 1919 is \$5.00 in advance. Single copies are sold at 15 cents.

America, says, that they are mentioned by Baronius, Scaliger, Salmasius, Lipsius, etc., as having taken place long before any other nation in Europe thought of visiting America.

"In a letter to the Right Hon. William Pitt, signed Columbus, inserted in the Public Advertiser, September 23rd, 1790." ***

Cabot Discovers Welshmen. "We are there told that Sebastian Cabot, about the year 1495, two years after the first voyage of Columbus, discovered Florida and Mexico; and that he found on the different parts of the coast, the descendants of the first British discoveries, who settled at Mexico about the year 1170. In the records of the Mexican emperors, are set down the arrival and settlement of their first great Progenitors, whom the unfortunate Montezuma describes in 1520, in a speech made to his subjects, after he had been taken prisoner by that monster of cruelty, 'Cortez.' "

Montezuma's Declaration of Foreign Ancestry. "'Kinsmen. Friends, Countrymen, and Subjects: You know I have been eighteen years your sovereign and your natural king, as my illustrious predecessors and fathers were before me, and all the descendants of my race, since we came from a far distant northern nation whose tongue and manners we yet have partly preserved. I have been to you a father, guardian, and a loving prince, while you have been to me faithful subjects, and ardent servants.

"'Let it be held in your remembrance that you have a claim to a noble descent, because you are sprung from a race of free men and heroes, who scorned to deprive the native Mexicans of their ancient liberties, but added to their national freedom, principles which do honor to human nature. Our divines have instructed you of our natural descent from a people the most renowned upon earth for liberty and valor; because of all nations they were, as our first parents told us, the only unsubdued people upon earth, by that warlike nation, whose tyranny and ambition assumed the conquest of the world; but nevertheless, our great forefathers checked their ambition, and fixed limits to their conquests, although but the inhabitants of a small island, and but few in number, compared to the ravagers of the earth, who attempted in vain to conquer our great, glorious, and free forefathers, etc.' The author of the above account told me, that he had seen Montezuma's speech in a Spanish manuscript, in

the year 1784, when he arrived at Mexico; and that, most probably, it is still extant. ***

"The above description remarkably and exactly answers to the characters, manners and principles of the ancient Britons.

Mexicans Descendants of Britons. "It also appears from the negotiations of Sir John Hawkins, an English admiral, in the latter end of Queen Elizabeth's reign; and from the speeches of various Mexican chiefs, to Sir John Hawkins' officers, who were sent from Vera Cruz to Mexico, to negotiate with the Spanish Viceroy, that these chiefs looked upon themselves as descended from the ancient Britons." **

"Antonio Goluaso, a Portugese author of great repute, mentions the expedition of a Captain Machan, or Mackman, a British adventurer, in 1344, who had been in Mexico, and had got store of wealth and silver from the British sovereign of that day; but who was cast away on his return to Europe, with all his treasure, near Maderia.

Columbus' Knowledge of Previous Voyages. "It is highly probable that Columbus derived his notion of a western continent, from the reports of former voyagers; especially from the papers of a British captain, who in sailing from Mexico, or from some part of America, was forced by a gale of wind, through the straits of Gibraltar, up to Genoa, where his vessel was lost; and who after the wreck, lived in the house of Columbus, where he died, and left his papers, books, charts, and journals in the hands of Columbus."

Williams Summarizes Witnesses. "We have now a crowd of witnesses to present existence of a tribe, if not numerous tribes of Welsh Indians on the continent of North America. In this sequel I have enumerated several fresh evidences to the fact."

Mentioning the names given above, he adds the following passages in Captain Carver's "Travels in interior parts of North America."

Carver's Reference to White Indians. "In page 118, the captain says, 'a little to the northwest of the Messorie (Missouri) and St. Pierre, the Indians farther told me that there was a nation, rather smaller and whiter than the neighboring tribes, who cultivate the ground, and (as far as I could gather from their expressions), in some measure, the arts.'

"In the following page, speaking of the same Indians, he says,

"They are supposed to be some of the different tribes that were tributary to the Mexican kings; and who fled from their native country, to seek an asylum in these parts, about the time of the conquest of Mexico by the Spaniards, about two centuries ago.'"

Mexicans of the Del Norte. "The following account is given by Hakluyt, Vol. 3d., page 311, from Antonio de Epejo, written in 1583. The same accounts are given by others, mentioned by Hakluyt.

"The Spaniards along the Rio del Norte, Lat. 37 upwards, found the Indians far more civilized and having a better form of government than any others in Mexico. They had a great number of large and very populous towns, well built of stone and lime, three or four stories high; their country is very large and extensive. The chief town, called Cia, has not less than eight markets. The inhabitants are very warlike, have great plenty of cows and sheep, dress neats leather very fine, and make of it shoes and boots which no other Americans do. ** They have large fields of corn, and make curious things of feathers of various colors. They manufacture cotton, of which they make fine mantles striped with blue and white. ** And the inhabitants seem to have some knowledge of the Christian religion. They have many chapels, and erect crosses, and they live in general security and peace."

The following summary, with some extracts from the work of Rev. Benj. F. Bowen, entitled "America Discovered by the Welsh in 1170, A. D." (Phila., 1876. J. B. Lippincott & Co.), upon the subject of alleged Welsh-speaking American Indians, including the Mandans, and in which he enters at large into the defense of the Madocian theory of American discovery, are, we believe, well worthy of perusal. The merits of Bowen's discourse and his very large repository of evidences as narrations and otherwise, cannot be duly appreciated without reading his book.

Bowen's Claims—Tuscoraras Were Welsh. Bowen refers to the Tuscorara Indians, as Doege, Chowans, Meherrins, and Nottoways; were Southern Iroquois, and when defeated in 1712 by the Carolinians the remnant fled north and became the sixth nation of the Iroquois confederacy; Mingoes was the Algonquin name of it.

Iroquois Expelled "Alligewi." He says the Five Nations or Konoskoni or "Cabin-Builders," "from all that can be ascertained," came from the west and warred against the Alligewi or

Alleghanians and drove them into the interior; that they were so expelled and moved westward is certain, and were supposed to be whites; that as shown by McCulloch in his "Researches on America" the barbarous Iroquois nearly destroyed "their more refined and civilized neighbors;" their march westward evidenced by their fortifications, the red men ascribing these works "to white men;" that the westward movement is distinctly marked, showing a European civilization and influence in erecting defenses onto the Ohio, where they made a vigorous stand, shown by greater number of earthworks; when defeated on the lower Ohio "after a residence of many years, the remnants of those tribes which survived ** fled up the Missouri." But "Who were these Alligewi? The word is strikingly familiar to the Welsh ear, with its double L, and corresponds with the Welsh words *alli*, mighty, and *geni*, born, or 'Mighty born.'" That although the Tuscaroras were supposed to be akin to the Iroquois in language, he deems it "altogether probable that they were more anciently a branch of the Alligewi;" that the Tuscoraras were lighter colored than other tribes, being generally mentioned as **White Indians**, as were other tribes in the west and south "emanating from this source;" and adds:

"They stated that their ancestors were Welsh. If the objection is made, how they could have lost traces of European civilization so soon, it may be recollected that the buccaneers of St. Domingo had in thirty years forgotten all knowledge of Christianity. Such radical differences as exist between the white and red races could not have been lost without the lapse of centuries; while their languages would undergo, more or less, some marked modifications."

Welsh Terms—Round Tower. Bowen declares the word "Pontigo"—a river where Morgan Jones found Welsh-speaking Indians—seems derived from Pont y Go, "The Smith's Bridge," a smith dwelling beside a bridge, which name might be given such place by Indians ignorant of metals; that "Doeg Indians might be a corruption of Madog's Indians;" that those who were convinced on the subject believed that Madoc's colony landed in New England and moved down the coast and inhabited country between Virginia and Florida; that the Round Tower at Newport, R. I., indicates "vestiges of European civilization ** before the Pilgrim Fathers landed," and "is certainly constructed on the

same principle as Stonehenge, Eng., and many other Cambrian memorials;" conforms exactly to the Druidic circle, rests on eight round columns twenty-three feet in diameter and twenty-four high, that it is Cambrian, not Scandinavian archeology; speaks of Stedman "of Breconshire" as relating that Oliver Humphreys narrated that "an English privateer, or pirate" being near Florida careening his vessel, "had learned, as he thought, the Indian language, which his friend said was perfect Welsh." That "our American mounds agree in the minutest particulars with those described by Pennant as found during his 'Tour in Wales;'" that this "is the opinion of De Laet, Hornius, Mitchel, and others." Bowen proceeds:

"Welegeens." "A writer in the 'Mount Joy Herald,' makes this statement: 'In the year 1854 I had a conversation with an old Indian prophet, who styled himself the fifteenth in the line of succession. He told me, in broken English, that long ago a race of white people had lived at the mouth of Conestoga creek, who had red hair and blue eyes, who cleared the land, fenced, plowed, raised grain, etc., that they introduced the honey bee, unknown to them. He said the Indians called them the Welegeens, and that in the time of the fifth prophet the Conestoga Indians made war with them, and, after great slaughter on both sides, the white settlers were driven away. Our fathers and grandfathers used to tell us what a hatred and prejudice the Conestoga Indians had against red haired and blue eyed people—in all their wars in eastern Pennsylvania. When taking white prisoners, they would discriminate between the black haired and the red, showing mercy to the former, and reserving the latter for torture and death. This would seem to indicate that they knew from tradition of Prince Madoc and his followers, and of the fearful fight they had made.'

"In Onondaga, New York, there are vestiges of ancient settlements dating back beyond the time when the council fires of the six nations burned there. These are protected by three circular forts."

Wyoming and Susquehanna Valley Remains. Bowen then refers to Isaac Chapman's "History of Wyoming." Penn., in which that author states that remains of ancient fortifications exist in the Wyoming valley apparently constructed by "a race of people very different in their habits from those who occupied the place

when first discovered by the whites;" one of the best preserved of which he examined in 1817, and carefully ascertained its dimensions, it being in Kingston township on the north side of Toby's Creek, about half a mile from its confluence with the Susquehanna; "it consisted probably of only one mound" of equal height on all sides, made of earth, "the plain on which it stands not abounding in stone. On the outside of the ramparts an intrenchment, or ditch." The plain when first known was covered with a forest, "and the trees which grew in the rampart and the intrenchment are said to have been as large as those in any other part of the valley;" one oak among which was found "to be seven hundred years old. The Indians had no tradition concerning these fortifications" nor, apparently, of the purposes for which they were constructed." Bowen adds: That on the Susquehanna, a little above Wilkesbarre is another fortification "of precisely the same size and dimensions as that described by Chapman." That in these works and up that river to Towanda human skeletons have been found, "as many as six at one time having been washed out of the old fireplaces by the freshets—large earthen vessels, and relics of various kinds. One of these earthen vessels was twelve feet in diameter, thirty-six feet in circumference, and three inches thick," found on a Mr. Kinney's farm; relics of iron instruments had also been found, "which agrees with a remarkable tradition of the Shawanese Indians who emigrated from Pennsylvania to Ohio, 'that the coasts were inhabited by white men who used iron instruments.'"

Welsh Coat of Arms. Says Bowen: "Six buttons were also discovered bearing on their faces the mermaid, the coat of arms of the Principality of Wales." Bowen proceeds:

"Ring-Forts" Like Celts—Skeletons—Metals. "The statements of these early writers have been abundantly confirmed, respecting the existence of monumental remains and traces of civilized life, by the patient explorations of such workers as Schoolcraft, Squier, Davis, Pidgeon, and others, who have opened up many of these half-concealed monuments and disclosed their contents. Squier, in speaking of those found along the Ohio valley, says, 'The British Islands only afford works with which any comparison can safely be instituted. The 'ring-forts' of the ancient Celts are nearly identical in form and structure with a large class of remains in our own country.'"

Bowen then refers to human skeletons found by Squier, as related in his "Aboriginal Monuments," together with ornaments and metals worked by skilled artificers, and remarks:

"It must be borne in mind that these mounds bear no resemblance to Indian burying grounds. They are the sepulchres of a superior people." He proceeds:

Silver Cross. "In 1844 a gentleman in Ohio sent to the librarian of the American Antiquarian Society, Worcester, Massachusetts, a cross, the emblem of the Christian faith. It was made of silver, and was about two and a half inches long. It was found on the breast of a female skeleton which was dug from a mound at Columbus, over which a forest of trees had grown. On this cross the capital letters I. S. are perfectly visible. These initials are interpreted to mean the sacred name, Iesus Salvator."

Celtic Hieroglyphics. "A relic which obtained great celebrity some years ago, and which is now in the possession of some person in Richmond, Virginia, was found at Grave Creek, Virginia, near the Ohio, in the upper vault of the celebrated mound there. The attention of the learned world was brought to it by Mr. Schoolcraft, who made a correct drawing and published it. The mound went by the suggestive name of '**The Grave.**' **The relic was found, with other things, by the side of some skeletons. It is nearly circular in form, and composed of a compact sandstone of a light color. The inscription upon it runs in three parallel lines, and comprises twenty-four distinct characters, having at the bottom a hieroglyphic or ideographic sign. It has been subjected to the studious scrutiny of many learned men, with various results. The most of the characters have been decided to be Celtic or old British."

Broadsword. "Some years ago a circular plate, made of copper and overlaid with a thick plate of silver on one side, was found near the city of Marietta, Ohio. The copper was nearly reduced to an oxide, or rust. The silver was black, but could be brightened by being rubbed. A small piece of leather was inserted between the two plates of silver and copper, and both held together with a central rivet. This relic exactly resembled the bosses or ornaments appended to the belt of the broadsword of the ancient Briton or Welshman. It lay on the face of the skeleton, preserving the bone, as it did the leather and the lint or flax around the rivet. Near the body was found a plate of silver, six

inches long and two in breadth, and weighing one ounce. There were also several pieces of a copper tube, filled with rust. These are supposed to have belonged to the equipage of a sword."

Engineering Implements. Bowen declares that the Ohio earthworks and those of the Mississippi show great proficiency in engineering with "all parts of a systematic defense ** and even the lookout, corresponding to the barbican in the British system of the middle ages." He contends that the many relics in various metals curiously wrought, found in those earthworks, must, in view of the ignorance of the red man of those arts, be regarded as of other origin—the ancient genius for work and trade in metals indicating probability of Welsh origin.

Mines. He declares the Upper Lake copper mines were worked by Welsh in the thirteenth to fifteenth centuries; trees found standing among the debris showing about 400 years' growth; huge chunks of copper "lifted out of their beds by finished tools," etc; "wooden frame-works and skids have been found made with sharp-edged instruments." He thinks, however, that too great age has been by some ascribed to the defenses and mounds of our country, citing various earthworks made during and prior to the revolutionary period as being less ancient than they appear.

Fortifications Less Ancient Westward. Bowen states that trees in the Wyoming valley showed, by annular rings, from 600 to 700 years' age; that according to President Harrison's observation, 500 years would be required for growth of trees on those ruins to mature to middle of eighteenth century; that the age of trees standing on those earthworks diminish "with striking regularity in the ratio of their distance from the eastern coast." The first found reach 700; in the Ohio from four to 500; in the Lake Superior region 350 to 400; that by comparing these figures with A. D. 1170 at Madoc's alleged landing, etc., little doubt can linger as to the origin, etc.

Dispersion From Ohio. Bowen asserts that abundant evidence existed that dispersions went on to south, west and north from mouth of the Ohio after the "Welsh Indians" were driven there, shown by similar remains indicating skill, etc. Such a dispersion offers the best solution for ** numerous accounts given of them into an intelligible and consistent whole."

Semi-Civilized Western Indians—Names. Bowen cites from a

letter from a resident of New Orleans, to Griffith Williams of London: "That the natives of America have, for many years past, emigrated from the east to the west is a known fact; ** that a people called the Welsh or White Indians now reside at or near the banks of the Missouri, I have not the least doubt of," traders, etc., having so asserted; that an Illinois merchant assured him that "White Bearded Indians" existed west of the Mississippi in thirty-two villages, have religious ceremonies, etc.; and cites Cox's "Description of Louisiana" (1782) showing that La Hontan found Indians "much more civilized than any other Indians," designated Metocantes, 800 miles up the Missouri on "an east lake;" and from Charlevoix (Vol. 2, p. 225) that far west of the Mississippi were "people resembling the French, with buttons on their clothes," etc., called Mactotatas; from Bossu's "Louisiana" who had information "by the Indians of a nation of clothed people" far west of the Mississippi in villages of "white stone, navigated in great piraguas on the great salt water lakes," and who cites Peter Martyr as declaring that "the nations of Virginia and Guatemala celebrate the memory of their ancient heroes, whom they call Madoc," and that Bishop Nicholson "believes that the Welsh language has formed a considerable part of the languages of the American nations. There are antiquarians who pretend that the Spaniards got their double or guttural L (LL) from the American, who, according to the English, must have got it from the Welsh;" and that Bossu adds "that these Welsh Indians seem to go by various names, such as Panes, Panis (Pawnees)." And after quoting from Williams the Caldwell narrative and referring to Rimington's statement, Bowen declares that "the Welsh Indians went by different names," as Padoucas, Panis (Pawnees), Ka Anzou (Kansas), Matocantes, Mactotatas, and Madawgwys, Madogians or Madogiant, etc.; and that if 'm' were substituted for 'p' in "Padouca," making it "Madouca," it would "more nearly approach the general name," and the "p" might be a corruption from difficulty of pronunciation; that the "White Padoucas" lived in detached communities from 37 north and 97 west to 43 north and 110 west; that the Padoucas, Pawnees and Kansans were mixed; that from documents in Jefferson's Congressional Message "the Pania Pique in Arkansas were formerly the White Panias, and are of the same family as the Panias" of the Platte; that in Du Pratz's Louisiana the "White Panis" in the map are

at the head of the Arkansas, "Panis Mahas, or White Panis" at the head of the Platte, the Padoucas between, etc.

Madoc is "Matoc." Bowen asserts that "Matocantes" resembles "Madoc," that "a Welshwoman in South Wales calling her son by that name would say Matoc, which is pure Silurian Welsh, the 'd' being changed into 't'; hence there might follow such names as Matociait, Matociant, Matocantes, as applied to the followers of Madoc."

Griffith's Account. Bowen quotes from Judge Toulman, of Mississippi in "Kentucky Palladium" of 1804, to the effect that no circumstance relative to the west has excited "more general attention and anxious curiosity than the opinion that a nation of white men speaking the Welsh language reside high up the Missouri"—an idea regarded variously as "suggestion of bold imposture" or "as a fact fully authenticated by Indian testimony, and the report of various travelers worthy of credit;" that the Ohio fortifications "were evidently never made by the Indians," that their structure indicates an agricultural people of military genius; that he himself entertains "considerable doubt about the fact;" but that what John Childs veraciously related to him merited "serious attention," concerning Maurice Griffith's experience; who a native of Wales forty years before was imprisoned in Virginia by the Shawnees and taken to their nation, where, after remaining several years, he was allowed to go with five Indians "to explore the sources of the Missouri;" that in ascending from the Missouri's mouth they "frequently came in sight of" the river, finding salt springs, etc.; found lead and copper mines, and later "white mountains" which, though in summer time, "appeared to be covered with snow," but which proved to be "immense bodies of white sand;" had passed through "about ten nations of Indians;" thence up a "shallow river" to the top of a mountain, beyond which they went "for several days," when they "accidentally met with three white men in the Indian dress. Griffith immediately understood their language, as it was pure Welsh" except an occasional word; that (the Shawnees had taken turns as spokesmen, etc.) it being the turn of a Shawnee to interpret, Griffith "preserved a profound silence, and never gave them any intimation that he understood," etc.

European Indians. That after four or five days' journey they reached those white men's village, "where they found that the

whole nation was of the same color, having all the European complexion;" for some fifteen miles "the three men" took them through their villages, where a council over the conduct to be observed towards "the strangers" was held for three days in their presence, "as the strangers were not supposed to be acquainted with their language;" the conclusion being that the visitors were warlike and should be put to death, as invasion might follow their return. "Griffith then thought it was time for him to speak. He addressed the council in the Welsh language;" informed them that no nation, but curiosity had sent them, they wished to trace up the Missouri, etc. "An instant astonishment glowed in the countenances, not only of the council, but of his Shawanese companions, who clearly saw that he was understood by the people;" he was believed, they were then treated with utmost friendship; the Griffith party remained eight months, "but were deterred from prosecuting their researches up the Missouri by the advice of the people" who declared that after a twelve months' journey up the river it did not decrease, etc.

Forefathers From Abroad. "As to the history of this people he could learn nothing satisfactory. The only account they could give was, that their forefathers had come up the river from a very distant country. They had no books, no records, no writings. They intermixed with no other people by marriage; there was not a dark skinned man in the nation. Their numbers were very considerable. There was a continued range of settlements on the river for fifty miles, and there were within this space three large water courses which fell into the Missouri, on the banks of which they were likewise settled.** Their clothing was skins well dressed. Their houses were made of upright posts and barks of trees.** They had no iron. ** They had some silver which had been hammered with stones into coarse ornaments, but it did not appear to be pure. ** He said nothing about their religion."

Griffith, after preparing a canoe and promising to again visit those Indians, descended the river with the Shawnees and returned to that nation, having been gone "about two years and a half;" and a few months later found it possible to leave a hunting party and reach "the settlements on the Roanoke." Childs "knew him before he was taken prisoner, and saw him a few days after his return;" he was "universally regarded as a steady, honest man of strict veracity;" Childs "has no more doubt of the

truth of his relations than if he had seen the whole himself." Bowen shows the lead mines to have been in Missouri, the salt springs in Nebraska, and the "white mountains," as proven by his own observations, were "bold projections of limestone which in the distance appeared like banks of snow" on the Missouri banks; says Griffith's speaking of Indians "all white" presents difficulties but is partially explained by stating that they were unmixed "by marriage" with other people and were not "dark skinned," that they were white enough to be called by Griffith and numerous reliable witnesses "White Padoucas," "White Panis," "White Indians;" that his statement that they had "no records and no horses" differs somewhat from those of others but does not contradict them, as "different branches" of Indians were visited, etc.; that his reference to their language "meant no more than that the radical structure of the (Welsh) language was still preserved and could be readily distinguished, though some of the words had undergone modification."

Morgan Lewis' Account. Bowen cites Gen. Morgan Lewis, a revolutionary army officer and aide-de-camp to Gen. Gates, once governor of New York, etc.; a native of Wales, his father was Francis Lewis, a signer of the Declaration of Independence; and the latter was captured at Oswego in the French war and assigned over by Montcalm "to certain Indians, as their share of prisoners" among which Indians "was a chief whose language resembled the Gaelic (a dialect of the Celtic with which Mr. Lewis was thoroughly acquainted)." Mr. Lewis understood him "sufficiently to discover that his language was of that ancient dialect;" he then "addressed the chief in Welsh, and was understood" and Lewis was "selected from the rest of the prisoners, and accompanied and guarded," etc.; and Lewis "was sent to England in a cartel for exchange of prisoners."

Bowen, after referring to the Roman characters as in use in Wales after Cesar's invasion, thus alludes to the Greek characters in use in their sacred literature, and to the various books found among the American Indians as shown:

Were They Madoc's Books? "Yet so sacred was the Greek character held by monastic schools, because the gospel was written in it, that many transcribers—and they were the book-makers—clung with a religious enthusiasm to it. Christianity

was certainly introduced into the island in the second century, the Greek forms in the Welsh language had not become lost, and it is likely that many parchment manuscripts were extant, Madoc's position as a member of the royal house of Wales, notwithstanding the scarcity and great cost of books in those times, would enable him to possess some of the most valuable, even those illuminated in rich, fixed colors, and which required many years of patient toil to manufacture. It is far more within the order of reason to believe that Madoc and his emigrants, upon leaving their own native shores, would take with them copies of the great book of books—the king of books on the throne of letters, than that they would leave them behind. Some of his followers, perhaps the most of them, were not able to read them, but knew somewhat their contents. Under their new conditions of life, relapsing gradually from a civilized state, these manuscripts came at length to be invested with a certain sacred mystery, as the depository of their ancestors' religious faith. No wonder that they should be so carefully preserved."

Bowen, p. 120, Ch. XI, thus refers to the Mandans, and to Catlin's visit to and concerning them:

Bowen On the Mandans. "During the present century various travelers have called the attention of the civilized world to a small body of Indians inhabiting the banks of the upper Missouri, called Mandans. They, with the Minnetarees and Crows, are classed with the Dacotahs or Sioux, although it is known that their language bears no affinity whatever with the latter people. The Mandans are very light colored."

And after making a biographical reference to Geo. Catlin, and stating that he was the most intimate with the Mandans of all who visited them, he adds:

Bowen On Catlin. "When Mr. Catlin made his first entrance into this nation, numbering several thousands, he was struck with their appearance, and at once concluded that they belonged to an amalgam of native and white. He was at a loss for some time how to account for this; and it was only after the most careful study that he reached the conviction that the Mandans were a branch of the descendants of Madoc's colony. He believed that the ten ships of Madoc, or at least part of them, either entered the Balize at the mouth of the Mississippi, or the colonists landed

on the Florida coast and made their way inward. They began agriculture, but were attacked and driven to erect those immense earthen fortifications and subsequently were driven still farther and farther inward. Mandans was a corruption of Madawgwys, a name applied by Cambrians to the followers of Madoc." He says of their pottery:

Mandan Pottery. "They exhibit great skill in the manufacture of pottery, and the specimens found in the earthen remains of the Ohio valley, many of them at present in the museum at Cincinnati, correspond with many of the products of the Mandans. The Mandan women mould vases, cups, pitchers, and pots out of the black clay, and bake them in little kilns in the sides of the hill, or under the bank of the river."

Mandan Language—It Is Welsh. "The most convincing proof, probably, to the mind of Mr. Catlin, and to all others who have studied the possible identification of the Mandans with Madoc's colony, is found in their language. The resemblance in form and sound is so very marked that it cannot escape the eye and ear of any individual, much less those of a Welshman. It is expected that he would catch the soonest any similarity in the two languages, the Mandan and the Welsh. And fortunately there are too many instances of this similarity to admit for a moment, the idea of chance or coincidence."

Bowen here exhibits a table of "words selected from the English, Mandan, and Welsh, and their pronunciations," adding that many others might be given:

English.	Mandan.	Welsh.	Pronounced.
I	Me	Mi	Me
You	Ne	Chwi	Chwe
He	E	A	A
She	Ea	E	A
It	Ount	Hwynt	Hooynt
We	Eonah	Huna, masc.	Hooona
		Hona, fem.	Hona
Those ones	Yrhai Hyna
No, or there is			
not	Megosh	Nagoes	Nagosh
No	Meg	Nage	.

English.	Mandan.	Welsh.	Pronounced.
		Nag	
		Na	
Head	Pan	Pen	Pen
The Great Spirit	Maho peneta	Mawr penaethir	Yaoon penaethir
		Ysprid mawr	Usprid maoor
Father	Tautah	Tadwys	Tadoos
Foh! Ugh!	Paeechah	Pah	Pah
Hammock	Caupan	Gaban	GaGban
To call	Eenah	Enwi	Enwah

Deep Guttural Sounds. He remarks: "The Welsh is noted for its deep gutturals, and, to the ear unaccustomed to hear it, it seems very harsh. Travelers have observed this guttural pronunciation very extensively among the American Indians."

Natches Indians Talked Welsh. "Mr. Baldwin, in his recent work on 'Ancient America,' in his endeavors to determine the origin of the Natches Indians, says, 'they differed in language, customs, and condition from all other Indians in the country.' He then attempts to affix their traditions with the people of Mexico." And after referring to the Willain colony in the Natches country (hereinbefore related), Bowen asks: "Is it not altogether likely, then, that the Uchees and Natches, being known to be so very different from the surrounding nations in language, spoke the same as the Mandans, and that the language of the three did not differ much from the Welsh?" And after mentioning the Dr. Morse report concerning the "Welsh Indians" in 1820, and to Catlin's researches, Bowen remarks: "But time is making things more equal, and the sturdy defenders of Madoc's voyages and American colony are having his claims ratified in a most astonishing manner. It is very fortunate that more recent researches have brought to light the language of a people so rapidly melting away, and thus supplied an answer to the question as to how the many Welshmen who came in contact with them could understand and converse with these Welsh Bearded Indians." (p. 130, Ch. 12.)

(Bowen, p. 130, Ch. 12.)

Mexico and Peru—Taltecs to Aztecs. "Mexico and Peru were the most civilized parts of the continent when the Spaniards arrived. If it had not been for the bigoted zeal of the Spanish priests, and most signally that of **Zumarraga**, the abundant and astonishing national picture-writings which were the historical records of the Aztecs might still be in existence, and serve to reveal the successive links in the mighty chain of migrations of the early peoples so that much of the mystery that still lingers in regard to their settlement and civilization could be removed ** The historian is consequently forced to rely upon whatever fugitive pieces escaped the hands of those infamous ravagers, the study of the monumental remains, and the broken and scattered remnants of this people, scarcely recognizable, found on the Mexican plateau and in the various parts of the American territories."

Aztecs From North. "According to the most authentic records which remain, the Aztecs came from the regions of the north, 'the populous hive of nations in the new world, as it has been in the old.'

"**Clavigro**, the patient and voluminous historian of New Spain, assigns the following dates to some of the most important events in the early history of Mexico:

	A. D.
The Toltecs arrived in Anahuac.....	648
They abandoned their country.....	1051
The Chichimecs arrived.....	1170
The Acolhuans arrived about.....	1200
The Aztecs or Mexicans reached Tula.....	1196
They founded the Mexican Empire.....	1325
Conquest by Cortez.....	1521

Aztecs Not Barbarians. "Zurita, a celebrated jurist, whose personal experience and observation among the Aztecs extended over a period of nineteen years, and who returned to Spain in 1560, was indignant at the epithet **barbarian** as applied to the Aztecs, an epithet, he says, 'which could come from no one who had personal knowledge of the capacity of the people or their institutions, and which in some respects is quite as well merited by the European nations.' " Then, quoting Zurita on the civilization, arts and sciences of the Aztecs, their light complexion and European dress, he quotes further: Throughout the different

cities were barber shops, where the men assembled to have their beards shaved. No such thing was known among the American Indians." Bowen quotes from Prescott:

"God of the Air"—His Return Expected. "'Quetzalcoatl, God of the air,' says Prescott, 'instructed them in the use of the metals, in agriculture, and the arts of government. It was the golden age. For some cause he was compelled to abandon the country. On his way he stopped at the city of Cholula, where a temple was dedicated to his worship, the massy ruins of which still form one of the most interesting relics of antiquity in Mexico. When he reached the shores of the Mexican gulf, he took leave of his followers, promising that he and his descendants would revisit them hereafter, and then, entering his wizard skiff made of serpents' skins, embarked on the great ocean for the fabled land of Tlapallan (are there not here the Welsh words *lla*, place, softened into *tla* and *pell*, distant, meaning 'distant place?') He was said to have been tall in stature, with a white skin, long dark hair, and a flowing beard.'" Bowen proceeds:

Aztec Religion—Two Sources. "Their religion was a compound of Christianity and mythology, of spiritual refinement and ferocity. Indeed, so much was this the case that the most intelligent and judicious historians of the Aztecs could not resist the conviction that one part of their religion emanated from a comparatively refined people, while the other sprang from barbarians. Everything pointed to the doctrine that their religion had two distinct sources.

"Some historians have erred in supposing that they indiscriminately sacrificed human beings. Their sacrifices were criminals collected from all parts of the country, kept in cages, and slain upon the same day to make a religious exhibition."

One God—Prayers. "They recognized the existence of one God, Supreme Creator and Lord of the Universe. In their prayers they addressed Him as their God, 'by whom they lived, omnipresent, who knoweth all thoughts and giveth all gifts, without whom man is nothing, the incorporeal, invisible, one God, of perfect perfection and purity, under whose wings we find repose and a sure defense.'**

"The ceremony of naming children shows a wonderful coincidence with what are called Christian rites. The lips and bosom

of the infant were sprinkled with water, and 'the Lord was implored to permit the holy drops to wash away the sin that was given to it before the foundation of the world, so that the child might be born anew.' ***

Aztec Bards—Welsh Minstrelsy? "The Aztec nobles had Bards in their houses, who composed ballads suited to the times, and sang and played on instruments in honor of the achievements of their lord. In this is discovered a resemblance to the customs of Welsh minstrelsy."

Musical Councils—Welsh Trials? Badges. "They had also musical councils, held on special days in the presence of large public assembles, for the trials of historians, poets, and musicians, in their respective compositions, before the monarchs of Mexico. Tuzcuco, and Tlacopan. These were exactly identical with the Welsh Eisteddfods—bardic and musical contests, which have long been and are still held in Wales. ** They had also a complete system of orders and badges resembling those in Europe. By a study of their stone calendars, they are known to have had regular divisions of time; and their years consisted of three hundred and sixty-five days."

Montezuma's People Conquerors. "Historians relate that in the first interview of Cortez and Montezuma in his palace, the latter said that his ancestors were not the original proprietors of the land. They had occupied it but a few ages, and had been led there by a great Being, who, after giving them laws and ruling over the nation for a time, had withdrawn to the region where the sun rises. He had declared upon his departure that he or his descendants would again visit them and resume his empire. The wonderful deeds of the Spaniards, their fair complexion, and the quarter whence they came, led him to believe that they were his descendants.

"It was this tradition, inflexibly maintained by all the natives, which enabled Cortez and his followers to secure such a complete conquest throughout the Aztec empire."

South American White Civilization. "Three South American nations ascribe their civilization and religion to three white men who appeared among them.

"Abbe Molina in his 'History of Chili,' Vol. II. book I,

chap. I, says, that 'there is a tribe of Indians in Baroa, Chili, whose complexions are a clear white and red.'

"Baron Humboldt, in his 'Political Essays,' remarks that 'in the forests of Guiana, especially near the sources of the river Oronoco, are several tribes of a whitish complexion.'

"Captain John Drummond, who resided in Mexico for many years in a military capacity, as an engineer, geographer, and naturalist, favored Dr. Williams, the author of the 'Enquiry,' with his opinion on the subject." (p. 140.)

Bowen then quotes, as hereinbefore taken from Williams' 'Enquiry;' and proceeds:**

..Tlascalan and Aztec Fortifications. "The Tlascalans belonged to the same great family with the Aztecs. They came on the grand Mexican plateau about the same time with the kindred races, at the close of the **twelfth** century. Their immense fortifications and walls, which extended for many miles, show the same methods of construction, in semi-circular lines and overlapping one another, as those in the valleys of the Ohio and Mississippi."

Pyramid Builders From Atlantic. "Most of the historians say that the two great pyramids—teocalli—just northeast of the city of Mexico were constructed by an ancient people that came to Mexico from some country east situated on the Atlantic ocean."

Aztecs Coeval With Madoc. "What, then, is the conclusion? That the Aztecs were the Alligewi, who were found in Virginia and the Carolinas by Madoc's colony, and with whom the latter became amalgamated and moved westward. Being more and more pressed by the powerful Indian nations which subsequently gained control of the middle and eastern countries, they were at length obliged to abandon the Ohio and Mississippi valleys. Some portions of these people had reached, as a sort of advance guard, the Mexican plateau before those who were left behind entirely surrendered the country. The date of founding the Aztec empire—1325—necessitates this view." **

Migration Up Missouri. "When this mighty migration took place, a portion, from necessity, convenience, or inclination, ascended the Missouri; and of these the Mandans are the descendants; while the main body moved in a southwest direction, leaving unmistakable traces of their progress from the Mississippi to Mexico."

Aztec-Welshmen Controlled Continent. "The Aztec empire became a controlling power on this continent, and exacted tribute for the Mexican kings from all the Indian tribes. ** The ships which are represented on Mexican monuments as crossing an ocean are Madoc's vessels, floating on the Atlantic from Wales to America.

"Abbe Brasseur de Bourbourg, the most profound investigator in Mexican and Peruvian antiquities, says, 'The native traditions generally tribute their civilization to bearded white men, who came across the ocean from the east.' " Bowen proceeds:

"Sebastian Cabot, in 1495. ** discovered Florida and Mexico, and found along the coast the descendants of the Welsh discoverers who eventually settled in Mexico."

Bowen, (page 147) cites the following from Carver:

Carver—Mexican Subjects. "Captain Carver, in his 'Travels in North America,' says that 'northwest of the Missouri and St. Pierre, the Indian fathers told me that there was a nation rather smaller and whiter than the neighboring tribes, who cultivated the ground, and (as far as I could gather from their expressions) in some measure the arts. They are supposed to be some of the different tribes that were tributary to the Mexican kings, and who fled from their native country to seek an asylum in these parts about the time of the conquest of Mexico by the Spaniards, about two centuries ago.' " and cites him further regarding the missionary idea of the Indians having "some notion of the Christian institutions, for they were greatly agitated at the sight of the cross, which made such impressions on them that they showed that they were not unacquainted with the sacred mysteries of Christianity." Bowen adds:

Civilized Montezumans. "Very little has been known until late years of the Rio del Norte and its source or sources, which flows in a southerly direction through New Mexico and empties into the gulf. ** Military and scientific expeditions have been sent into these countries, which have returned with reports of having discovered new nations about whom nothing has been hitherto known.

"In the campaign of General Crook against the Apaches, a large tract of country, rich with the relics of the past, was opened. It contains a chain of cities in ruins and ancient towns

still inhabited by a race which holds itself aloof from Mexicans, Indians, and Americans, and prides itself on its descent from the ancient inhabitants of the country, and maintains a religion and government peculiar to itself. ** A strong wall surrounds the largest settlement.

"Montezuma is their deity, and his coming is looked for at sunrise each day. Their priests wore heavily embroidered robes, while their religious ceremonies are very formal and pompous. They have a high order of morality. The chief powers of government are vested in thirteen caciques, six of whom are elected for life. They are quite advanced in civilization. Their women are not treated as beasts of burden, but are respected, and permitted to confine themselves to housekeeping. From all that can be gleaned, it appears that these people have maintained their traditions unbroken for at least three centuries and a half." Bowen proceeds:

Civilized Moquis in Arizona. "Dr. Oscar Leow, chemist to Wheeler's surveying expedition, has contributed a brief ** intensely interesting article to the 'Popular Science Monthly' for July, 1874, on 'The Moquis Indians of Arizona,' " who observes: ** Their seven cities stand upon very high precipitous cliffs of sandstone, which, when seen in the distance, present such bold fronts that it appears out of the question for any one to think of climbing them. As the traveler approaches, however, he discovers narrow and circuitous paths, which must be passed over single file up and up, till the summit is reached. On this giddy height is the home of the Moquis. Dr. Leow terms it the 'Gibraltar of the West,' which the Navajoes and Apaches have never been able to conquer. **

"Here the habitations are not built of adobe, like Indian and Mexican huts, but of stones firmly held in place by a cement of clay and sand. The stories are about seven feet high, divided into rooms, and each provided with a fire-place. Windows are cut into the walls about a foot square."

Welsh Architecture—Cookery. "The architecture of these stone houses bears a marked conformity with that of the ruder ages among the Welsh.

"The physical appearance of the Moquis is a nearer approach to that of the Caucasian than to that of the Mongolian race. The

complexion is a light red-brown, and the countenance unusually intelligent.

"Mr. Cozzens, (of the Wheeler expedition) says that 'their faces were so bright and intelligent that I fancied they only required to be clothed in American dress, and shorn of their long locks of coarse black hair, to enable them to easily pass for people of our own race who had become brown from exposure to the sun. Their clothing is neat, and they have an abundance of it. They knit, spin, and weave blankets, cloaks, etc. They also manufacture certain kinds of pottery.' Their reservoirs are mentioned—utilized for live stock, and corn, the "principal crop." "The corn is ground, and then mixed with water, so as to form a paste. The woman who makes it dips her hand in the paste and rapidly passes some of it over hot stones, where it is soon baked. The cakes resemble the Welsh bara llechan, noted in their cookery. They have a kind of food called *panoche*, and still another called *tomales*—by mixing flour and meat in a powdered state. ** The vice of drunkenness and crime of murder are not known among this people. They are kind, warm-hearted, and hospitable. They believe that their great father, Montezuma, lives where the sun rises."

Aztecs of Welsh Blood. "Mr. Cozzens studied their manners and customs, and endeavored to learn something of the history of this singular race. He says that it is asserted by the people of the other pueblos 'that they are descendants of the Aztecs, though with Welsh blood in their veins.' " **

Mohave—Welsh Words. "The Mohaves, who are on the Colorado reservation, Arizona, are a small, isolated tribe, not more than perhaps a thousand all told. They are different from all other Indians. The women are tall, cleanly, and less servile than most Indian women. Their language is peculiar, and has Welsh words in it." **

Modocs—Madocs? "The perfidious and barbarous massacre of General Canby, Rev. Eleazer Thomas, and others, by that savage band called the Modocs, brought them into an unenviable notoriety; but, while passing, it is worthy of query how they came by a name so much like that of Madoc." (pp. to 155.)

Indian Freemasons. Bowen then refers to the beginning of

Freemasonry in America, as stated by Benjamin Franklin, and proceeds:

"But, if the testimony of the intelligent travelers can be accepted, it seems quite evident that lodges of Freemasons were in existence among the American Indians centuries prior to this time, all of which point to a Welsh origin. They certainly had private societies, which met at certain times, and the proceedings of which were kept inviolably secret under an oath." He then cites Governor DeWitt Clinton as believing that the signs of Freemasonry were found among the Indians. ** "In an interview that he had with an Indian preacher, the latter unmistakably made revelations which convinced the former that he was familiar with the order." The Iroquois are referred to as having Masonic orders, whose procedure was "same as among the whites." He asks:

Freemasonry in Wales. "Whence did they originate? There was a long period in Europe when the knowledge of Freemasonry was mostly confined to the Druids, and in Wales this order was the most generally found. It was their home. There they had their colleges and schools of learning. They were, indeed, priests, legislators, and historians. Through their order the principles of the mystic craft were preserved throughout Europe. It was associated with the later system of Bardism; ** it was known that its deepest roots were struck in the soil of Wales. Madoc, the son of a king and surrounded by a heroic band of eminent men, could not be ignorant of the principles of Freemasonry, and when they landed in America they brought those principles with them. ** There are not wanting instances where the lives of many whites have been spared by the Indians because the understood certain secret signs communicated to them."

Again, speaking of the Welsh language among the American Indians, Bowen says:

The Language Test. "An eminent modern linguist has said 'that the genealogy and antiquities of nations can be learned only from the sure testimony of their languages.'"

He then declares that "discovery of portions of a language" among nations separated by ocean, "surely indicates that some who spoke that language must have brought it there." And, adverting to instances of "imagined similarities" by the philolo-

gists, he says: "But when it is found that an identity exists in (1) the form, (2) the sound, and (3) the signification, and that, too, in multiplied instances, there is reason to believe that this identity does not rest on accident or coincidence. The student of language seaches for some more satisfactory solution of the question, by ascertaining, if possible, how those portions were introduced."

Celtic Words Among Indians. "Now, this is just the case with the Celtic language found among the Indian dialects. From New England to South America, Celtic words have been found whose structure, pronunciation, and signification were the same as those in use by the Gaels, Erse or Irish, and Welsh. Names of tribes, persons, places, rivers, and of many living and inanimate objects on the American continent, have been applied, and are now used, which can find their right place only by assigning to them a Celtic origin. ** Some said that was not to be wondered at—the finding of Celtic words among Americans—for undoubtedly the Celts have been very widely spread over the globe. This, however, was too general an affirmation to satisfy others. The celebrated Bishop Nicholson believed that the Welsh language formed a considerable part of the languages of the American nations. Sir Thomas Herbert, who published his travels in London in 1683." (Here follows what has been heretofore set forth from John Williams' book concerning Welsh words in this connection; and he adds:) **

"Appomattox" Is "Madoc's Name?" "Appomattox, now well known to the world, signifies Appwy, 'appoint' or 'name,' and Mattox, 'Madoc' or 'Mattoe,' the latter having the soft Silurian sound; hence, 'Madoc's name.'

"Madoc's creek is known by most Virginians, and by others."**

"Aztlán" a Welsh Word. "Aztlán seems clearly to have been derived from Welsh words having become mingled with Indian dialects, as as, 'plane surface' or 'area,' and lan, 'up,' an elevated land or table-land.' What better definition could be found to describe the Aztec plateau, beginning in Aztlán proper and continuing to widen into the Mexican plateau? The termination lan is very common in the Aztec language. It is found in the names of tribes, their cities, and a multitude of other objects, Tlascalans, Cholulans, and other peoples who dwelt in and around the upper

THE HISTORY OF THE
CITY OF BOSTON
FROM THE FIRST SETTLEMENT
TO THE PRESENT TIME
IN TWO VOLUMES
BY NATHANIEL BENTLEY
OF THE BARR

THE FIRST VOLUME
CONTAINING THE HISTORY FROM
THE FIRST SETTLEMENT
TO THE YEAR 1780
LONDON: PRINTED BY J. JOHNSON, ST. PAULS CHURCH-YARD, 1784

THE SECOND VOLUME
CONTAINING THE HISTORY FROM
THE YEAR 1780
TO THE PRESENT TIME
LONDON: PRINTED BY J. JOHNSON, ST. PAULS CHURCH-YARD, 1784

countries of the Aztec Empire. The terminations **an** and **pan**, the latter indicating locality, as prefix or suffix, are very noticeable. So frequent also is the use of **ch**, **th**, and **ll**, that the Welsh student who speaks or reads aloud Aztec words is simply astonished by their perfect consonance with those of his native tongue."

After recounting the long list of witnesses cited by him, and after referring to Catlin's "Years of Patient Investigation into the Language of the Mandans and of Other Indians," and to his table of Mandan and Welsh words, Bowen observes concerning the Moquis and Mojaves (page 163):

Celtic Inscriptions. "Those who have any acquaintance with the Moquis and Mohave tongues declare that they contain Welsh words. Relics with Celtic inscriptions have been unearthed. Aztec and Spanish chroniclers confirm more recent researches respecting the presence of Celtic words in the old Aztec language." **
And concludes:

Bowen's Conclusion. "What then? Why, that such a mass of testimony under such a variety of circumstances, precluding the idea of preconcert, interest, prejudice, or down-right ignorance, establishes the fact that the Welsh were on this continent prior to its discovery by Columbus and that those Welsh were led thither by Prince Madoe in 1170, A. D. Many historical facts to which the world has given implicit credence are far less supported than the above. Hereafter let not American historians pass over these facts in contemptuous silence."

Welsh Immortals In America. And in a parting word Bowen, with pardonable pride of race and of nation-building, refers to the great part taken by the "Welsh mind and heart" in founding Christian civilization in America; to the fact that the Mayflower was captained by a Welshman and contained, beside, five prominent Welshmen; to Roger Williams and the "pure democracy" established by him at Providence—rewarded them by banishment, later by his ennoblement in bronze; and lastly, to the eighteen Welsh immortals who signed the Declaration of Independence, beginning with John Adams and ending with Francis Henry Lightfoot Lee.

Morse Report. As showing the currency of the accounts of the "Welsh Indians" early in last century, we cite the following from the Morse report to war department in 1822:

"MANDANS."

"The Mandans, numbering 1,250 souls, live on the Missouri, a few miles on this side Mandan Fort. It has been suggested (see page 145 of this App.) that these Indians are descendants of the Welsh colony, who are said to have early immigrated to this country." (Report of Jedidiah Morse to Secretary of War, page 252, in year 1822.)

"WELSH INDIANS."

"Father Reichard, of Detroit, from whom I received the facts just stated, informed me at the same time, that in 1793, he was told at Fort Chartres that twelve years before Capt. Lord commanded this post who heard some of the old people observe, that Mandan Indians visited this post, and could converse intelligibly with some Welsh soldiers in the British army. This hint is here given, that any person who may have the opportunity, may ascertain whether there is any affinity between the Mandan and Welsh language." (Id, page 145.)

Maj. Amos Stoddard, who was the first acting governor of the upper half of the Louisiana Territory after its acquisition by the United States, in his very interesting and competent work entitled "Sketches Historical and Descriptive of Louisiana," published in 1812 (Mathew Carey. Phila.) has entered into a discussion of the claims in favor of the discovery of America by Prince Madoc, under the title, "A Welsh Nation In America," and has collated many evidences tending to sustain the theory, some of which have already been brought in review herein, and some of which refer to as found in his text.

The fact that an officer of the federal government, holding an official relation to the country whose history brought out this portion of his observations and discussions, saw fit to descend to a detailed treatment of the question in the manner in which he presents it, seems to lend more than mere plausibility to his views and conclusions.

Stoddard regards it "morally impossible" that the "chain of testimony" he presents in favor of Welsh discovery of America "should be fabricated;" refers to the Welsh historians and bards as "recording their migration," and scouts the idea of any motive to deceive by "so many different persons at such distant periods

of time from each other;" thinks it as likely that Wales "furnished a population for America" as that Asia, Africa, or the North of Europe did; that it is "likely" that Romans imparted to Britons "some confused notions" they had of discoveries in the Atlantic by the Phonicians or Carthaginians from Africa; that the Welsh had no adequate means of handing down history in Roman times, "but this furnishes no argument in favor of a contrary doctrine;" that the Welsh, attacked for ages by Romans, Saxons and Danes, "had as powerful motives for colonization as any other people;" they were likewise internally convulsed, had small hope of maintaining liberty and so had "strong motives to abandon their country;" that the difficulties of crossing the ocean from Wales were "not much greater than those from Africa, and much less than those usually experienced from the north of Europe;" mentions the general Welsh authorities hereinbefore treated of, quoting largely from Caradoc derived from Hakluyt; criticises Dr. Belknap wherein he imputes to Hakluyt a seeming paradox of finding a country "without inhabitants" and one where the Welsh "used the language found there," etc., by declaring that "unknown land" was first found, then a land "without inhabitants," and then one the character of which (on the alleged third voyage) "no one knows;" that the language from Caradoc that "the Welsh followed the manners of the land, and used the language found there" "were the mere suggestions of" those writers centuries after the migration, in an attempt to show "that the Mexicans derived their origin from the Welsh," in which attempt it was necessary "to infer the loss of their own" language, while "the accounts given by Madoc himself on his return from his two first voyages, are perfectly natural and consistent;" that Belknap's partiality for Columbus doubtless made him "less disposed to admit the possibility of a competitor;" that while navigation was then little known, "yet it pretty plainly appears" that Madoc united his two first colonies at the point of destination. Of the fate of the third, which sailed in ten ships, we have no account; that if through unknown occurrence it landed far from the other two colonies, "probably they remained disunited and unknown to each other; and this accounts in part, for the apparent confusion in some of the subsequent proofs of their dispersed situation on this continent;" cites the

account of "a knight of Wales, who, with shipping, and some pretty company, did go and discover these parts, (America) whereof, as there is some **record of reasonable credit** amongst the monuments of Wales"—as giving countenance to the storied "supposed voyages and discoveries of King Arthur;" the Morgan Jones account; Stedman's adventure; Charlevoix's account, of Carver and ending with Griffith's adventure; after which Stoddard publishes the following statement, made to him personally.

Red-Haired Indians In Far Northwest. "The subsequent narrative, corroborative of the one just mentioned, was given to the author of these sketches in May, 1805, by a Frenchman in upper Louisiana. This man had been several years employed in the northwest by the English traders. His usual station was at the factory or trading house on the Assiniboine, a few days travel only from the Mandans on the Missouri. The conductor of that establishment aimed to extend the trade, and for this purpose selected a party, of which the informant was one, to explore the Missouri. In ascending that river they were obliged to pass one or two cataracts or falls in the shining mountains, as also several rapids, and much **hard water**. On the summit of these mountains they entered a large lake, from which the Missouri flows; and from the opposite extremity another river issued towards the west, down which the informant descended for some distance, and spent eleven days on it. The publication of the narrative of Griffith suggested the propriety of some enquiry relative to the Indians about the head of the Missouri. The informant declared, (and he sustains the character of a man of truth) 'that there was a numerous and singular nation of Indians about the lake, who were not in the least tawny, but rather of a yellowish complexion; that they wear their beards, and that great numbers of them had red hair on their heads.' This is almost literally the statement furnished by the Frenchman."

Stoddard then refers to Beatty, to Sutton and Hicks, to Isaac Stewart; and then goes into consideration of criticisms of the Welsh theory, in substance as follows:

Criticisms Discussed. That plausible objections are made to the foregoing authorities as proving too much, in that Welsh tribes found in so many localities must have been more numerous than the colonies of Madoc would produce; but as the "only data

we have for calculation" show three voyages, with ten ships in the last one, the number of passengers (supposing, what is reasonable, 55 per ship), would in 500 years produce a population of over a million; while sanguinary wars have thinned their ranks, wiping out entirely many Indian nations; perhaps the third never joined the other colonies, but Madoc's superiority in ensuing wars with natives would probably result in rapid increase of Welsh population, with survival for long time of their arts; that the Tuscaroras of Welsh extraction probably built the subterraneous wall in North Carolina then lately discovered—a wall of well cemented stone of whose length 160 feet and about thirty in depth had been uncovered.

European Heraldry. That in Mexico the arms of Montezuma, "suspended in a broad shield over the front gate of his palace (a griffin with expanded wings, holding a tiger in his talons) appear to be derived from the heraldry of Europe;" yet, "we must not yield lightly" to the idea of their being of Welsh origin, since able historians "have rendered it pretty certain that some of the most polished nations of Anahuac were of Asiatic origin" coming from the northwest coast. And Stoddard urges that dispersion probably followed Madoc's death, from growth of population, and from internal wars which their "temper and disposition" would render probable.

Welsh On Atlantic Coast—Bibles. Stoddard believes the related discoveries were "actually made"—proven by coincidences and agreements; that Welsh bibles are shown by at least three persons (already mentioned) to have been found "among at least two tribes"—the witnesses living in different eras and unknown to each other.

On the Missouri. That "a white people" recently inhabited country near the Missouri's head, that they were Welsh, is "rendered almost certain" by the witnesses cited by him. He quotes the Gov. Sevier letter (hereinbefore alluded to) at length.

It seems very probable, from the Sevier letter and other evidences already considered, and from what is found below as observed by Maj. Stoddard, that the locality in which the alleged Welsh Indians were seen is much higher up the Missouri than the Mandan villages. Stoddard answers the question, why Lewis and Clarke did not find them, by stating that the Missouri over

The first of these is the fact that the United States is a young nation, and that its history is a history of growth and expansion. The second is the fact that the United States is a nation of immigrants, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these immigrants. The third is the fact that the United States is a nation of free men, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these free men.

The fourth is the fact that the United States is a nation of law, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these laws. The fifth is the fact that the United States is a nation of progress, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these progress. The sixth is the fact that the United States is a nation of peace, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these peace.

The seventh is the fact that the United States is a nation of justice, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these justice. The eighth is the fact that the United States is a nation of liberty, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these liberty. The ninth is the fact that the United States is a nation of equality, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these equality.

The tenth is the fact that the United States is a nation of unity, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these unity. The eleventh is the fact that the United States is a nation of strength, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these strength. The twelfth is the fact that the United States is a nation of wisdom, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these wisdom.

200 miles from its source was divided into three branches, the most northerly being traversed by that expedition, while the travelers cited as witness probably "ascended one of the other branches;" while in fact Lewis and Clarke did discover "some straggling Indians near the mouth of the Columbia similar in appearance to those mentioned by Vancouver" and resembling those "said to reside" on a branch of the Missouri. He declares too that it is "difficult to doubt" that Welsh Indians were found on the Red river by other witnesses cited herein; he referring to them as Ietans or Alitans on the sources of the Red, Arkansas and "some of the westerly branches of the Missouri," some of whom "were discovered by" Lewis and Clarke near the "shining (Rocky) mountains." "They uniformly live in tents of a conical figure, fabricated from skins. ** Their language widely differs from all others in the country, and few are disposed to encounter the difficulty of acquiring it." That the "confused notion of an universal deluge, entertained by several tribes" of apparently different origin should be in some measure ascribed to the Welsh immigrants, "and the many other tokens of Christianity" discovered in America, in case it is "satisfactorily ascertained" that the Welsh established themselves here through Madoc. Stoddard also declares his confidence in the claims supporting Indian Freemasonry, as hereinbefore referred to.

Southey's "Madoc." The poet, Robert Southey, has immortalized the story of Madoc's voyages and alleged adventures in America. The renowned production is prefaced by a brief statement of the generally understood account, which the author states as "The historical facts on which this poem is founded." The poem embraces eighteen cantos on "Madoc in Wales" and twenty-seven on "Madoc in Aztlan;" exploiting the historical facts of Welsh contemporary history; the alleged voyages, with romancing upon his supposed contact with Indians, and carrying the narrative into the Mexican civilization of the era of Spanish discoveries. Southey supposes three voyages. We quote very briefly a few fragments:

"Twice have the sons of Britain left her shores,
As the fledged eaglets quit their native nest;
Twice over ocean have her fearless sons
Forever sail'd away. Again they launch

Their vessels to the deep, *** Who mounts the bark?"
And upon his landing in America:

"Madoc had paused awhile; but every eye
Still watched his lips, and every voice was hushed.
Soon as I leaped ashore, pursues the Lord
Of ocean, prostrate on my face I fell,
Kiss'd the dear earth, and pray'd with thankful tears."
* * * * "To the shore

The natives throng'd; astonish'd, they beheld
Our winged barks, and gazed with wonderment
On the strange garb, the bearded countenance
And the white skin, in all unlike themselves."

Some writers have asserted, we believe, that Southey published a statement to the effect that investigation, subsequently to the composition of this poem, had shown that the claims that Welsh Indians existed in America were unfounded. He does not seem to have gone so far. He does publish, under date of 1815 (in his complete works, London; Longman, Brown, Green & Longman, 1847, page 313) this statement: "That country has now been fully explored, and wherever Madoc may have settled, it is now certain that no Welsh Indians are to be found upon any branches of the Missouri." This is a note to his said preface, in which latter he declares: "Strong evidence has been adduced that he reached America, and that his posterity exist there to this day, on the southern branches of the Missouri retaining their complexion, their language, and, in some degree, their arts." The preface was written in 1805. Therefore, whatever of disproof of the then recent accounts of those "Welsh Indians" was known to him must have been educed between 1805 and 1815—only eight years after Lewis and Clarke returned. The reader of history will judge for himself as to whether the "branches of the Missouri" could have been "fully explored" and this Madocian account wherein it involved those territories, discredited in that short space of time.

Geo. Catlin's specific reference to the subject of Madoc's supposed voyages to and settlement in America, and to the Mandan Indians in that connection, is found in Vol. 2 of his "North American Indians" (from which we have hereinbefore made ex-

tracts at large on the Mandans) on pages 260-261. We insert below the substance of what he there published on the subject:

Catlin On "Welsh Colony." That said colony, "which I barely spoke of in page 206, of Vol. 1," which "sailed under the direction" of Prince Madoc, or Madawe, ** according to numerous and accredited authors, and never returned to their own country," supposedly landed somewhere on the coast of North or South America, and "I believe it has been pretty clearly proved that they landed either on the coast of Florida or about the mouth of the Mississippi," and settled, according to "history and poetry of their country" somewhere in the interior of North America, where they are yet remaining, intermixed with some of the savage tribes."

Mandans On Lower Missouri. Catlin, after mentioning his references to his account of the Mandans, avers that since those notes were written (particularly shown at page 9 of said Vol. 1), he descended the Missouri from the Mandan village to St. Louis, "and have taken pains to examine its shores; and from the repeated remains of the ancient locations of the Mandans, which I met with on the banks of that river, I am fully convinced that I have traced them down nearly to the mouth of the Ohio river; and from exactly similar appearances, which I recollect to have seen several years since in several places in the interior of the state of Ohio. I am fully convinced that they have formerly occupied that part of the country, and have, from some cause or other, been put in motion, and continued to make their repeated moves until they arrived at the place of their residence at the time of their extinction, on the upper Missouri." Catlin here refers to his "annexed chart of the Missouri and Ohio rivers," where he had "laid down the different positions of the ancient marks of their towns which I have examined," and various fortifications on the Ohio and Muskingum rivers "in the vicinity of which I believe the Mandans once lived." His map shows locations of "Mandan remains" in South Dakota opposite the mouth of the Grand river, and at the mouth of the Cheyenne, also both sides of the James east of the Big Bend of the Missouri, and as far down the Missouri as the region below the mouth of the Platte in Nebraska and Iowa; then substantially opposite to Leavenworth in Missouri, also opposite St. Louis, and about two-thirds of the

way down from that point to the mouth of the Ohio, near Grand Tower, in Jackson and Union counties, Ill.; and north and east of Cincinnati, Ohio, on the Ohio and interiorly; all of which works, he contends, show marks of high civilization; were not built by savages; and refers to fortifications in Ohio "with covered ways to the water." (See in this connection, Part I of this paper, Vol. 3, Hist. Coll., S. D., page 555, concerning a supposed Aricara (Ree) stronghold a few miles below Pierre, showing similar passage-ways to water. They may, however, have been works of Mandans.)

Madoc On Mississippi? Catlin inclines to believe the "ten ships" of Madoc, or some of them "entered the Mississippi river at the Balize, and made their way up the Mississippi," or landed on the Florida coast, thence inland to the Ohio, where they flourished, but were overpowered at length by savages, when they built the great fortifications, etc., and were ultimately reduced, all but a few perishing—"that portion of them who might have formed alliances by marriage with the Indians," etc., and at length as despised half-breeds they gathered into "a band, and severing from their parent tribe, have moved off, and increased in numbers and strength, as they have advanced up the Missouri river to the place where they have been known for many years past by the name of the Mandans, a corruption or abbreviation, perhaps, of 'Madawgys,' the name applied by the Welsh to the followers of Madawc."

Mandan Villages Down to Ohio. Catlin, after again outlining the known mode of excavating for Mandan lodges, "which leave a decided remain for centuries," relates as follows his discoveries on the Missouri:

"After leaving the Mandan village, I found the marks of their former residence about sixty miles below where they were then living, and from which they removed (from their own account) about sixty or eighty years since; and from the appearance of the number of their lodges, I should think, that at that recent date there must have been three times the number that were living when I was amongst them. Near the mouth of the Big Shienne river, 200 miles below their last location, I found still more ancient remains, and in as many as six or seven other places between that and the mouth of the Ohio, as I have designated

on the chart, and each one, as I visited them, appearing more and more ancient, convincing me that these people, wherever they might have come from, have gradually made their moves up the banks of the Missouri, to the place where I visited them." He proceeds:

Rees Occupied Mandan Villages. "The Riccarees have been a very small tribe, far inferior to the Mandans; and by the traditions of the Mandans, as well as from the evidence of the first explorers, Lewis and Clarke, and others, have lived, until quite lately, on terms of intimacy with the Mandans, whose villages they have successively occupied as the Mandans have moved and vacated them, as they now are doing, since disease has swept the whole of the Mandans away." Catlin adds:

"**People of the Pheasants," From Ohio?** Catlin then treats the name "People of the Pheasants," claimed by the Mandans, as that of the "primitive stock," and as indicating their former locality either some 700 miles "west of the Mandans, or the forests of Indiana and Ohio," since "pheasants cannot be found short of reaching the timbered country at the base of the Rocky mountains" or in the forests mentioned to eastward.

Lived Near Pipestone, Minn.—Pottery Like Ohio. Catlin declares that: "The above facts, together with the other one which they repeatedly related to me, ** that they had often been to the hill of red pipe stone, and that they once lived near it, carry conclusive evidence, I think, that they have formerly occupied a country much farther to the south, and that they have repeatedly changed their locations, until they reached the spot of their last residence." He cites as evidence that they came from the Ohio and brought with them some civilized customs, numerous specimens of pottery taken from graves and tumuli in Ohio—some of which he had donated to the Cincinnati museum—"were to be seen in great numbers in the use of the Mandans; and scarcely a day in the summer, when the visitor to their village would not see the women at work with their hands and fingers, moulding them from black clay, into vases, cups, pitchers, and pots, and baking them in their little kilns, in the sides of the hill, or under the bank of the river." He felt sure this art "belongs to no other tribe on the continent"—in which he was evidently in error. And he dwells upon their art of making glass beads, as a secret

"that the traders did not introduce amongst them" and as "one that they cannot learn from them," and which he thinks "has been introduced among them by some civilized people, as it is as yet unknown to other Indian tribes in that vicinity, or elsewhere."

Mandan Canoe Is Welsh Coracle. Catlin declares: "The Mandan canoes which are altogether different from those of all other tribes, are exactly the Welsh Coracle, made of raw-hides, the skins of buffalos, stretched underneath a frame of willow or other boughs, and shaped nearly round, like a tub; which the woman carries on her head from her wigwam to the water's edge, and having stepped into it, stands in front, and propels it by dipping her paddle forward, and drawing it toward her, instead of paddling by the side. In referring to plate 240, letter C, page 138, the reader will see several drawings of these seemingly awkward crafts, which, nevertheless, the Mandan women will pull through the water at a rapid rate."

Catlin's Conclusion. He declares of the Mandans, that "from what I have seen of them, and from the remains on the Missouri and Ohio rivers, I feel fully convinced that these people have emigrated from the latter stream; and that they have, in the manner that I have already stated, with many of their customs, been preserved from the almost total destruction of the bold colonists of Madawe, who, I believe, settled upon and occupied for a century or so, the rich and fertile banks of the Ohio." He ends his remarks upon the subject by an allusion to his "brief vocabulary of the Mandan language" to which he refers the reader, "where he may compare it with that of the Welsh; and better, perhaps, than I can, decide whether there is any affinity existing between the two." That vocabulary is appended to this paper.

William Pidgeon, in his "Traditions of De-Coo-Dah, and Antiquarian Researches," published in 1853 (Thayer, Bridgman & Fanning, N. Y.; Sampson Low, Son & Co., London), relates in much detail his discoveries of earthworks in the upper Mississippi valley, and also in the region west of Prairie du Chein, in Iowa, as far west as the Missouri river and some distance up the latter stream, he having made various expeditions on such mission from 1840 to 1842, after having, in 1829, investigated many, if not most, of the famed monuments and earthworks in Ohio.

Pidgeon's belief, founded on his examinations of the mound-builders' works and the traditions conveyed to him by De-Coo-Dah, that they evidenced civilizations more ancient than is generally supposed by most other students and investigators, was sincerely entertained. What he actually says of those earthworks, told of in much detail and forcefulness of narrative, fortified by a certain probity and candor of statement cannot fail to impress the reader. His reseaches, evidenced further by many illustrations, are, we believe, worthy of a higher place in the annals of ethnology and archeology than has generally been ascribed to them. He imputes none of the monumental remains in question to Welsh immigrants. But in what he states concerning the earthworks found by him in Iowa and along some eighty miles of the upper Missouri, embracing, it is believed, some territory in southeastern South Dakota, he furnishes further proofs of the existence in that locality of the work of prehistoric peoples who were not improbably of the Mound Builders. We therefore present the substance of what appears in his book on that head: (pp. 201-5.)

Pidgeon traversed the space between the Mississippi and the Missouri, in a systematic search for and examination of mounds, some truncated, some surrounded by or accompanied by effigies—mentioning also “serpentine ranges,” “lineal ranges” and “inter-sectional ranges”—these indicating boundaries, international or otherwise, are seats of tribes, in his belief; starting near the Turkey river in the neighborhood of Prairie du Chien on the Mississippi, and proceeding in a general western direction, and describing local landmarks and physical characteristics identifiable by others, reaching finally a grove “about three miles east of the Missouri river, and I discovered no other works between it and the river.” He then proceeds:

Mounds On Upper Missouri. “Then I proceeded up the Missouri for four successive days, traveling about twenty miles a day, passing many truncated mounds of various dimensions. Among these I noticed one constructed in a serpentine form. (Cut II, Fig. 2*) about a central effigy resembling a tortoise. In this I made three excavations. The central work presented, near the surface summit, coal and ashes; but the serpentine work contained no deposit. I found no other work in the immediate vicinity; but, about twelve miles northwest, I discovered a group, the

the following: (1) the patient's condition, (2) the patient's wishes, (3) the patient's family, (4) the patient's community, (5) the patient's country, (6) the patient's world.

The patient's condition is the first and most important factor in the physician's decision-making process. The patient's wishes are the second most important factor.

The patient's family is the third most important factor. The patient's community is the fourth most important factor. The patient's country is the fifth most important factor. The patient's world is the sixth most important factor.

The physician's decision-making process is a complex one. It involves many factors, and the physician must weigh each factor carefully before making a decision.

The physician's decision-making process is a complex one. It involves many factors, and the physician must weigh each factor carefully before making a decision.

The physician's decision-making process is a complex one. It involves many factors, and the physician must weigh each factor carefully before making a decision.

The physician's decision-making process is a complex one. It involves many factors, and the physician must weigh each factor carefully before making a decision.

The physician's decision-making process is a complex one. It involves many factors, and the physician must weigh each factor carefully before making a decision.

The physician's decision-making process is a complex one. It involves many factors, and the physician must weigh each factor carefully before making a decision.

The physician's decision-making process is a complex one. It involves many factors, and the physician must weigh each factor carefully before making a decision.

The physician's decision-making process is a complex one. It involves many factors, and the physician must weigh each factor carefully before making a decision.

The physician's decision-making process is a complex one. It involves many factors, and the physician must weigh each factor carefully before making a decision.

The physician's decision-making process is a complex one. It involves many factors, and the physician must weigh each factor carefully before making a decision.

arrangement of which is shown in cut V, Fig. 4.[§] I have frequently discovered this arrangement in Indiana and Illinois, destitute, however, of the elongated mound which is here appended. There are many serpentine effigies of small dimensions in those regions; their common order or arrangement is represented in cut H, Figs. 1 and 3.[§] Figure 1 represents the range of truncated mounds west of the Mississippi river, in an arrangement which I have found nothing exactly resembling on the east side of that river, although the serpentine effigy is found far east, in Ohio in the intermediate space east of Illinois. They are, however, exceedingly rare."

Different Customs. "In my excavations west of the Mississippi, I discovered no deposits indicating any greater advancement in the arts than is common among savage nations, notwithstanding the exactness of outline, correctness of proportion and symmetrical arrangement of many works. This leads me to the belief that the Mound Builders of the north were not in the habit of making deposits such as are found in Ohio, and the regions south, to Mexico, and indicates the prevalence of differing customs, if it does not attest distinct nationality. Many deposits found at the south presenting the known forms of the symbols of ancient idolatry, favors the conclusion that a change of religious belief, or the forms of idolatrous worship occurred among the Mound Builders of the south which those at the north did not experience."

Northern Earthworks Symbolical—Deposits. "That many of the forms of earthworks of the north are symbolical that they were connected with or related to the prevailing religion of the country, and that they were designed as symbols analogous to those exhibited in sculpture at the south, I entertain no doubt. This belief finds confirmation in the fact, that in those regions where effigies occur, sculptured deposits nowhere abound; and the deposit even of pottery, is very rare."

*A spiral, the inner end being smallest, the outer largest, representing two circuits around the effigy.

§A central effigy surrounded by an earthwork circle, around which are arrayed eight much smaller mounds equi-distant from the center and about six times as far away as the circle; along one side of which general group is a straight bank of earth.

Representing, respectively, a serpent with tail wound up, and effigy mounds near tail and head, the body indicated by detached mounds; and a snake formed of a continuous bank-head detached.

Ignatius Donnelly, in "Atlantis," (Harper & Brothers, 1882, Edi. of 1902) in treating of the "Deluge Legends of America," refers to the Mandan Indians and their ceremonies of the flood, as affording evidence in support of his theory that the flood itself was not universal over the earth in its visitation, but was local, and that its manifestations marked the gradual subsidence of the alleged island of Atlantis in the eastern Atlantic region. He expressed the view that the "Big Canoe" of the Mandan ceremonies was commemorative of the Ark; that the Mandans were colonists from Atlantis; that the "Last Man" who appeared at the beginning of those ceremonies represented the white race; that the tradition of the Mandans regarding the emergence from "underground" refers to a land in the sea, viz., Atlantis, the sea being the "subterranean lake;" and that similar traditions among the Dakotas, Iroquois, etc., had like significance.

Samuel G. Drake, in his "Indians of North America" (published by John P. Alden, N. Y., 1880), and in his work entitled "Drake's Aboriginal Races of America," has given some attention to the Madocian theory and the alleged Welsh Indians, bible, etc.; and while he does not go at length into the discussion of the authorities and evidences—save in one or two instances—he cites many of the writers and travelers who have rendered accounts and given in their conclusions upon this subject; practically all of whom have already been referred to and quoted from in this paper. We will briefly refer to his treatment of the subject.

Samuel G. Drake's Views. In his "Indians of North America" Drake thus refers to an eastern Indian chief known as Madock:

"Some have endeavored to ground an argument upon the similarity of the name of this chief to that of Madock the Welshman, that the eastern Indians were descended from a Welsh colony, who, in 1170, left that country, and were never heard of after. The story of some white Indians speaking Welsh on the Missouri river has gained supporters in former and later periods." (p. 294.)

On page 54 of the same work Drake says, concerning how these Indians came by books, as follows:

How Welsh Came by Books? "It is very natural to inquire how these Indians, though descended from the Welsh, came by books; for it is well known that the period at which the Welsh must have come to America, was long before printing was discovered, or that any writing assumed the form of books as we now have them. It should be here noted that Mr. Beatty traveled in the autumn of 1766.

"Major Rogers, in his 'Concise Account of North America,' published in 1765, notices the white Indians; but the geography of their country he leaves anywhere west of the Mississippi; probably never having visited them himself, although he tells us he had traveled very extensively in the interior."

Drake then refers to and quotes somewhat from Rogers, among other statements the following: "They ('White Indians' west of Mississippi) 'have, however, Indian eyes, and a certain guilty Jewish cast with them,' and later quoting him further to the effect that they had "between twenty and thirty thousand fighting men"—a gross exaggeration no doubt, he quotes further: "They have no weapons but bows and arrows, tomahawks, and a kind of wooden pikes," and thus suffer from eastern Indians who have firearms, "and frequently visit the white Indians on the banks of the easterly branch, (of Muddy river?) and kill or captivate them in great numbers," live in large towns, are agriculturists, "tame the wild cows, and use both their milk and flesh," keep numerous dogs "and are very dexterous in hunting; they have little or no commerce with any nation that we are at present acquainted with." Drake then cites Filson; and Ker, of whom he says:

"Henry Ker, who traveled among thirteen tribes of Indians, in 1810, etc., names one near a great mountain which he calls Mnacedeus. He said Dr. Sibley had told him, when at Natchitoches, that a number of travelers had assured him, that there was a strong similarity between the Indian language and many words of the Welsh. Mr. Ker found nothing among any of the Indians to indicate a Welsh origin until he arrived among the Mnacedeus. Here he found many customs which were Welsh, or common to that people, and he adds: 'I did not understand the

Welsh language, or I should have been enabled to have thrown more light upon so interesting a subject,' as they had, 'printed books among them which were preserved with great care, they have a tradition that they were brought there by their forefathers.' Upon this in another place he observes, 'The books appeared very old, and were evidently printed at a time when there had been very little improvement made in the casting of types. I obtained a few leaves from one of the chiefs, sufficient to have thrown light on the subject, but in my subsequent disputes with the Indians, I lost them, and all my endeavors to obtain more were ineffectual.' "

From some accounts of Ker's character as to credibility, we are led to doubt somewhat his strict veracity concerning what he actually saw of these Indians. He seems not to have made an attempt to locate with any precision where he found the "Mnacedeus." Little credibility would seem to be warranted as to his particulars regarding "printed books" which "were brought there by their forefathers," if we were to take him literally.

Drake, in his "Aboriginal Races of North America," pp. 52-55, quotes under the head of "Welsh or White Indians," the "Narrative of Capt. Isaac Stuart," already brought out herein. Drake then refers to the Beatty account of Sutton Hicks, the Virginia clergyman, and Filson, and after asserting that Ker gives no opinion as to "how or at what time these Indians obtained 'printed books,'" he thus summarizes his deductions in the premises—using identical language in both of his said works:

"There are a great number of others who have noticed these Indians; but after an examination of them all, I am unable to add much to the above stock of information concerning them. Upon the whole, we think it may be pretty safely said, that the existence of a race of Welsh about the regions of the Missouri does not rest on so good authority as that which has been adduced to establish the existence of the sea-serpent. Should any one, however, choose to investigate the subject further, he will find pretty ample references to authors in which the subject had been noticed. in a note to the life of Madok-wando, in our third book. In addition to which, he may consult the authorities of Moulton, as pointed out in his history of New York."

It is seen that Drake draws no conclusions upon this subject;

unless, indeed, his reference to the sea-serpent can be regarded as indicating a distinct dissent.

Chamber's Encyclopedia On Madoc. In the American revised edition of that work (Lippincott, 1880), it is stated that it "is believed by his countrymen" that Prince Madoc "discovered America about 300 years before Columbus." And after stating the traditional account, that he sailed westward "with a small fleet, and after a voyage of several weeks, reached a country whose productions and inhabitants were quite unlike those of Europe. Here he lived for a long time; then returning to Wales, he gave an account of the new land that he had discovered, equipped another fleet, set sail again, and was never more heard of;" citing Caradoc, translated by Lloyd; "corrected, augmented, and continued by David Powell (London, 1584).—It is added: "There is considerable reason for suspecting the genuineness of this Welsh tradition."

Dr. Davies' Statement. In response to a letter from Mr. DeLand to Dr. E. Gomer Davies, of Letcher, S. D., early in 1906, the latter replied as follows, in regard to a suggestion that he (Dr. D.) was supposed to have some information concerning some alleged Welsh Indians with whom an acquaintance of his had come in contact in the west during the civil war:

Welsh Indians In West—Coracles—Jaru. "All I know about the matter of the Welsh Indians is this, a man of the name of John Owen, a native of Llanidloes, and who had worked for my father for many years came to this country during the civil war and joined the army and while out at one of the posts in the west found what he called white Indians that could speak Welsh, that is as he explained it, they used a large number of words and called things by the same name as John Owen, he wrote a full account of the matter and sent it home and my father had it published in the home paper and sent me a copy of the paper, and he said in connection that an old chief stood by his side as he wrote the account and that they felt very friendly towards him as he could understand them and they could understand him. He said among the large number of words that he wrote about the following are a few that I remember: Tan-Fire, Dant-Teeth, Egwgnt-wind, Dwr-water, Hayl-sun; and he mentioned, if I remember aright between seventy-five and 100 words which cor-

respond in sound to our Welsh words, and another interesting statement he made was that the white Indians (they were whiter than other Indians, so he said), made and used a coracle such as we used in Wales. It is composed of a tough wooden frame covered over with hides and round, not oblong or very slightly oblong, and also that they spun woolen yarn similar to Welsh yarn, this is about the recollection of what John Owen (stated) and my father's comments to me after he talked with him when he returned home to North Wales."

Published In Wales. "N. B. Nearly forty years has passed since my father wrote about it and sent me a paper containing the words and statements. To the best of my recollection he did not state the name of the tribe, and yet I cannot now speak positively on that point. D."

Dr. Davies gave the writer the following additional information:

"The paper was one that was published in my native town of Llanidloes, Montgomeryshire, North Wales, by John H. Mills, but it has been discontinued for some years now. ** John Owen must be over 80 or 85 years of age by this time if he is alive, he worked for my father for many years, he was a man of 35 to 40 when I was a little boy. I believe the name of the paper in which John Owen's narrative was printed was called the Llanidloes and Montgomeryshire Times, but quite sure I have not seen a copy for many years."

Chambers Encyclopedia. In the American revision of that work (1880, Vol. 6, p. 250) we find the following account of Madoc:

- **Madoc's Countrymen Believe.** "Madoc, son of Owen Gwynedd, a Welsh prince, is believed by his countrymen to have discovered America about 300 years before Columbus. Compelled, it is said, by civil strife to abandon his native land, he sailed westward in 1170, with a small fleet, and after a voyage of several weeks, reached a country whose productions and inhabitants were quite unlike those of Europe. Here he lived for a long time, then returning to Wales, he gave an account of the new land that he had discovered, equipped another fleet, set sail again, and was never more heard of. The story of Madoc will be found in the *Historie of Cambria*, now called Wales, a part of the

famous Yland of Brytaine, written in the Brytish language 200 years past by Caradoc; translated into English by H. Lloyd, gent.; corrected, augmented, and continued by David Powell (London, 1584). See also Owen's British Remains (1777). There is considerable reason for suspecting the genuineness of this Welsh tradition. ** Southey has chosen the story of Madoc as the subject of one of his so-called 'epics.'"

Bonhomme Island Earthworks. Lewis and Clarke give the following account of some noted earthworks on that island, located some nine miles above Yankton. S. D., on the Missouri:

"This interesting object is on the south side of the Missouri; opposite the upper extremity of Bonhomme island, and in a low level plain, the hills being three miles from the river. It begins by a wall composed of earth, rising immediately from the bank of the river and running in a direct course S. 76 degrees, W. 96 yards; the base of this wall or mound is seventy-five feet, and its height about eight. It then diverges in a course S. 84 degrees W. and continues at the same height and depth to the distance of fifty-three yards, the angle being formed by a sloping descent; at the junction of these two is an appearance of a horn-work, of the same height with the first angle; the same wall then pursues a course N. 69 degrees W. for three hundred yards; near its western extremity is an opening or gateway at right angles to the wall, and projecting inwards; this gateway is defended by two nearly semi-circular walls placed before it, lower than the large walls; and from the gateway there seems to have been a covered way communicating with the interval between these two walls; westward of the gate, the wall becomes much larger, being about one hundred and five feet at its base, and twelve feet high; at the end of this high ground wall extends for fifty-six yards on a course N. 32 degrees W.; it then turn N. 23 degrees W. for seventy-three yards; these two walls seem to have had a double or covered way; they are from ten to fifteen feet eight inches in height, and from seventy-five to one hundred and five feet in width at the base; the descent inwards being steep, whilst outwards it forms a sort of glacis. At the distance of seventy-three yards, the wall ends abruptly at a large hollow place much lower than the general level of the plain, and from which is some indication of a covered way to the water.

"The space between them is occupied by several mounds scattered promiscuously through the gorge, in the center of which is a deep round hole. From the extremity of the last wall, in a course N. 32 degrees W. is a distance of ninety-six yards over the low ground, where the wall recommences and crosses the plain in a course N. 81 degrees W. for eighteen hundred and thirty yards to the bank of the Missouri. In this course its height is about eight feet, 'till it enters at the distance of five hundred and thirty-three yards, a deep circular pond of seventy-three yards diameter; after which it is gradually lower, towards the river; it touches the river at a muddy bar, which bears every mark of being an encroachment of the water, for a considerable distance; and a little above the junction, is a small circular redoubt. Along the bank of the river, and at eleven hundred yards distance, in a straight line from this wall, is a second, about six feet high, and of considerable width; it rises abruptly from the bank of the Missouri, at a point where the river bends, and goes straight forward, forming an acute angle with the last wall, 'till it enters the river again, not far from the mounds just described, towards which it is obviously tending. ** During the whole course of this wall or glasis, it is covered with trees, among which are many large cotton trees two or three feet in diameter. Immediately opposite the citadel, or the part most strongly fortified, on Bonhomme island, is a small work in a circular form, with a wall surrounding it, about six feet in height. ** The citadel contains about twenty acres, but the parts between the long walls must embrace nearly five hundred acres.

"These are the first remains of the kind which we have had an opportunity of examining; but our French interpreters assure us, that there are great numbers of them on the Platte, the Kansas, the Jacques, etc., and some of our party say, that they observed two of these fortresses on the upper side of the Petit Arc creek,* not far from its mouth: that the wall was about six feet high, and the sides of the angles one hundred yards in length." (The Travels of Lewis and Clarke, London, 1815, Vol. 1, pp. 85 to 89.)

*Some ten or twelve miles below Yankton, S. D., and about twenty miles below the Bonhomme island earthworks, on the northerly side of the Missouri.

Fowke Opposes Madocian Account. Gerard Fowke, in "Archaeological History of Ohio" (O. St. Hist. Soc., Columbus, O., 1902).

who has gathered a large amount of materials bearing upon the Mound Builders of Ohio and, incidentally and somewhat casually, upon the Madocian theory, and who cites among others some witnesses in favor of those accounts, not mentioned herein, concludes that the theory that the Mandans migrated from east of the Mississippi, "though it may never be disproved, is not to be accepted;" that no articles have been found in "one of the larger mounds of Ohio, under circumstances that put beyond question the fact of its being deposited by the original builders, ** of such pattern or material as to prove incontestably that it was obtained from Europeans;" yet that "how much earlier" than 1492 some of those mounds may have been erected "it is impossible to ascertain."

We had prepared, partly by condensation, partly by quotations therefrom, a detailed treatment of Fowke's valuable work on this subject; but the dimensions of the present paper became such that it is necessary to dispense with that prepared material, no more than a mere summary which can not but be lamentably inadequate can be inserted. Fowke being the latest commentator we have examined, his attitude was regarded by the writer of this paper as representative of the negative in the Madocian discussion; with the expectation of criticising some of his views and conclusions. For we believe his evidences fail to warrant them in some vital respects. It is, however, impossible to do so in any satisfactory manner within the space left to us.

Fowke's theory seems to be that the Mound Builders' works in Ohio are not very ancient; were constructed by American aborigines of different tribes and characteristics; and on an assumed and arbitrary basis of 1,000 men working 300 days in a year he concludes that all the Ohio earthworks could be constructed in a century, proving nothing. Again he asserts, to show they are not so ancient that buffalo bones have been found in them in but few instances, and those further west, yet he quotes as a factual premise Shaler's statement that "about a thousand years or so ago" buffalo "first appeared in the Ohio valley," and that "their mounds and forts were abandoned as far as this epoch—making beast extended his march:" again, that there is proof "that the buffalo was known to builders of mounds from Dakota, ** to the Blue Ridge." Further on he theoretically extends the period to

the modern era, declaring: "It is now well known that many tribes were builders of mounds in quite recent times; but none of their remains are to be compared with those of Ohio." We are not sure where his reasoning on his evidences leaves his theory as to the antiquity of the Ohio earthworks. They are surely ancient enough to satisfy the Madocian theory if their builders might have been driven out by buffalo "a thousand years or so ago." Again: While unsatisfied that the Mound Builders of Ohio had any connection with those further northwest, he yet declares of the mounds explored by Henderson on the Illinois river that his description "of their situation, construction and contents would apply equally to many of the tumuli in southern Ohio," but he is unwilling to "affirm or deny" a connection "merely because of the resemblance of the works;" while "it is easier to believe them related in some way or at least having some knowledge of each other, than to suppose the striking similarities are entirely accidental." Thinks some effigy pipes found in mounds a mile below Davenport, Iowa, "quite similar to those found in Ohio mounds," "may have been obtained in trade. But it is quite probable that a number of Ohio Mound Builders wandered into the region of the Mississippi and remained there." (Pidgeon, we found, traced mounds from thence west to and up the Missouri.) And while Fowke declares the Bonhomme island earthworks have "nothing whatever to do with Ohio archeology," yet he copies Lewis and Clarke's entire text on that subject, then goes into lengthy discussion of their details, and concludes: "There is nothing in Ohio approaching these remains in magnitude, except, perhaps, the works at Newark." In another connection he declares that, as to effigy mounds in Ohio, save "Serpent Mound," "the few effigies are inferior in size and interest to those of the northwest; the same is true of the flat-topped mounds." As to Madoc's alleged voyages, Fowke seems to speak lightly and somewhat flippantly regarding "various stories concerning red-haired Indians who speak Welsh" and of Madoc "or Medoc who sailed west from Wales about 1170 and was never afterwards heard of;" and dismisses the book phase by observing, as to "printed books," that printing had not then been invented, etc., thus omitting, in stating the case itself, that all accounts tell of Madoc's returning after his

first voyage, and that various accounts refer to what may have been other than "printed" books. Finally, Fowke says: "When possible descendants of the Mound Builders are sought among known tribes, search seems narrowed to Cherokees and Mandans; *** the later because they differ much in appearance and customs from other Indians, constructed heavy walls, and made houses whose ruins resemble small enclosures in Ohio." He then adds: "Catlin's theory of their migration from the east of the Mississippi, though it may never be disproved, is not to be accepted; for it is based solely on the occurrence of mounds and enclosures which may as well be due to other, and unknown people." But if their "ruins resemble small enclosures in Ohio," why deny a connection here which he (Fowke) acknowledges as naturally inferable in other instances?

Fowke would have proof "beyond question"—would demand of narrator to "prove incontestibly" that many articles found in the mounds, bearing on inspection strong probabilities of, and many of which by common consent were of foreign make, were "obtained from Europeans." As well ask him to prove in the same degree that they were made in America, or that they were placed there by whites after the Cabotian discovery of America—for John Cabot, not Columbus, "discovered" North America if not previously discovered. And as to Cabot, the founder of England's claims in America, "even the reality of his voyage has been denied," says Baneroff. How would Marco Polo's fame stand in such an exacting forum? For two centuries people, until aroused through the Renaissance to faith in enterprise and its products, "inclined to deem an impudent imposter" that hero. If we were to demand comparison of evidences as between Cabot and Madoc as discoverers of America mainland, wherein would consist the great preponderance in favor of Cabot? Would future verification, on independent evidence, vindicate the one and reject the other? Where would stand the comparison upon evidences found on this continent tending to support the claims of each? But Cabot returned to England and reported discovery of a continent. Good. Madoc went west and to south of Ireland, and reported finding a "country," went again the same way. Where is the "proof incontestible" that Cabot did and that Madoc did not find America?

Fowke declares that any seafaring race, "in any part of the world, may have reached America from either direction, under * * * "favorable winds, of sufficient duration; vessels strong enough to resist any storm they were destined to encounter; and a food supply adequate to support the crews until they could reach the land." Then adds: "It remains to be proven whether there was ever such a concurrence of conditions prior to the tenth century." Were the Madocians "destined to encounter" extreme storms? What proof "beyond question" here? And, presumptively, are those unfavorable winds which are encountered journeying from Europe to America? And why doubt Welsh marines' or Eric's forethought to provision for a long trip? And does he regard it possible that "such a concurrence of conditions" can ever be "proven?" We mean no disrespect to Fowke's views on this head. But where does he stand upon his own hypotheses?

Blue Eyes. The author of this paper has it from entirely credible sources that the Sioux of the upper Missouri country have a tradition that the Mandans "have blue eyes."

We cannot for want of space revert, however briefly, to the Aricaras, as indicated at the beginning of this part of our treatment of the Aborigines of South Dakota; although some new light has been shed upon those tribes since 1906.

Author's Conclusions. The evidences of earliest and later observers, brought herein, show the Mandans more civilized than, and possessing a marked and peculiar gentility and polish not found among other western Indians. Their light complexion and the decided variation in many individual instances, from other Indians in general in the color of their eyes and hair, all attracting immediate attention; their peculiar modes of dressing their hair and caring for their health; their unquestioned and immemorial agricultural proclivities; their entrenched, palisaded villages and elaborate, semi-civilized lodges; their peacefulness and their friendliness towards the whites; their language, resembling in so many words the Welsh; their religious ceremonies, embodying also the "Ark," flood legends and (as believed by some keen observers) the Crucifixion; all seem to proclaim them Indians into whose composition white blood entered long before known colonization found them in America.

That they are of Siouan origin has not been satisfactorily shown.

We believe it is proven beyond rational doubt that they came to the upper Missouri from below, and not from the northeast. Bands of them were doubtless met and fought with the Christenaux, Assiniboines and other tribes in the southwestern Winnipeg basin at or about the dawn of the historic age; but no substantial evidence is at hand making it probable that they as a nation or principal tribe ever had a territorial seat there. Other bands of them may have ascended the Missouri to near its headwaters—this point is perhaps debatable; but no substantial evidence is produced tending to show that they came as a body from the west to the upper Missouri. What are, with little doubt, Mandan village remains, some of which at least were later occupied by the Aricaras, have been traced into South Dakota, and we think it very probable that Catlin's claim that he found them down the Missouri to near the Ohio river is well founded. The vast, seemingly overwhelming preponderance favors the view that they ascended the Missouri from as far south at least as the Big Sioux river. That they once inhabited South Dakota we regard as certain. They may, and we think probably did ascend the Missouri from as far down as the mouth of the Ohio; but this claim takes us upon infirm ground if the Missouri is regarded as necessarily the beginning of their pathway northward. For, while we are strongly inclined to believe their ancestors once lived as far south as Ohio and upon or near that stream, they may, in that event have gone westward from a point above the Ohio's mouth. If they ascended the upper Mississippi before they migrated farther west, such evidence as is extant on that head indicates that they descended that stream some distance from its headwaters before going thence westward. Their traditions, while as generally understood confining their locus to the upper Missouri and the immediate vicinity of Heart river, yet contain decided suggestions that the seacoast at the Mississippi's mouth, or on the Atlantic seaboard, or (much less likely we think) some large lake, was the point of the original movement inland. The theory of their extreme southern origin is, in our view, borne out in a substantial degree by what is known of the Pawnees and their one-time tribesmen, the Aricaras, and of the relations of

the latter to the movement northward of the Mandans, the trend of tradition and of historic evidence being that the Rees followed them from far down the Missouri; and we have seen the collateral statements and claims which tend to show the Pawnees (Panis), Kansans, and other southern tribes, in connection with the Mandans, to have been woven into the warp and woof of the Madocian theory.

When we enter the specific field of Welsh origin of the Mandans, we confess to a tendency to credulity which is expressed with much temerity and considerable diffidence. We are in substantial degree short of being convinced. But the evidences gathered into or referred to in this paper, touching directly and as indicated at the beginning of this summary, indirectly, the Madocian theory, have impressed us to the extent of making it clear that there is enough of probability in the claim to warrant its treatment historically, and to demand further and systematic investigation by historical societies in particular and the public in general. The writer feels that his duty—following an earnest study of this question, as time permitted, for many years—would be left undone were he to withhold here an urgent request for co-operative effort along the lines indicated. It may seem to students of history and others who may be specially interested, that the lapse of a century and a half of investigation and discussion of this very interesting and fateful question must have substantially exhausted the materials and the exchange of views thereon tending to enforce conviction. Far from it. There has been next to no co-operative work done by either historical or other responsible or authoritative bodies looking to a reduction of known and the discovery of unknown but probable further evidential materials on this subject, in a thorough process calculated to make out a complete case, for or against the claims of Welsh settlement and inhabitancy in America resulting from Madoc's voyages. The discrediting of that theory in the first quarter of the nineteenth century can not be regarded as at all conclusive. Where did the Welshman Evans, who supposedly went west of the Mississippi about the beginning of the last century and who is said to have concluded that those claims were without foundation—go, what Indian tribes supposed to be "Welsh" or "white Indians," did he visit, and where? And as

to language, who that was master of the Welsh tongue and of the language and dialect of any Indian tribe supposed to be in some degree of Welsh origin ever visited such tribe, or even attempted to do any comprehensive work in comparing their language with the ancient or the modern Welsh, in pursuit of a responsible study of the subject? We have learned of no one. What united work has been done, under any definite scheme of investigation into the mounds and tumuli referred to in this paper, in connection with the Madocian question?

We emphasize the point that such manifold, widely separated and independent instances of facility of conversation by Welshmen in their own language with certain tribes of American Indians, as has been shown in the foregoing evidences to have occurred from the earliest contact with them, are not to be dismissed as explainable on the theory of fortuitous concurrence of substantially identical words in the various tongues involved. We regard them as strongly tending to establish a common language and blood origin between the Welsh and a once civilized element which became identified with certain aboriginal tribes. This power of word-interchange with Welshmen was not common to all or nearly all American Indians. It was subject of wonderment and wide remark and discussion among both whites and Indians. It was universally regarded by both participants, and by very many non-participants of high intelligence who discussed the fact, as indicative of a common origin.

It seems not improbable that Madoc reached and settled, with some part of his expeditions, in North America. That some of his followers landed on the South American coast, or emigrated into South America from northward, seems, from the evidences regarding early civilizations there, to be more than merely possible; that there is evidence of probative character that Mexico may have been the theatre of growth and dominance of a civilization derived from a Welsh origin, and that the mounds of Ohio and of Mexico are not unrelated in origin or development. The fact that Madoc was never heard of in Europe after sailing on his second (perhaps third) voyage would, if explainable on the theory of his settlement on the American mainland, reduce very materially the improbabilities of his alleged discovery. We incline strongly to believe it explainable; that in substantial de-

gree it is explained by evidences showing the extreme difficulties of Welsh existence and defense among the aborigines who, finding the discoverers east of the Alleghanies—either working westward or having come from the southwest, up the Mississippi and Ohio into the head-waters of the latter—drove them westward and down the Ohio, at or near the mouth of which they dispersed to southward, northward and southwestward; that in that process the immigrants found themselves powerless to do more than preserve mere existence and were unable to again return to Wales—or the hopelessness of Madoc's ascendancy in fatherland, owing to dire internal quarrels and butcheries prevailing there, may have determined him to refrain for years from making known to his countrymen his further discoveries in a new world wherein he might expect to become dominant and to gain vast territorial estates, and that later on, whether he willed or not, circumstances made it impossible for him to report to Europe; that those immigrants were forced, as a condition to their continued existence, to intermarry with the Indians, thereby losing measurably the racial Welsh element, which dwindled in succeeding centuries and became subservient to the Indian instinct and trend. In this connection consider that near four and a half centuries later the Virginia colonists of 1607, although succored for a time by the promoting company, were in 1610 so reduced that "the horrors of famine ensued," piracy was being resorted to to sustain existence, and "if relief had been delayed but ten days longer, they must have perished." Might not a few redoubtable hearts among them—failing such relief—have survived as members of an Indian tribe, when, in Baneroff's words, "parties, which begged food in the Indian cabins, were murdered?" And had they so survived, and no European aid had come for generations, what but such an amalgamation as Catlin ascribes to the Mandans could have been their fate?

We here bid farewell to the Mandans as related to this study—the most enticing among all Indian annals that we have met. Their ascribed relation to the claims that European blood mingled with American aborigines as the result of twelfth century immigration, holds first place among historians. Their station among Indians in all the great west is supreme, if innate graces of character reflecting Christian civilization is the dominant note.

Their place among the aborigines of the northwest, in the process of its settlement and development by pioneers, is so large that to eliminate the "Mandan villages" from the records of those processes would leave a void indeed. They constitute the mystery of ages in North American Indian lore as to locus of origin. If the future shall reveal that that mystery can be solved through the medium of further light on the Mound Builders, or of Madocians as collateral to them, the resultant must become deeply significant and intensely interesting. And if in A. D. 2170 no national celebration of Madoc's credited discovery shall occur, nor the song of Southey be revived; still the mystery itself will continue to grow in wonderment and splendor until its contemplation will have become a spirit of the Epics.

APPENDITORY NOTES.

¹ Nameless in the codices, and shown on neither map; Burnt island of Warren's; Sibley's island of the G. L. O. map, 1879; very large, in the river between Bismarck (Burleigh) and Morton Cos. (Coues, 173.)

² Nameless, and uncharted. Little Heart or Sturgis river of various maps, in Morton Co. Little Heart and Sugar-loaf buttes just south of it.

³ Very plain on Clarke's map, 1814, immediately underneath the word "and" of the sentence there inscribed. There is now nothing of the sort; instead of which is a considerable lake, indicating the change in the course of the Missouri. This is in McLean Co., above Sanger (Oliver Co.), and below Washburn (McLean Co.), in the vicinity of which later town today's camp is pitched, after passing Deer creek, left, and Painted Wood and Turtle creek, right. (Coues.)

⁴ At this, the eighth mile made today, Clarke C 63 inserts: "Fort Mandan card" in a bold hand, over an erasure made for this latter entry, i. e., noting the exact spot where the fort was presently built, just above the bluff of coal. (Coues.)

⁵ This is a vague term, due or at least traceable to the trader, Edward Umfreville, who was on the Saskatchewan in 1784-87, and who mentions these Indians as living about the falls of the south branch of that river. He says (p. 197) that the French "call them Gros Ventres, or Big Bellies; and without any reason, as they are as comely and as well made as any tribe whatever, and are very far from being remarkable for their corpulency." On which Matthews, from which I borrow this quote, remarks (p. 33): "The tribe to which he refers is doubtless that which is now known as the Atsinas or Gros Ventres of the Prairie. The similarity of the Canadian misnomers led Captain Lewis in 1804, to speak of the Minnetaries on the Missouri 'as part of the great nation called Fall Indians.' Comparing our Hidatsa words with their synonyms in Umfreville's Fall Vocabulary, or Dr. Hayden's later Atsinas Vocabulary, we can discover no affinity between the Fall and Hidatsa tongues." It is necessary for the reader to bear always in mind, that when Lewis and Clarke speak of Minnetarees "of the Prairie" and "of the Missouri," they actually designate two entirely different tribes of Indians, the former being Atsinas, or the "Fall" Indians, and the later being the Hidatsas, with whom we are now wintering. Their loose use of "Gros Ventres" is exactly parallel. For example, see beyond, Jan. 1st, 1805, and note there. These "Fall"

Indians are separately treated by Lewis in the Statistical View. He adopts this name there, and gives the native name Alan-sar- as synonymous. He estimates their total number at 2,500, with 660 warriors and 260 lodges, and locates them "on the head of the south fork of the Saskatchewan (sic) river, and some streams supposed to be branches of the Missouri," (perhaps of Milk river). (Coues.)

* Espontoon, or esponton, is a rare and practically obsolete form of spontoon, a word itself now little used. The implement meant is the half-like ax sort of halberd formerly used by certain officers of the British army. Lewis and Clarke, 165, gives a neat figure of the Mandan implement, which is fortunate, as the text is not clear. The blade is 12 or 15 inches long, set at right angles in a handle of the same length; the shape of the blade, viewed flat, is a narrow lozenge (like the diamond at cards), sharp at the point, the other end eyed to receive the handle; it is pierced with four holes set in the same diamond figure, and the slant of the two sides of the diamond next to the eyed end results in part from nicking off from each edge a strip of the metal and curling this strip backward. (Coues.)

* "Sheet iron callaboos," interlined "camboose, stove," Lewis and Clarke, 166. Camboose and cambouse are rare forms of caboose, and this from the Dutch name of a ship's gally, or cook's room aboard a vessel; but it is not related to calaboose, which latter word is supposed to be of Arabic derivation, and means a slave-pen. The article which proved so valuable a resource was simply an old sheet-iron cooking stove, which had been burnt out in ascending the Missouri. (Coues.)

* Such "skin canoes" are commonly called bull-boats, from being made of buffalo hide; they are well known for the ease and security with which they may be used. (Coues.)

* Codex M. ends with the account of August 14th, page 146, though a few pages of meteorological register continue. The last remark is "see next book." This next book is Clark N., beginning with August 15th, and thus directly continues. On reaching the Mandans, Lewis and Clarke just missed the Mr. Henry with whom they so much desired to communicate that they had intended to send Sargeant Pryor to his post on the Assiniboine. This gentleman had left Le Borgne's village July 29th, 1806, and camped next day on Miry river, as I see by his MS., now in my possession. (Coues.)

* The Henry M. S. has, page 76: We entered the great village of the Big Bellies, which consists of about 130 huts. Here we found Messrs. Charles McKenzie and James Cadwell, who had left Reviere La Souris (Mouse river) with a small assortment of goods in May last; both the young men in the service of the Northwest Co." Here is doubtless intended the Mr. McKenzie of note page 203, pages 226, 232, etc. (Coues.)

* Le Borgne feared nobody. The wily savage had not the slightest intention of going to Washington, and was simply amusing himself by talking "for buncombe." See pages 242-244. But better than the portrait drawn of him there is the account given by Mr. Henry, who was his guest, and was treated with every consideration. One-eye was a moral monster, but he had other Napoleonic qualities which might have made him an almost equally great soldier, had his sphere of action been equally extensive. Mr. Henry calls him "His Excellency LeBorgne," with unconcealed sarcasm, and says that he breathed more freely after bidding him good-by. I have heard that his real name was Kakoakis—which would be middling good Greek for Wicked Point—and that he was finally killed by a chief named Etamingehisha, or Red Shield; but I have mislaid the reference, and cannot now verify the statement. (Coues.)

* "Chis-che-tor river, Clark N., 13; now Heart river." (Coues.)

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS BY THE AUTHOR.

The author of the foregoing paper, and the State Historical Society of South Dakota, desire to acknowledge substantial aid rendered by co-workers in kindred organizations, or as individuals, in furnishing references, information, books, etc., for use in the preparation thereof; among whom may be named the following: Doane Robinson, secretary of our society, for many kindly and helpful acts in assisting in securing materials for valuable information furnished; E. R. Steinbroeck, Mandan; Rev. D. L. Hall, Elbowoods, N. D.; Rev. D. L. Hall, Rosebud, S. D., and Joseph H. Taylor, of Washburn, N. D.; Dr. Charles H. Eastman, St. Paul; Dr. DeLorme W. Robinson, Pierre, for books loaned, and information; American Missionary Association, N. Y., for cuts loaned; for information, Dr. E. Gomer Davies, Letcher, S. D.; Hon. Olin D. Wheeler, St. Paul; Simon F. Kirk, Little Eagle, S. D.; for information and references, Hon. Douglass Brynner, and Hon. Albert F. Doughty, Canadian Archivists, Ottawa; State Historical Society of Wisconsin, and Reuben Gold Thwaites; Minnesota Historical Society, and Warren Upham, secretary; Macalester College Library, and Frederic G. Axtell, secretary; Dr. W. H. Holmes, Chief of American Bureau of Ethnology, and Dr. F. W. Hodge, acting chief; Missouri Historical Society, and Miss Mary Louise Dalton (now deceased), secretary; Albert Britnel, Toronto; Gerard Fowke, St. Louis; for valuable courtesies extended as publishers, The Arthur H. Clark Co.; Francis P. Harper.

ADDENDA.

Since the completion of the foregoing article, the author has been afforded an opportunity of an examination of the work by Will and Spinden on the Mandans; and deeming it well worthy of mention herein, we have prepared a brief reference to some of the salient points brought out therein, which will be found below:

G. H. Will and H. J. Spinden. These gentlemen, being Harvard University students of the class of 1906, explored in part an old Mandan village site fourteen miles above Bismarck on the east bank of the Missouri in 1905, on behalf of the Peabody Museum of American Archaeology and Ethnology; which labor is in part the subject of their "Papers," etc., published by that museum (Cambridge, Mass.) in 1906, under the title "The Mandans: A Study of Their Culture, Archaeology and Language." The work, which shows considerable study and research and is a highly interesting and instructive study of the subject treated of, deals, in three parts, of the "History, Life and Customs;" the "Archaeology;" and the "Language" of the Mandans. The illustrations are very faithful, and comprise the various specimens of pottery, implements, etc., found in said village site, and several illustrations of Mandan village sites visited by them in that locality. Part III ends with a valuable vocabulary of Mandan words compiled from Catlin, Maximilian, Hayden, Morgan and Schoolcraft; all of which vocabularies, they assert, came from James Kipp. The authorities relied on by them in regard to the general characteristics of the Mandans are the well known travelers and others among the classics, brought out in this paper. As pertains to the original habitat of the Mandans, these authors assert that previous to living upon the Missouri "they probably occupied some portion of the Ohio valley;" that that valley "would seem to have served as a point of dispersal whence the Plains members of the Siouan stock are supposed to have moved in four successive migrations"—the language of the Mandans being regarded by them as "unquestionably of Siouan stock, but does not appear to show very much closer affiliation with one than with another branch of that stock;" that "information upon the Mandan language is exceeding scarce and no very accurate or full gram-

matical sketch exists." They dwell upon the lightness and other peculiarities of complexion of the Mandans, stating: "There can be little question that there was a tendency toward light complexion among the Mandans, and all of the authorities, even Maximilian, express the opinion that this was not from contact with the whites;" and while declaring it "difficult to decide" as to the cause of these peculiarities, they add: "It is almost needless to say that there is absolutely no trace either in language or in physical characteristics of any European origin or admixture." No professed study of this latter question seems to have been made by those worthy authors, so far as we are able to judge from said publication. We regret that we did not have access to a copy of said work in time to have dealt with it in the proper place in the foregoing paper.

INDEX.

	Page.		Page.
Aborigines of South Dakota, De		Belonger, Francis.....	260
Land, et. seq.....	275	Benoist, Agatha.....	259
Address, biennial.....	89	Sorel.....	259
Affairs, public.....	76	Louis.....	259
Ah-hah-hee-no-pah.....	173	Bercier, Francis.....	257
Ainsworth, Mrs. Cephas W., life.	204	Biennial Address.....	89
Ainsworth, Cephas W., sketch of	194	Big Foot.....	192
Ainsworth, Cephas W., photo...	194	Big Head.....	247
Ainsworth, Frank B.....	194	Big Horn river.....	172
Ainsworth, Stephen B.....	197	Big Sioux.....	255
Alair, Joseph.....	224	Bismarek.....	185, 208
Alard, Mr.....	219	Black mountains.....	176
Albany Law School.....	215, 219	Blackfoot.....	177
Algonkins.....	145	Bois, Brul.....	178
Allatans.....	177	Bourgeois.....	221
All-ah-kaa-wiah.....	175	B. P. O. E.....	209
Allen Guard.....	213	Brackenridge.....	135
Alsation, Francois.....	221	Brazo, Victoria.....	259
American Co.....	237	Brooks, Lieutenant.....	188
American Fur Co.....	230	Broullard, John.....	223
American Island.....	127	Bruguier, Theophile.....	240, 242, 255, 256, 263, 270
Anchor, photo of Viking.....	141	Photograph of.....	262
Angie, Harriet.....	259	Brule opening.....	75
Henry, life of.....	258	Buffalo.....	219
War.....	259	Buffalo Bill.....	188
Annual Review.....	61	Buffalo pasture.....	62
Anticosti.....	146	Building, private.....	64, 78
Antonio, Pedro.....	131	Public.....	64, 77
Appropriations, to state.....	63, 76	Bullhead, Lieutenant Henry....	187
Aricaras.....	132	Bureau of Information.....	15
Arlington.....	75	Burlington railroad.....	61, 213
Arts, fine.....	38-42	Burns, Mr.....	219
Arts, useful.....	37	Butler, General B. F.....	213
Ashton.....	241	Cabanne & Co.....	132
Assessed valuation.....	64, 78	Camp, diagram of Sitting Bull's.	191
Assiniboine.....	165, 233	Canada.....	253
Assistants.....	14	Cape Rouge.....	218
Astor, John Jacob.....	125	Capitol building.....	77
Ay-oo-wars.....	157	Commission.....	63
Bach, Land Commissioner.....	63	New.....	63
Bad Lands.....	192	Cartier, Leander.....	259
Ball river.....	166	Cassady, Mr.....	241
Barber, M.....	187	Case, Ralph H.....	101
Barley.....	70, 84	Casoe-tite.....	175
Batteau river.....	167	Catalogue.....	16-57
Battle Mountain Reservation...	63	Catch-the-Bear.....	190
Bears ribs.....	226, 245	Catteau river.....	178
Beaumont.....	218	Caucus law.....	74
Bedard, Elie.....		Chaine de Roche.....	243
219, 220, 227, 239, 241, 242, 252,	256	Chamberlain, George.....	241
Sophie.....	256	Champagne, Jean Baptiste.....	227
Bellechasse county.....	218	Chapel river.....	242
Belefontaine.....	133	Chapin, Captain A. R.....	188
Belle Fourche, irrigation project	63		

	Page.		Page.
Charboneaux, Alex.....	257	Deceased members.....	7
Charles, Polly.....	135	Deland, Charles E., Aborigines	
Charlesburg.....	218	of South Dakota.....	275
Chase National Bank.....	198	Notes.....	455
Chein Indians.....	159	Denick, Mr.....	233
Chein river.....	159	Denver.....	208
Cheroqui.....	250	Deon, Peter.....	260
Cheyene Agency.....	257	De Roie, Stephen.....	258
Chicago.....	216, 219	Desey, Louis.....	260
Chippewas.....	145	Detroit.....	219
Chittenden, H. M.....	130, 258	Dickson, Robert.....	128, 258
Chouteau Company.....	219, 236	Dilber, Joseph.....	260
Chouteau, Pierre.....	121	Disaster, mine.....	87
Christian.....	144	Division of Legislative Refer-	
Chuss-chu.....	166	ence.....	10
Citidelle.....	230	Dorian, Pierre.....	125, 223
Clark, George Rogers.....	136	Dog.....	159, 165
Clark, Malcolm.....	227, 231	Dotame.....	159
Gov. William.....	126, 128, 129	Drum, Lt. Col. William F.....	186
Claverack.....	213	Duluth.....	208
Cleveland.....	209	Duncan.....	224
C. & N. W. R. R.....	199	Dupius.....	223
Codington.....	62	Durham.....	213
Collins, Treasurer.....	66	Earthquake.....	67
Committee, executive.....	5	Education.....	73, 87
Subordinate.....	5	Ehart-sah.....	173
Conde.....	61	Eldora.....	200
Congressional Legislation.....	62	Elk Point.....	259
Constitutional Debates.....	11	Elrod, Governor Samuel.....	63, 73
Contre Coeur.....	241	Estimates, general.....	81
Cook, Dr.....	241, 251	Eulogy.....	
Corn Statistics, 1906.....	69	...Robert Eugene McDowell.....	101
1907.....	84	Exchange, state.....	15
Corresponding members.....	6	Executive committee.....	5
Cortez.....	134	Fallas, Felecia.....	252
Cotes qui tremp peau.....	244	Fargo.....	208
Coues, Dr. Elliot.....	216	Fauche.....	223
Cournover, Bruno.....	241, 260	Faulk court.....	62
Cox.....	242	Fechet, Col. E. G., photo.....	182
Crawford, Coe L.....	4, 73, 76	Capture of Sitting Bull.....	185
Crawler, photo.....	112	Federal buildings.....	63
Sacred stone of.....	113	Finances general.....	66, 80
Crazy Bear.....	233	State.....	65, 80
Cresbard.....	62	Statement.....	8
Crogo.....	146	Flackville.....	197
Crooked river.....	169	Flatheads.....	173
Crops.....	67	Flax.....	70, 81
1906.....	67-71	Florence.....	62
1907.....	81-86	Floyd Monument.....	257
Crow.....	169	Valley.....	240
Languages.....	172	Fort Benton.....	
Crouch line.....	61220, 230, 232, 251, 256, 259	
Crowder, Lientenant.....	188	Fort Berthold.....	235, 236, 237, 239, 252
Culbertson, Alexander.....	226	Fort Pierre.....	219, 228, 250, 255, 256
Dairying and poultry.....	72, 85	Fort Union.....	
Dakota.....	250227, 230, 233, 236, 237, 239, 251	
Dauphin Rapid.....	229	Fort Vermillion.....	256
Dayenport, W. B.....	63	Fort Yates.....	185
Debates, Constitutional.....	11		

Page.	Page.
Frenchmen, early in Sioux City, names.....255, 260	Munk's, winter houses on Hudson Bay..... 145
French, Kathryn M., photo..... 118	Sterling, Thomas..... 90
Lisa, Manuel..... 255	Stone, Kensington..... 143
Foulon..... 219	Sully, Old Fort..... 116
Gagon, Charles..... 260	Immigration..... 64
Galarneaux, Anable.....240, 259	Information, Bureau of..... 15
Gall..... 185	I. O. O. F..... 209
Gallery of Portraiture..... 14	Iowa..... 250
Galpine, Charles E..... 227	Irrigation Project, Belle Fourche..... 62
Gamble, Senator Robert J..... 73	Iron Horse..... 225
Garro, Pierre..... 237	Istaw Washty..... 234
Gault, Dr. F. B..... 73	Jamesburg..... 200
General works.....16, 18	Jefferson City..... 241
Gens-de-Corbeau..... 169	Jensen, Kristian..... 144
Gens-di-foulers..... 169	Journal, Charles Le Raye..... 150
Gens-de-panse..... 170	Larpenteur's..... 216
Gens-de-rach..... 159	Journalism.....
Gens-du-sang..... 231	Cephas W. Ainsworth..... 207
Gens-de-valch..... 165	Juette, Joseph..... 260
Glenham, railroad to..... 61	Kaewas..... 165
Gondron, Ferdinand..... 260	Kales..... 164
Goths..... 142	Kananamesh..... 159
Goulet, Henry..... 260	Kansas..... 152
Grand river..... 188	Kataka..... 159
Grignon, Louis..... 128	Keeney, Mary Heamstead..... 135
Gros Ventres.....132, 165, 238, 230	Keet-keet-sah..... 173
Halladay, Auditor..... 63	Kelly, Frances, the rescue of.. 109
Holsey..... 250	Kittredge, A. B..... 73
Hamilton..... 242	Kipp, Captain.....236, 237, 253, 251
Hauge, Rev. Lars G., photo..... 138	Kristeneaux..... 146
Did Norsemen Visit Dakota Country?..... 139	K's of P..... 209
Hay.....71, 85	La Barge, Captain..... 256
Health, public.....74, 87	La Blanc, Felix..... 260
Henry, Major Andrew..... 124	Labor question..... 64
Hepburn, A. B..... 197	La-ca-sha-newatu..... 169
History.....46, 57	La Chapelle..... 243
Hocchileaga..... 146	La Charite, Francis..... 257
Honorary members..... 6	La Chine..... 219
Hop..... 146	Lacont, Joseph..... 259
Hot Springs Sanitarium..... 63	Lafeuer, John..... 260
Hudson River Institute..... 213	Lafluer, Peter..... 218
Hamel's Island..... 229	Lake Ontario..... 219
Hunt, Wilson Price..... 125	Lamoureux, Clement.....
Illustrations..... 240, 241, 242, 260
Ainsworth, Cephas W..... 194	Lowe, John..... 128
Anchor, Viking..... 141	Lancaster..... 200
Bruguier, Theophile..... 262	La Plant, Louis.....252, 255
Crawler..... 112	La Plant, John Baptiste..... 259
Crawler, sacred stone of..... 113	La Plate..... 155
Fechet, Col. E. G..... 132	La Plat Cote D'Ours..... 226
French, Kathryn M..... 118	Larpenteur's Journal..... 216
Hague, Rev. Lars J..... 138	Layone, Peter..... 260
Kelly, Frances..... 108	Leavenworth..... 259
Letellier, Louis Dace..... 212	Le Barge, Joseph..... 220
Lisa, Manuel..... 120	Le Beau..... 61
Marks, Constant R..... 214	Leclerk, Kristian..... 147
McDowell, Robert E..... 100	Le Compte, Joseph..... 259
	Leecou's..... 146

	Page.		Page.
Legislation, congressional.....	62, 79	Mandans—Continued.	
State	76	Arickaras, peace established	
Leola	61	by	354
Letellier, Adelaide.....	218	Arickaras, report from.....	371
Blaise	218	Arrow game.....	473
Captain Charles.....	218	Arrow points.....	367
Ferdinand	218	Ark	567, 609
Gerome	218	Arms and armor.....	411
Henri	218	Art, ancient.....	616
Henrietta	218	Aryan	619
Louis Dace, photo.....	212	Assiniboel	282
Autobiography of.....	213	Assiniboinés.....	293, 279, 280, 281
Peter	218	282, 285, 288, 307, 308, 312, 313	
Le Raye, Journal of.....	150	314, 316, 321, 324, 325, 355, 431	
Letter of Transmittal.....	4	537, 598.	
Library, state.....	15	Assiniboine river.....	279, 307, 289
Life members.....	6	Atsinas	286
Liondell, Francis.....	260	Author, acknowledgments....	728
Lionnais, Joseph.....		Axtell, F. G.....	728
....240, 241, 242, 252, 255, 256,	257	Aztec	276
Josephine	257	Bad Gun.....	629
Rosalie	257	Bailey, Lieut.....	295
Lisa, Manuel.....	121	Baker, Mrs.....	629, 631
Biography of.....	121	Ball river.....	339
Manuel, Jr.....	135	Baptiste, Jean.....	394
Raymond	136	Bardashes	548
Rosalie	135	Baths, steam.....	601
Sally	135	Baths, vapor.....	428
Lisbon	198	Bathing place.....	426
Literature	43	Battle Ave.....	367
Little Sioux.....	156	Brazilians	545
Live stock.....	71	Beads	374, 614
Liza, Fort.....	132	Beads, glass.....	637
Lone Man.....	190	Beads, pottery.....	545
Madison	61	Bearded Whites.....	275
Mahas	159	Bear-on-the-Water	291, 641
Manclaire	177	Bear's Ghost.....	291, 640
Mandans	132, 167, 166	Bear's Ghost's narrative.....	647
Mandans.		Bellahsara	352
Abysinian Chiefs.....	436	Bertrand, J. B.....	329
Addenda	729	Bienville's letter.....	327
Agriculture 'Corn Mother'....	610	Big Double Medicine.....	473
Ahahaways	64, 286, 298, 350	Big Cheyene.....	297
Algonquin	295, 544	Big Horn river.....	342
Amahmi village.....	612	Big Knife.....	283, 284, 288
American Fur Co.....	300, 544, 635	Big Man.....	647
American Flag.....	364, 389	Big Sioux river.....	331
American Missionary Associa-		Big White.....	
tion	728312, 313, 352, 383, 384, 388, 391	
Annahwas	312	Bismarck, N. D.....	
Antelope hunts.....	593	278, 283, 287, 291, 297, 298, 299, 347	
Apparel	537	Bismarck mound.....	625
Apple creek.....	290, 347, 625	Black Buffalo Chief.....	372
Arapahoes	311	Blackburn, Dr. Wm. M.....	313
Arcs	282	Black Cat.....	
Arickaras.....	280, 287, 290, 292, 296351, 355, 368, 372, 379, 390, 395	
300, 301, 305, 308, 312, 327, 328		Blackfeet	
537, 548, 598.		278, 425, 431, 433, 465, 531, 537,	
Arickarees, below Ft. Pierre..	294	598.	

Mandans--Continued.

	Page.
Blackfoot tribe.....	379
Black Hills.....	296, 593
Blackman, E. E.....	290
Blanca Barbus.....	282
Black Shoe.....	405
Blue Eyes.....	721
Blumenback.....	549
Boats.....	545
Bodmer.....	589
Bogard, A.....	519
Bois Brule Sioux.....	330
Bougainville.....	281
Brackenridge.....	402, 593
Brackenridge's Journal.....	403
Bradbury.....	401, 531
Brandon House.....	394
Brave Raven.....	377
Brazilians.....	531
British traders.....	388, 617
Brochets.....	281
Brower, Jacob V.....	282, 623
Brown hair.....	402
Brule.....	343
Brule Sioux.....	277
Britnell, Albert.....	728
British flag.....	359
Brymner, Hon. Douglas.....	728
Buffalo.....	388
Buffalo chase.....	363
Buffalo dance.....	365, 457
Buffalo festival.....	584
Buffalo hunts.....	593
Buffalo meat.....	368
Buffalo on ice.....	376
Buffalo skin, white.....	575
Bull dance.....	502
Bureau of American Ethnology.....	303, 305
Burial ceremony.....	602
Burial scaffolds.....	404, 418
Burleigh county.....	287
Caches or pits.....	609
Cameron.....	372
Campbell.....	544
Canada.....	345
Cannon Ball river.....	296, 639
Canoes, skin.....	378
Cards, European playing.....	591
Catholic.....	633
Catlin.....	277, 278, 289, 292, 304, 439, 609, 612, 622, 722, 729.
Catlin, account of Mandans.....	406
Catlin's certificate.....	519
Catlin criticised.....	629
Catlin, inaccuracy.....	630
Catlin's medicine opposed.....	440
Catlin museum.....	477
Catlin White medicine.....	499

Mandans--Continued.

	Page.
Caucasian.....	619
Ceautoin, Mr.....	378
Ceremony, Annual religious.....	490
Ceremonies, Four cardinal points.....	524
Ceremonies, Tortures.....	508
Ceremony, Okeepa.....	609
Certificate, Catlin's.....	518
Chabailleux.....	395
Chaboneau.....	379, 381, 530, 599
Characteristics.....	277, 530
Character misunderstood.....	433
Chein.....	336
Chiefs, noted.....	349, 421, 634
Chien river.....	338
Cheyennes.....	294, 295, 296, 307, 388, 568
Cheyenne delegation.....	361
Cheyenne river.....	293, 294, 296, 331
Chippeways.....	355, 544, 548, 598, 602
Chittenden, Hiram M.....	626
Christian religion.....	549
Christmas.....	364, 389
Civilized, can be.....	526
Clarke, General.....	277, 310, 311, 314
Clarke, Lieut.....	293, 295
Clark, W. P.....	306
Clark counsels peace.....	360
Clark, Arthur H. Co.....	728
Coal Bluff.....	635
Coale and Maxwell.....	404
Collections, American Anti- uarian Society.....	312
Commissioner of Indian Af- fairs.....	613
Complexion.....	340, 423, 618
Conclusions of Deland.....	721
Confederated village.....	294, 300
Congregational church.....	621, 633
Congregational Missionary So- ciety.....	639
Coquard, Father.....	281
Corn.....	383
Cultivation.....	542
Dance.....	585
Corn and meat.....	451
"Corn Mother".....	610
Coues, Dr.....	253, 285, 286, 297, 392, 329, 400
Council.....	386
Courtship, marriage.....	545
Crawford, L.....	519
Creation.....	562
Crees.....	288, 293, 307, 308, 313, 319
Cris Panis Blanc.....	282
Crooked river.....	342
Crows.....	256, 313, 342, 357, 381, 406, 425, 431, 433, 537, 536, 548, 619

Mandans—Continued.

	Page.
Culture, archeology and	
108 '008	305
627	728
Dakota Mawatani.....	456
Dallor, Mrs. Mary Louise.....	502
Dance, buffalo.....	585
Bull	
Corn	
Dances and songs, scalp dance	
.....	455, 557, 597
Dandies	443
Davies, Dr. Gomer E.....	728
Dead, grief for.....	419
Death, ceremonies.....	370
Deities	559
De L' Isle, map of.....	282
De Land's visit.....	639
Conclusions	721
De Lacigne, R. B.....	329
De Smet.....	637
Devil's Lake region.....	294
Devil's Lake, N. D.....	296, 307, 571
Dickson, Mr.....	378
Dipauch	559, 562
Discipline	546
Dishes, clay.....	448
Ditches, Palisades.....	409
Dog Indians.....	333, 338
Dog river.....	344
Dogs	541
D'Orbugny	559
Dotame	336
Doughty, Hon. Albert F.....	728
Drake	282
Drawings on robes.....	551
Drewyer, Mr.....	379
Dwellings	606
Dube, Joseph.....	329
Du Bois river.....	386
Duluth	307
Durion, Mr.....	378
Eastman, Dr. Charles.....	291, 728
Eaton, Henry.....	621
Eeh-na-dec	501
Eeh-teeh-tsa	501
Effigies, Minnesota.....	615
Egyptians	637
Elbow Woods, N. D.....	302
England	278
Entrapped by Sioux.....	459
Episcopal	633
European blood.....	619
European playing cards.....	591
Evans, Mr.....	355
Evil Spirit.....	471, 505
Fair Skin.....	618
Fall	313
Fall Indians.....	358

Mandans—Continued.

	Page.
Families	544
Fargnan, Raphael.....	329
Farmers	631
Fastings, feasts.....	464
Feasts, ornaments.....	336
Festivals, the ark.....	577
Festival, buffalo.....	584
Fevers	430
First Indian council.....	351
Flatheads	282, 343, 402
Flood, Residium of.....	501
Food	364
Animal	544
Foolish Chief.....	647
Fort, location of.....	355, 387
Fort Atkinson.....	300
Fort Berthold.....	
280, 283, 291, 293, 294, 300, 606,	
610.	
Deland's visit to.....	639
Agency, Indian.....	302
Fort Clarke.....	
.....284, 288, 530, 561, 610,	
Access to.....	551
Fortifications	610
Fort La Reine.....	281, 282, 628
Fort Mandan.....	
.....283, 288, 298, 309, 389, 392,	
634	
Fort Stevenson.....	300
Four Bears.....	446, 477, 629, 634
Fowke, Gerard.....	721, 728
Freckled Pawnees.....	282
French traders.....	617
French Trading Company.....	309
Gallatin, Albert.....	312, 313
Gaelic	605
Gambing	338
Games	363, 463, 473, 559
Garrow, Mr.....	375
Gass, Patrick.....	385, 391
Gens de Chevaux.....	628
Gens des Souliers.....	286
Gens dis vatch.....	336, 338
German sounds.....	604
Ghost Heart.....	647
Girard, Mr.....	306, 310
Glass work.....	614
Glazed ornaments, Rees.....	615
God	34
Golgotha	404
Circles	419
Gonorrhoea among.....	602
Grand Bend.....	385
Grand river.....	305, 334, 396
Grand village.....	395
Gravebines, Mr.....	371
Grapevine	569
Great Lakes.....	276

Mandans—Continued.

	Page.
Great Medicine.....	351
Great Spirit.....	337, 465
Gros Ventre.....	
280, 286, 293, 295, 300, 302, 312,	
331, 339, 340, 344, 386, 390, 396,	
397, 399, 406, 621.	
Gulf of Mexico.....	345
Gunn, Donald.....	307
Habitat.....	278
Haewas.....	338
Hair.....	423, 619
Hairy Horn.....	395
Half White.....	423
Haliotis, shells.....	616
Hall, Rev. C. L.....	639, 728
Hall, Rev. R. D.....	302, 304
Hamersly & Co., L. R.....	306
Ha-na-tah-mu-mauh.....	421
Hancock, Mr.....	378
Handbook of American In-	
dians.....	290, 292, 296, 305
Hardihood.....	552
Harlan.....	549
Harper, F. P.....	392, 728
Hayall.....	729
Hayden.....	290, 305
Head dress.....	430
Heart river.....	
289, 291, 292, 293, 296, 530, 611,	
630, 722.	
Henry, Alexander.....	277, 297, 392
Henry, Thompson, Journals....	
.....	285, 329
Hidatsas.....	286, 292, 306, 296, 611
Dictionary and grammar.	605
Ethnography and phil-	
ology.....	605
Highly civilized.....	304
Histopa.....	568
Historical Society, Wisconsin.	728
History, Early.....	611
Hit-him-in-the-back.....	645
Hodge, Dr. F. W.....	293, 728
Hokozhkis.....	600
Holmes, Dr. W. H.....	303, 627, 728
Horned Crest.....	433
Horned Weasel.....	359
Horns, sign of authority.....	435
Horses.....	368, 541
Mexican.....	474
Racing.....	475
Hospitality.....	451, 542
Hottentots.....	531
Houle, Louis.....	329
Howard, General C. H.....	621
Hudson's Bay.....	307, 328, 349, 617
Hungarian saddles.....	592

Mandans—Continued.

	Page.
Hunt.....	355, 365
Antelope.....	593
Buffalo.....	593
Rocky mountains.....	341
Illinois country.....	345
Indian corn.....	358
Indian sign language.....	308, 314, 366
Inhabited South Dakota.....	278
Intelligence, morality.....	549
Interpreter to Lewis and	
Clarke.....	350
Itasca lake.....	625
James river.....	291, 331, 342, 343
Jausseume, Rene.....	396
Jeffreys' map.....	282
Jessemaume, M.....	350, 379
Jewish customs.....	436
Jonsquard, Chrysostome.....	329
Jussome.....	329
Justice.....	373
Kagohami.....	353
Kagonomokshe.....	352
Kales.....	338
Kani-Sachka.....	577
Kansas warpath.....	332
Kinongewiniris.....	281
Kipp, Monsr. J.....	
.....	312, 438, 491, 519, 729
Kirk, Simon J.....	301, 302, 728
Kites.....	336
Knife river.....	
.....	288, 289, 294, 298, 300, 310, 342,
.....	343, 392, 402, 611, 612, 635.
Knisteneaux.....	282, 355
Ko-ka.....	472
Konza.....	540
Ladder, ancient.....	630
Languages.....	613, 687
Changes in dialects.....	
.....	312, 604, 620
Ree no resemblance.....	620
Sonants.....	619
La France, J. B.....	329
La Grave, Francois.....	329
Lake Superior.....	281, 307
Lake Winnipeg.....	
.....	280, 289, 307, 309, 313
Lances.....	600
Laroche, Mr.....	359, 372
Last race.....	513
Laut, Agnes C., Pathfinders of	
the West.....	328
Leaving of Lewis and Clarke.	383
Le Borgne.....	
.....	373, 374, 380, 382, 383, 405
Leggins, breech cloths.....	537, 634
Le Raye, Charles.....	277
Journal of.....	331

Mandans—Continued.

	Page.
Legend, vine.....	521
Earth, tortoise.....	523
Le Vaillant.....	531
Lewis, first meeting with.....	350
Lewis and Clarke.....	
277, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 290,	
291, 297, 298, 299, 306, 308, 311,	
313, 330, 334, 401, 423, 611, 612,	
638.	
Journals.....	345
Lightning Bolt.....	472
Liposka-numakaki.....	612
Little Bend.....	334
Little Big Belly village.....	393
Little Cherry.....	382
Little Crow.....	382
Little Missouri.....	300, 573
Little Owl.....	291, 640
His story.....	641
Little Raven.....	352, 364
Little Sioux river.....	333
Lodges.....	409, 629
Catlin's description.....	608
Frame of.....	607
Interior.....	539
Maximilian.....	608
Medicine.....	609, 610
Old Style.....	606
Palisades.....	538
Roofs.....	416
Ruins of.....	631
Sod house.....	630
Women work on them.....	607
Log houses.....	608
Long, Major.....	538, 596
Longsdorff.....	548
Lower Fall Indians.....	285
Lower White Earth.....	611
Lutaio.....	296
Macalester, college library.....	728
Macintosh.....	309
Madoc, Prince.....	276
Madocian theory.....	276
Mahaha.....	283
Mahas.....	281
Mahahas.....	357
Mahna-narra.....	530
Mahantas.....	281
Mahchsi-Karchde.....	530
Mahnon.....	285
Mah-sish.....	472
Mah-tahp-ta-ha.....	422
Mah-to-he-ha.....	422
Mah-to-toh-pa.....	421, 477, 482
Mahnotah.....	358
Mato-numangkake.....	530

Mandans—Continued.

	Page.
Mandan.	
Aborigines of South Dakota.....	275
Villages.....	287
Mandan, North Dakota.....	
.....278, 288, 292, 297	
Man-di-tongue-go.....	339
Margry.....	327
Manitoba.....	307
Mantanes.....	281
Marque de la.....	316, 317, 321, 322
Marriage ceremony.....	341
Mato-Mihte.....	530
Matani.....	612
Mathews caches.....	
.....286, 305, 605, 609 617, 631,	
Mato Chiha.....	531
Mato-tope.....	577, 600
Matootonaha.....	394
Ma-too-to-ha.....	631
Mawuni.....	612
Maximilian.....	
278, 292, 293, 301, 305, 529, 605,	
635, 612, 729.	
McCracken, Mr.....	349
McDonnell's Journal.....	329
McDougall's house.....	285
McIntosh's early visit.....	617
McKenzie.....	379, 548, 636
McLean county, N. D.....	300
Meals.....	542
Meat, how cured.....	454
Medicine.....	589
Bear.....	291
Festivals, the ark.....	577
Lodges.....	417, 539, 609, 610
Serpents.....	587
Stone.....	370, 588
Metaharra.....	285
Me-too-ta-hak.....	290, 306
Metutaukee.....	611
Metutaukish.....	611
Metutauhanke.....	631
Miahtanes.....	290, 305
Michimackinac.....	279
Migrations.....	307, 624, 630
Mihti-Shi.....	569
Mihti-Pilka.....	569
Mih-Tutta-Hang-Kusa.....	
.....530, 538, 568, 572, 576, 611	
Minitaree.....	
285, 286, 295, 300, 312, 313, 357	
536, 548.	
Ahnahaways.....	351
Meaning of word.....	622
Minnessumaree.....	358
Mini-makan.....	296
Mi-neek-e-sunk-te-ca.....	422

Mandans—Continued.

	Page.
Miry creek	392
Mississippi river.....	
276, 291, 292, 293, 295, 309, 326	
Missouri Historical Society....	
..... 291, 728	
Missouri Indians.....	333, 430
Missouri river.....	
276, 283, 288, 289, 290, 292, 293,	
295, 296, 297, 298, 300, 304, 306,	
307, 308, 309, 345, 408, 638, 722,	
729.	
Course of.....	632
Valley	294
Missionaries among.....	633
Mitchell, D. D.....	312, 617
Letter	308, 309
Miti-Utanhanke	631
Montezuma	276
Montreal	628
Morals	633
Moreau river.....	292, 293, 296, 569
Morgan.....	290, 292, 306, 729
Mourning	603
Mound Builders.....	276, 408, 624, 726
Controversy as to.....	624
Mouse river.....	279, 283, 379
Madoc, Prince.....	651
Muskingum river.....	289
Musselshell river.....	281
Mysterious medicine.....	499
Mystery Man.....	498
Myths	623
First man at sea.....	649
Four Bull and the flood... 650	
Holy man.....	644
Man, the first.....	643
Middle Hole.....	645
Nahsi	568
Nanabash	560
Neill	281
Account of Verendrye's	
Expedition	280
New France	279
New Light on the Northwest... 392	
New-Wied	610
New-Wied, Prince.....	612
New Zealanders.....	538
Nolant, Sieur.....	317, 321, 322, 323
Norris, Col.....	626
Northern Indians.....	355
Northwest Company.....	
..... 285, 329, 359, 379, 388	
Notes, Appendatory.....	726
Nu-mah-ka-kee	612
Numangkake	529, 568, 571
Nunank-Machana.....	559, 562, 577
Numohk-muck-a-nah	519
Nuptadi	611

Mandans—Continued.

	Page.
Numeta	612
Obsidian quarries.....	625
Work of ancestors.....	627
Oheenaw-Shahaka	370
Ohenaw	360
Ohhavy	373
Ohio.....	276, 292, 289, 729
Okippe	577
Old Fort Pierre and her	
neighbors	284
Okandanas	343
Okeepa	610
Ceremony	609
Omahas	281, 430
Omahank-Chiha	560
Numakshi's stick.....	563
Ompah	467, 468
Ompschara	373
Oratory	550
Orders, badges.....	552
Orders, women.....	557
Origin	526, 530
Ornaments	532
Osage river.....	330, 600
Ospekakaernousques	282
Ottoes	332
Packineau, J.....	641
Pactineau, Pattineaux, Chas. 641	
Painted Woods, North Dakota 290	
Paintille, M.....	344
Painting	376
Paintings of explained.....	438
Eyes move.....	441
Panahas	320, 326
Panamis	320
Panis	281, 333
Pantille, Mr.....	251
Parker, S. D.....	330
Pardo, M.....	332, 338, 341, 342
Patagonians	545
Pathfinders of the West, by	
A. C. Laut.....	328
Patriarchs	634
Pauneh Indians.....	357
Pawnees	43, 261, 536, 621, 723
Of the Platte.....	282
Peaceable, etc.....	304, 422
Peace relations, neglect of	
government	618
Pehriska, Ruhpa.....	599
Pemoina	598
People of the East.....	275
People of the Pheasants.....	274
Peron	531
Peterson, Dr. Cyrus A.....	291
Pharaoh	636
Plants, wild.....	543
Platte river.....	282, 333

Mandans—Continued.

	Page.
Polygamists	449
Polytheism	632
Pompey's Pillar	378
Poor Wolf	293, 294, 634
Population, various tribes	612
Portage La Prairie	628
Portraits, astonishment at	437
Pottawatomies	544
Pottery	322
Not of civilized race	626, 684
Prairie fires	373
Pride	551
Problems, unsolved	637
Prudery	547
Punchas	430
Quixote, Don	626
Race, declining	634
Last of	513
Raid on meat	369
Rain making	466
Maker	470
Stopping	466
Ramsey, Governor	281
Raven Man	374
Rapid	312, 313
Raye, Le. Journal of	344
Red Cow	621
Red Lake Chippewas	281
Red river	281, 307
Ree	302, 396, 621
Relationship	548
Religion	492, 497
Guardian spirit, medicine pipes	573
Origin	362
Religious phases	311
Reynolds, Col.	619
Ricara, Rickarees, Ricarus	298, 299, 313, 333, 390
Delegation	390
Village huts	333, 349
Riggs, Rev. Stephen R.	621
Road river	342
Robes, painting on	335
Robinson, Doane	301, 332, 728
Robinson, Dr. Delorme W.	297, 300, 313, 728
Rocky Mountains	598
Rohanka-Tanihaka	560
Rooptahee	396
Ruhptare	530, 538, 572
Ruins	347, 631
Rus	331, 340, 344
Rushing Eagle	629, 646
Ruptari	611
Sacrifices	464, 520
Saint Johns	331
Salteurs	297, 393

Mandans—Continued.

	Page.
Salt Springs	343
Sam-ja-ka-ko-kah	422, 425
Sandy Lake	281
Sanford, Major	470
Santee Normal Institute	302
Santees	303
Saskaskawan river	358
Saskatchewan river	289
Sasqui river	330, 343
Satan	506
Saulier village	339
Savages	423
Savanna river	281
Say, Dr.	313, 540
Scalp dance	557, 597
Schoolcraft	310, 617, 729
School of war	595
Seehk-hee-da	422
Seeing Snake	367
See-pohs-kah-numah-kah-kee.	407
Serpents, medicine	587
Shahaka	363
Sha-ko-ka	422
Sham fight, boys	461
Shanafelt, Dr.	625
Sharhas	361
She-he-ke	401, 403
Shell river	281
Shells Abalone	616
Dentalium	617
Haliotes	616
Iroquois	616
Trade in	616
Shepherd's creek	347
Shields	600
Shoe	379
Shoe Indians	357
Shoshones	313, 352, 381
Shotawhorora	371
Shooting at short range	474
Sibley island	287, 298
Sibley rifle pits	625
Sih Chida	531
Sioux	292, 296, 301, 302, 303, 304, 308, 309, 312, 315, 339, 343, 380, 381, 387, 537, 598.
Hostilities	390
Origin	301
Raid	344
River	344
Rumors of attacks on Aricaras	372
Threats	356
Tribe of the Northwest	305
Spisuske, Mihite	530
Sisseton	301
Slissatons	372

Mandans—Continued.

	Page.
Sisters-wives	547
Skidi	290
Skin, color of	532
Smallpox	308, 635
Smoke, powder of	441
Smithsonian Institution	477
Snake Hill	392
Tribe	375, 377, 402
Soublette	544
Souris river	279, 283, 328, 379
South Dakota	289, 296, 568, 722
South Seas	538
South villages	290, 306
Spain	278
Spaniards	326
Speeches of	353
Spinden, H. J.	729
Spirit, evil	505, 522
Sport, shooting	474
Standing Bear	647
Standing Rock Agency	639
Staitan	296
Stanton, N. D.	283, 293
Stature, hair	424
Stationary tribe	628
Steam spook	468
Steinbreuck, E. R. ..	288, 292, 637, 728
Stillwater river	343
St. Johns	345
St. Louis	344, 408
River	281
St. Peter's	372
Stockades	610
Stoicism, superior	517
Stone, medicine	589
St. Peter's steamboat	635
Sudk-shih	600
Superstitions	559
Swimming	427
Tabeau, M.	373
Tanner	548
Tascodiac Effigies	625
Tattooing	537
Tawnoheo	352
Taylor, J. H.	290, 728
Te-ho-pee-nee-wash-ee- washa-pooska	499
Temperament	412
Tetons	303, 312, 372
River	344
Teton-anah-Sioux	331
Tetuck-opinreha	373
Thanktowans	306
Thanktonwannas	306
Thomas, A. W.	640
Thompson, David	285, 329
Three Tribes	606, 611
Three rivers	343

Mandans—Continued.

	Page.
Thunder Bird	561
Time, divisions of year	591, 592
Titon	343
Tortures	508
Great Spirit victims	512
Trade, intertribal	616
Pacific shells	616
Traders	349
Traditions	632
Flood	519
Tranquille, Joseph	329
Traps	594
Tribal sign, tattooing	300
Tucas	276
Tunies, moccasins	431
Turtle mountain	279, 343
Two chiefs	629, 634
Tyler's creek	333
Umfreville, Edward	286
Upham, Warren	729
Upper Fall Indians	285
Upsaroka	313
Utasiaout chactas	282
Vanity	443
Verendrye, La.	277
Verendrye, Chevalier	319, 321
Verendrye, Francois	328
Verendrye, Pierre	328
Verendrye	280, 297, 308, 314, 327, 328, 329, 617
Met Mandans where	279
Visits of	628
Victims of tortures	512
Views of Louisiana	405
Villages	321, 339, 356, 404, 407, 417, 297, 606, 630, 631, 638, 729
Visits, Verendrye	628
Wabieck river	281
Wak-a-dah-hee	467, 468, 469, 471, 472
Walled villages	308
Waltasoons	357
Waugotap	485
Wars	308, 381, 598
Aricaras	378
Soldiers	344
School of	595
War party	475
War-rah-pa	467, 468
Warrana river	338
Washburn, N. D.	280, 290
Washington, D. C.	313
Watasoons	386
Watapahatoes	336
Weapons	598

Mandans—Welsh Indians—Con.

	Page.
Welsh Indians.	
Abbies of Conway.....	658
Aboriginal races of North America	713
Acchiuans	689
Acusamil	660
Adams, John.....	698
Africa	700
Alexandria manuscripts....	666
Alitans	703
Alleghanies	725
Alligewi	676, 692
Apaches	693, 694
Appomatox, Madoc's name..	697
Archbishop of Canterbury...	652
Arkansas river.....	703
Arms, coat of.....	679
Arthur, King.....	701
Ashmolean museum.....	661
Asia	700
Atabalipa	673
Atlantis, Ignatius Donnely..	711
Authorities, other.....	667
Aztecs	689
Architecture, Welsh.....	694
Badges	691
Barbarians, not.....	689
Bards, Welsh minstrelsy..	691
Fortifications	692
Heraldry among.....	702
Madoc	692
Missouri	692
Montezuma	691
Musical councils.....	691
North	689
Prayers	690, 691
Pyramids	692
Religion	690
Supreme being.....	690
Tlacopan	691
Turzeuco	691
Welsh blood.....	695
Welshmen	693
Welsh Trials?.....	691
Aztlan	697
Baldwin	688
Baneroft	720
Baroa, Chili.....	692
Baronius	674
Bearded Indians.....	688
Beatty, Charles.....	633, 701
Behaim	666
Beirds	659
Belknap, Dr.....	700
Benket, Major General.....	661
Berwyn mountains.....	653
Bible	664, 670, 672, 702
Big Bend, Missouri river....	705

Mandans—Welsh Indians—Con.

	Page.
Binnon, Mr.....	669
Blue Ridge.....	718
Books, how came by.....	712
Madoc's	685
Bossu, Louisiana.....	682
Bourbourg, Abbe Brasseur de	693
Bowen, Benjamin F.....	676, 686, 690, 692, 693, 698
Bowles, Gen.....	675
Bowen—Catlin	686
Brechs. Jean.....	673
British museum.....	666, 671
Britons.....	666, 669, 700
In America.....	660
Broadsword	680
Burnell, Richard.....	669
Cabot, John.....	674, 720
Cabot, Sebastian.....	693
Cadwalader	653
Cadwallon	654
Caerdigan	652
Caesar	667
Caldwell, Sir John.....	670
Cambrian	678
Campbell, Dr.	663
Canoy, General.....	695
Canoes	708
Carodoc	700, 716
History of Wales.....	658
Carey, Mathew.....	699
Cartheginians	700
Carver, Capt.....	675, 693, 701
Catlin	688, 698, 704, 686, 708
Celtic discoveries.....	673
Inscriptions	698
Words	697
Chapman, Isaac.....	678
Charlevoix	682
Account	701
Cherokees	720
Cheyenne river.....	705
Chichimecs	689
Chicasaws	670
Chills, John.....	683
Cholulans	697
Christian customs.....	666
Cia	676
Cierniog river.....	653
Clavigero	689
Clinton, Gov. De Witt.....	696
Clochran, Lord of.....	673
Cochran, Mr.....	671
Columbia river.....	703
Columbus.....	674, 675, 680, 700, 720
Commeas, Emanuel Emperor	673
Concise account of North America	712
Conestoga	678

Mandans—Welsh Indians—Con.

	Page.
Confederations	653
Cornicle, Welsh.....	708
Cortez	667, 674, 691
Conquest	689
County Coyty.....	669
Cox's Description of Louis- iana	682
Criticisms	701
Crofts	660
Crook, General, campaigns..	693
Cozzens, Mr.....	695
Customs, mound building...	710
Cyveilloc, Owen.....	653, 655, 667
Dates, events of history of Mexico	689
Danes	700
Davey, John.....	655
David, Lord of Anglesey...	654
Davies, Dr. E. Gomer.....	714
Davis, Mr.....	679
Declaration of Independence	685, 698
De Laet.....	678
De Land, conclusions on Welsh	721
Delaware river.....	665
Del Norte Mexicans.....	676
Deluge Legends of America.	711
De Originibus Americanis Hagae Comitatus	660
Discoveries, British.....	673
Celtic	673
Dispersion from Ohio.....	681
Donnelly, Ignatius.....	711
Drake, Samuel G.....	711
Druidic Circle	678
Drummend, Captain John...	692, 672
Drwynnewn, Towerth.....	654
Duffield, Mr.....	663
Dinwiddie, Governor.....	671
Earthworks, Bon Homme Island	671
Deposits symbolical.....	710
Ednerth, Madoc.....	653
Edwin, Owen.....	654
English reverses.....	653
Evans, Evan.....	723, 656
Evans, Theophilus.....	661
European Indians.....	683
Filson, John.....	668, 712
Fingal	666
Flemmings	662
Florida	633, 705
Forefathers	684
Fort Chartres	699
Fortifications, Westward, Aztec	681, 692

Mandans—Welsh Indians—Con.

	Page.
Fowke, Gerard.....	717
Fraemasonry	695, 696
Gates, General.....	685
Gentleman's Magazine.....	661, 668, 669, 672
Genoa	675
Gibraltar	675
Glamorgan	669
Golnasco, Antonio.....	675
Gorllewin, Pan Beirdd y....	667
Gormora, Francis Lopez de..	660
Greek	677, 665, 683
Griffith, Maurice.....	683
Adventures	701
Gronw, Cynfrig ap.....	656
Gronow, Cynfrig ap.....	659
Gryalva, Don Juande.....	673
Gryffrdd, Rhys ap.....	655
Guahutemallians	661
Guiana, people of.....	692
Gwalchamai	667
Gwynedd	655
Cadell	655
Cynwric	654
Cynan	653
David	655
Succession of.....	654
Edwal	659
Edward	654
Einion	655
Gwenllian	654
Howel	659
Jocwerth Drwyn dwn....	654
Llewaylyn	654
Madoc	654
Maelgon	654
Meredydd	652
Owen	673
Rhiryd	654
Rhun	659, 667, 700
Hakluyt	681
Harrison, President.....	675
Hawkins, Sir John.....	658, 662, 667
Herbert, Sir Thomas.....	667
Hebrew	652, 655, 673
Henry II.....	659
Henry VII.....	665
Hicks, Levi.....	681
Hieroglyphics, Celtic.....	652
History of Welsh Madoc's line	660, 678
Hornius	670
Hughes, Jack.....	681
Humbolt, Baron, Political Essays	692
Humphreys, Oliver.....	663
Implements, Engineering...	681

Mandans—Welsh Indians—Con.

	Page.
Indians of North America..	711
Investigations, Catlin.....	698
Ireland	655, 666
Irish	673
Iroquois	670
James IV.....	673
Jones, David.....	667
Jones, Morgan.....	661, 668, 701
Jones' Musical Relics of	
Welsh	650
Kaskaskia	671
Kentucky	668
Ker, Henry.....	712
Kinney's farm.....	679
Konoskeni	677
Language, manuscript.....	688
Test	696
Leavenworth, Kansas.....	706
Lee, Francis Henry Light-	
foot	698
Leow, Dr. Oscar.....	694
Lewis, Morgan, account....	685
Longman, Brown, Green....	704
Louisiana	699
Lord, Capt.....	699
Lipsius	674
"LL" sounds.....	663
Llanidloes	714
Lloyd, Edward.....	661
Lloyd, H.....	716
Lloyd, Dr. Thomas.....	661
Lloyd's letter.....	662
Llwyd, Charles.....	661
Llwyd, Humphrey.....	658
Lytleton, Lord.....	660
Mackenzie, Sir George.....	673
Madoc	688
Aztecs	692
Books	685
Creek	677
Encyclopedic accounts of..	714
Matoc	683
Mississippi	706
Prince, voyage to America	
.....	655, 699
Return	666
Revered	677
Southey	703
Theory opposed	717
Tradition	663
Undiscovered	662
Madog	658, 666
Madawgys, Mandans.....	706
Mael'or, Angharad	654
Mama O'celle.....	672
Manco, Capac.....	672
Mandans	
Lower Missouri.....	705

Mandans—Welsh Indians—Con.

	Page.
Madawgys	706
Ohio river.....	705, 706
Mayflower	698
McCulloch	677
Meredydd, ap Rhys.....	656
Madoc, ap.....	653
Mexicans	675
Monuments	693
Mexico.....	665, 673, 724
Celts in.....	673
Chronological table.....	689
Founded	689
Peru, Taltecs to Aztecs...	689
Mills, John H.....	715
Mines	681
Mississippi river.....	665, 668, 722
Madoc on.....	706
Missouri river.....	670, 702
Mitchel	679
Mnacedeus	712
Modocs	695
Mohave tongue.....	698
Welsh words.....	695
Molina, Abbe, history by....	691
Montezuma	672, 674
Declarations of.....	674
Forefathers	673
Montezumans, civilized.....	693
Monuments, Aboriginal....	680
Moquis in Arizona.....	694
Tongue	698
Morgan, Dr.....	671
Maurice	671
Morse, Dr.....	688
Report	698, 699
Mound Builders.....	709, 718, 719
Mounds on Mississippi.....	709
Mount Joy Herald.....	678
Muskingum	705
Names	682
Semi civilized tribes.....	681
Various	671
Natches	670, 688
Natural History of Mineral	
Kingdom	672
Navajoes	694
New Orleans	664, 682
New Port, R. I.....	677
Nicholson, Bishop.....	697
Normans	622
North Carolina.....	699
Ohio river.....	665, 705
Mandans on.....	706
Onodaga	678
Oronoco river.....	692
Ossian	666
Owen "British" remains....	716
Guthun	659

Mandans—Welsh Indians—Con.

	Page.
John	714
Rev. N.	662
Padoncas	668
Pawnees	670
Pennant	678
Pennsylvania	669
People of the Pheasants.....	707
Perth, Earl of.....	673
Peru, discovered by Madoc..	672
Phoenecian	700
Pidgeon	679
William	708
Pipestone, Minnesota.....	707
Pitt, William.....	674
Platte river.....	705
Plott, Dr. Robert.....	661
Polar Star.....	666
Political Essays.....	
.....Baron Humboldt	692
Polo, Marco.....	720
Pontigo	677
Pontygo	677
Powel, Dr. David.....	
.....	658, 663, 714, 716
Powys	653, 655
Prairie du Chein, Wisconsin	708
Prescott	690
Price	688
Pyramids, Aztecs.....	692
Queen Elizabeth.....	675
Quetzalcoatl, God of the air	690
Red Haired Indians in north-	
west	701
Red river.....	703
Reichard, Father.....	699
Researches on America.....	677
Rhys ap Gryffydd.....	652
Riccarees in Mandan villages	707
Rimington, Mr.....	670
Ring Forts.....	679
Roanoke	614
Robertson	666
Rogers, Major.....	712
Round Tower.....	677
Roman characters.....	655
Romans	700
Sachem of the Doegs.....	661
Salmasius	674
Sampson, Low, Son & Co..	708
Saxons	662, 700
Scaliger	674
Schoolcraft	679
Scotch Mexicans.....	673
Serpent Mound.....	719
Severn river.....	653
Sevier, Governor, letter of..	702
Shawanaugh	664
Shelburne, Lord.....	672

Mandans—Welsh Indians—Con.

	Page.
Sibley, Dr.....	690
Silurian Welsh.....	683
Silver Cross.....	680
Sketches, historical and de-	
scriptive	699
Sounds, guttural.....	688
South Dakota.....	705
Southey Robert.....	703
Spaniards	666, 672, 689
Spanish	674
Squier	679
St. David's Brecon.....	661
St. Domingo.....	677
Stedman	622
Adventure	701
Stewart Captain.....	664
Isaac	701
Stoddard, Major Amos.....	699
Stoneherge	678
Stuart, Captain Isaac.....	713
Susquehanna	679
Sutton, Benjamin.....	664
Sutton and Hicks.....	701
Stewart accounts.....	664
Table of words.....	687
Talliesyn	667
Thayer, Bridgman and Fan-	
ning	708
Thomas, Rev. Eleazer.....	695
Times, Tlanidloes and Mont-	
gomery	715
Tlapallan	690
Tlascalans	697
Toby's creek.....	679
Toltecs	689
Traditions of DeCooDah....	708
Trabacarn, Llywarch ap....	654
Travels in North America,	
Carver	693
Tribes, why unknown.....	667
Tuscoraras	665, 676
Welsh!	661
Upper Lake mines.....	681
Vancouver	703
Vera Cruz.....	675
Virginia	663
Virginians	661
Wales, history of, Warring-	
ton	652
Warrington, Rev. William..	652
Welgecons	678
Welsh colony, Catlin.....	705
Dissensions	653
Embassy to France.....	655
Immortals in America....	698
Nation in America, Stod-	
dara	699
Succession, Gwladys.....	654

Mandans—Welsh Indians—Con.

	Page.
Track	669
Tribes	665
Wheeler's Expedition.....	694
White civilization in South America.....	691
White Indians.....	677, 685
Willain, Colony.....	670, 688
Williams, Dr.....	692
Williams, Edmund.....	669
Williams, Edward.....	670
Williams, J.....	657, 665, 667, 672, 675
Williams, Roger.....	698
Williams, W.....	656
William the Lion.....	654
Winchester	671
Words.	
Bara	662
Buwch	662
Clug, Jar.....	662
Coch-y-dce	662
Groeso	662
Gwenddwr	662
List of Welsh.....	688, 714
Llwynog	662
Mam	662
Pangwyn	662
Tabulated	687
Tad	662
Wye river.....	653
Wynne, W.....	658
Wyoming	658
Zumarraga	689
Zurita, jurist.....	689
Welsh language.....	303
Welsh origin.....	276
Welsh theory.....	310, 633, 651
Wheeler, Hon. Olin D.....	627, 629, 728
Whence came they.....	289
Where found by.....	282
White Beards	280
White Buffalo Robe.....	465
White Earth river.....	569
White Indians.....	313
White mer liars.....	415
White Pawnees.....	282
White river.....	292, 293, 333, 343, 568
White Wolf.....	402
Will, J. H.....	729
Williams, Charles.....	331
Williams, Daniel.....	590
Willow Branch.....	520
Wilson, Major.....	284
Winnebago	292
Winnipeg	279
Wisconsin	292
Wolf creek.....	392
Indians	333

Mandans—Continued.

	Page.
Traps	594
Women, work of.....	450
Wounds, healing of.....	601
Yanktonais	291, 343
Yanktons	303, 372
Yellowstone river.....	342, 403, 465, 468, 476
Young, Rev. S. Hall.....	625
Zedekiah	436
Man-do-ton-que-qua	178
Man-di-tongue-go	165
Mare Kristian	143
Marivelli, Guiseppi.....	260
Marketings, actual.....	72, 86
Marks.	
Biography	215
Constant R.....	213
Photo	214
Life of Theophile Bruguiere	263
French pioneers of Sioux City	255
Martin, Marie Charlotte.....	218
Masonry	209
Mauvaise Terres.....	230
McDowell, Robert Eugene.....	101
McLaughlin, Major.....	185
McPherson county.....	61
Melburn	250
Menard, Amelia.....	256
Louis	252
Family of.....	256
Meni-tar-u-miti-ha-tah.....	167
Meniture	167
Methodism	208
Meyers, Frank.....	116
Midland	62
Miles, General.....	193
Millard, Dr. Albert.....	199
Miller, Mrs. Mary.....	205
Milwaukee R. R.....	61, 75, 199
Mine river.....	152
Minerals	85
Minnesota	250
Missouri	150, 155, 256
Fur Company.....	125, 132
Mitain	135
Mobridge	75
Montreal	219, 241
Mooeres, Charles.....	209
Henry	209
Morals, public.....	74, 87
Morgan, General John.....	211
Morrow, Sarah M.....	200
Munk, Captain.....	144
Murdo	62
Museum	14
List of specimens.....	58-60
Myer, Mr.....	241

	Page.		Page.
Mystic	61	Potsdam Academey	197
Natural Science.....	36	Poultry and dairying.....	72, 85
New Haven.....	200	Pratt creek	243
Newspapers, bound volumes. 18,	25	Presho, R. R. to.....	61, 62, 75
New settlers.....	62	Price, Col. M. M.....	74
New towns.....	63	Prices, General.....	72, 85
New Ulm.....	250	Primeau, Mr.....	244, 250
Nez Perce.....	157	Proceedings	9
Niagara	219	Progress, annual review of state	61
Nickel, August.....	189	General Legislative Refer-	
Normans	142	ence Division.....	10
Northwestern R. R.....	61, 75	Provost, Mr.....	259
Note, Deland.....	455	Pryor, Ensign.....	123
Note, editorial, Doane Robinson.	274	Public affairs	76
Nootsa-pah-zasah	173	Quebec	218, 239
Norsemen, did they visit Dakota	159	Railroads	65, 75
Oak creek.....	187	Legislation on.....	62
Oak Park.....	198	Milwaukee building.....	61, 75
Oats	69, 84	Northwestern	61, 75
Officers, State Historical Society	5	St. Louis.....	61, 75
Officers, State.....	76	Rainfall	81
Ogdensburg	129	Ramer, M. M.....	73
Okatan	62	Ramsey	223
Omaha	129, 335	Rapid, A. Pablo.....	229
O'Neill, Henry.....	139	Rapid City, R. R. to.....	61
Judge James.....	199	Rapiguage	233
Onidas	145	Ridgeville	209
Osage	159	Red Jacket.....	193
Otloes	155	Red river.....	132
Pacific extension.....	61	Religion	26, 28
Padanic	259	Renner	61
Paquette	213	Review, annual.....	61, 75
Paul	255, 259	Ricaras	158
Paintille, Mr.....	180	Huts	159, 160
Pal-to-to-path	173	Industries	161
Panis	155	Rieze	233
Pardo	154, 165	Ripley	211
Paunched Indians.....	170	Road river.....	169
Pease, Hon. John M.....	81	Robinson, Doane	
Pecaut, Gustav.....	259	Annual Review, 1906.....	61
Perry creek.....	240	1907	75
Philology	35	Rescue of Fanny Kelly..	109
Philosophy, works on.....	25	Editorial note.....	274
Picotte, Henri.....	220, 226, 255	Rodgers, Mary.....	210
Piegan	231	Rooms	15
Pierre, R. R. to.....	61, 75, 256, 251	Rouleau, Charles.....	241, 256
Pike, Lieutenant.....	128	Rosebud Agency.....	256
Pittsfield	213	Roulo City.....	242
Pizarro	124	Rowan, Margaret.....	197
Plainfield	260	Ruger, General.....	187
Plankinton	260	Rulo, Nebraska.....	256
Politics	73	Runic Stone.....	142
Poncers	159	Rus	158
Pontate	133	Rustin, Charles.....	250
Portraiture, gallery of.....	14	Sacque river.....	162
Postoffice, new buildings.....	63	Sacs and Foxes.....	128
Posts established by Lisa.....	123	Saint John	180
Founded by Lisa.....	127	Saint Louis.....	179
Pottawatomes	128	Salt Springs.....	169

	Page.		Page.
Sanitation	64	Strike-the-Kettle	190
Santees	172	Stock, live.....	85
Santee Agency.....	259	Stone, Crawler's sacred, photo..	113
Santi	250	Subordinate committees.....	5
Sarpy, Peter A.....	219, 226, 239	Sully, Fort, diagram of.....	117
Sasqui river.....	170	Summary, Final.....	72
Scandinavian, cemetery	62	General	85
Seigneurie	224	Sumner, Col.....	192
Selkirk, Lord.....	132	Table I, Assessed valuation....	65
Settlers, new.....	62, 75	Table II, Weather.....	67
Shave Head.....	190	Tacket, George.....	224
Shaw, Isabella.....	197	Life of.....	260
Sheldon, Rev. P. K.....	199, 242	T-a-kar-tha	177
Shodie, Joseph.....	248	Tamaha	128.
Sioux	127, 157, 159	Taun	169
Sioux City.....	216, 242, 250, 256	Tecumseh	193
Academy of Science.....	216	Tetons	127
Sioux Falls.....	61	Teton river.....	179
Sioux Point	248	Timber, Mrs. Missouri.....	256
Sitting Bull's camp, diagram of.	191	Titon-anan-danas	179
Capture of.....	185	Titon-bois-bruil	179
Slocum, Lieutenant.....	188	Titon-su-oo-nu	179
Smail, Dairy Commissioner.....	64	Tornado	81
Smith Land.....	240	Towns, new	62
Snake	173	Transmittal, letter of.....	4
Sociology	28, 35	Tribute, A Brother's, Frank B.	
Sorel	255	Ainsworth	205
Souris, Mouse river.....	279, 283, 379	Troy	219
South Dakota Central R. R.....	75	Traversier, August.....	255
Specimens in museum.....	58-60	Travels of.....	257
Speltz	71	Tuton river.....	159
Spider, Mrs. Amelia.....	256	Turtle	177
Spink county.....	61	Twin cities.....	208
Spirit Lake.....	250	Tyler's creek.....	158
Standing Rock reservation...61,	185	Viking anchor, cut of.....	141
Stanton	241	Wah-pa-coo-tah.....	178
State Exchange.....	15	Wakons	162
State Library.....	13	Wallace, Captain.....	192
Statement, finance.....	8	Walworth county, railroad in...61	
State Historical Society.....	5	Warriana	165
Corresponding members....	6	Washington, George.....	136
Deceased members.....	7	Watertown	61, 200
Efforts of.....	11	Weather	66, 80
Members, honorary.....	6	West fork.....	250
Members, life.....	6	Wheat Statistics, durum, white	68
State United	75	Winter	73, 83
Steele, Lieutenant.....	188	White Castle.....	230
Sterling, Thomas, photo.....	88	White, Germoe.....	250
Address	89	White river.....	158
St. Ambrose.....	218	Wipf, Secretary of State.....	63
St. Jean.....	219	Wolf Indians.....	155
St. Joe.....	256	Works, general.....	16, 18
St. Joseph	241	Wounded Knee.....	192
St. Lawrence river.....	198	Yale college	200
St. Louis.....	219, 255	Yanktonais	250
Railroad	61, 75	Yankton-ansah.....	178
St. Peter's river.....	178	Yellowstone	168

F 923.8¹¹

